



unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Romans

Version 57

[en]

Copyrights and Licensing

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Date: 2021-12-22

Version: 57

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Literal Text

Date: 2021-12-06

Version: 32

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Hebrew Bible

Date: 2021-09-07

Version: 2.1.23

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Greek New Testament

Date: 2021-09-14

Version: 0.22

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy

Date: 2021-12-09

Version: 24

Published by: unfoldingWord®

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

Date: 2021-11-25

Version: 27

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Copyright © 2021 by unfoldingWord

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License. To view a copy of this license, visit <https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/> or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: "The original work by unfoldingWord is available from unfoldingword.org/utn". You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).

If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at unfoldingword.org/contact/.

Table of Contents

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes	10
Romans	10
Introduction to Romans	11
Romans 1	14
Romans 2	47
Romans 3	77
Romans 4	109
Romans 5	135
Romans 6	157
Romans 7	181
Romans 8	208
Romans 9	250
Romans 10	284
Romans 11	306
Romans 12	343
Romans 13	365
Romans 14	380
Romans 15	404
Romans 16	438
unfoldingWord® Translation Academy	466
Abstract Nouns	467
Active or Passive	469
Apostrophe	472
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information	474
Double Negatives	477
Doublet	479
Ellipsis	481
Euphemism	484
Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'	486
First, Second or Third Person	488
Forms of You	490
Generic Noun Phrases	491
How to Translate Names	493
Hyperbole	497
Hypothetical Situations	501
Idiom	504
Irony	506
Litotes	509
Metaphor	511
Metonymy	517
Parallelism	519
Personification	522
Pronouns — When to Use Them	524
Rhetorical Question	526
Simile	529
Symbolic Action	532
Synecdoche	534
Textual Variants	536

Translate Unknowns	538
Translating Son and Father	541
unfoldingWord® Translation Words	543
Abraham, Abram	544
abyss, bottomless pit	545
accuse, accused, accuser, accusation	546
Adam	547
admonish, warned, aware	548
adoption, adopt, adopted	549
adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress	550
adversary, enemy	551
advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels	552
age, aged	553
altar	554
amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder,	555
amen, truly	556
ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather	557
angel, archangel	559
apostle, apostleship	561
appoint, appointed	562
Aquila	563
armor, armory	564
Asia	565
asleep, fall asleep, sleep, sleeper, sleepless	566
authority	567
avenge, avenger, revenge, vengeance	568
Baal	569
baptize, baptized, baptism	570
bear, bearer, carry	572
believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief	573
beloved	576
Benjamin, Benjaminite	577
bind, bond, bound	578
blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous	579
bless, blessed, blessing	580
blood	582
boast, boastful	584
body	585
bold, boldness, emboldened	586
bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee	587
brother	588
bury, buried, burial	589
call, call out	590
captive, captivate, captivity, catch	592
children, child, offspring	593
chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect	595
Christ, Messiah	596
church, Church	598
circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision	600
clean, wash	602
clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments	604
command, commandment	605

commit, committed, commitment	606
companion, fellow worker, friend	607
compassion, compassionate	608
conceive, conception	609
condemn, condemned, condemnation	610
confess, confession	611
confidence, confident	612
confirm, confirmation, legal	613
conscience	614
courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, discourage,	615
covenant	617
create, created, creation, creator	619
crucify, crucified	620
cry, cry out, outcry	621
curse, cursed, cursing	622
cut off, cut down	624
darkness	625
David	626
day	627
deceive, lie, deception, illusions	628
declare, proclaim, announce	629
deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue	630
descend, descendant	631
die, dead, deadly, death	632
dishonor, dishonorable	634
disobey, disobeyed, disobedience, rebellious	635
divine	636
drunk, drunkard	637
earth, land	638
Elijah	639
endure, endurance	640
enslave, slave, bondservant, bound	641
envy, covet	642
epistle, letter	643
Esau	644
eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever	645
evil, wicked, unpleasant	647
ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins	649
exhort, exhortation	650
faith	651
faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy	653
faithless, unfaithful, unfaithfulness	655
famine	656
fear, afraid, frighten	657
fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot	658
firstborn	659
firstfruits	660
flesh	661
fool, foolish, folly	662
foreknew, foreknowledge	663
forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned	664
found, founder, foundation	666

free, freed, freedom, freeman, freewill, liberty	667
fruit, fruitful, unfruitful	668
fulfill, fulfilled, carried out	670
Gentile	671
gift	672
glory, glorious, glorify	673
God	675
God the Father, heavenly Father, Father	677
god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry	679
godly, godliness, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness	681
Gomorrah	683
good news, gospel	684
good, right, pleasant, better, best	686
gossip, gossips, talk nonsense	688
grace, gracious	689
grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place	690
Greek, Grecian, Hellenist	691
groan	692
guilt, guilty	693
hand	694
hard, harden, hardness	696
head	697
heart	698
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly	699
heir	701
Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit	702
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred	704
honor	706
hope, hoped	707
Hosea	708
hour	709
hour, moment, immediately, for a while	710
house, household	711
image, carved image, cast metal images, figure, carved figure, statue	712
in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him	713
innocent	714
instruct, instruction, instructors	715
intercede, intercession	716
Isaac	717
Isaiah	718
Israel, Israelites	719
it is written	721
Jacob, Israel	722
jealous, jealousy	723
Jerusalem	724
Jesse	726
Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus	727
Jew, Jewish	729
joy, joyful, rejoice, glad	730
Judea, Judah	732
judge, judgment	733
just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification	735

kin, kinfolk, kindred, kinsman	737
kind [NOT kindness]	738
kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven	739
kiss	741
know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish	742
labor, laborer, work, hard work	744
law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God	745
law, principle	747
lawful, unlawful, not lawful, lawless, lawlessness	748
life, live, living, alive	750
light, luminary, shine, brighten, enlighten	752
like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if	753
lord, Lord, master, sir	754
love, beloved	756
lowly, lowliness	758
lust, lustful, passions, desires	759
Macedonia	760
manager, steward, stewardship	761
member, body parts	762
mercy, merciful	763
mind, mindful, remind, reminder, likeminded	765
Moses	766
multiply, multiplied, multiplication	767
mystery, hidden truth	768
name	769
nation	770
neighbor, neighborhood, neighboring	772
obey, keep	773
olive	774
ordain, ordained, ordination, planned long ago, set up, prepared	775
ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs	776
partial, partiality	777
patient, patience, impatient	778
patriarch	779
Paul, Saul	780
peace, peaceful, peacemakers	782
people of God	783
people, people group	784
perfect, complete	786
perish	787
persecute	788
persevere, perseverance	789
Pharaoh, king of Egypt	790
plea, plead, please, beg, implore	791
power, powerful, powerfully	792
praise, praised, praiseworthy	794
pray, prayer	795
preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation	796
predestine, predestined	798
Priscilla	799
profit, profitable, unprofitable	800
promise, promised	801

prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess	802
propitiation	804
prosper, prosperity, prosperous	805
proud, pride, prideful	806
provoke, provoked, provocation	808
raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up,	809
Rebekah	811
rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness	812
receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance	813
reconcile, reconciled, reconciliation	815
redeem, redeemer, redemption	816
reign, rule	817
reject, rejected, rejection	818
remnant	819
repent, repentance	820
report, reported, tell, reputation	822
resurrection	823
reveal, revealed, revelation	824
revere, revered, reverence, reverent	825
reward, prize, deserve	826
right hand	827
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright,	829
Rome, Roman	831
rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader	832
sacrifice, sacrifices, offering	833
saint	835
sanctify, sanctification	836
Sarah, Sarai	837
Satan, devil, evil one	838
save, saved, safe, salvation	840
seal, sealed, unsealed	842
seed, semen	843
seek, search, look for	844
send, sent, send out	845
servant, serve, slave, young man, young women	846
set apart	849
sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication	850
shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach	851
sign, proof, reminder	853
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning	855
sister	857
slander, slanderers, revile, insult	858
slaughter, slaughtered	859
snare, ensnare, entrap, trap, trapped, pitfall	860
Sodom	861
soldier, warrior	862
son	863
Son of God, the Son	865
sons of God, children of God	867
soul, self, person	868
spirit, wind, breath	869
stiff-necked, stubborn, stubbornness	871

strength, strengthen, strong	872
strife, disputes, quarrel, arguing, conflict	874
stumble, reeling	875
stumbling block, stone of stumbling	876
subject, be subject to, subjection	877
submit, submission, in submission	878
suffer, suffering	879
sword, swordsmen	881
tax, tribute, taxation, taxpayers, tax collector,	882
teach, teaching, untaught	884
teacher, Teacher	885
terror, terrorize, terrify, dread, panic	886
testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence	887
time, untimely, date	889
Timothy	890
to minister, ministry	891
tongue, language	892
transgress, transgression	893
trespass	894
tribe, tribal, tribesmen	895
tribulation, distresses, trouble	896
trouble, disturb, stir up, distress, hardship, calamity	897
true, truth	898
trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness	900
turn, turn away, turn back, return	901
understand, understanding, thinking	903
vain, vanity	904
voice	905
walk, walked	906
will of God	907
wine, wineskin, new wine	908
wise, wisdom	909
womb	910
word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth,	911
work, works, deeds	913
world, worldly	914
worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless	915
wrath, fury	916
wrong, wronged, wrongdoer, mistreat, hurt, hurtful	917
Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host of heaven, host of the heavens,	918
year	919
zeal, zealous	920
Zion, Mount Zion	921
Contributors	922
unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors	922
unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors	928
unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors	929
unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors	930



unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Romans

Introduction to Romans

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of the Book of Romans

Introduction (1:1-15)
 Righteousness by faith in Jesus Christ (1:16-17)
 All mankind is condemned because of sin (1:18-3:20)
 Righteousness through Jesus Christ by faith in him (3:21-4:25)
 The fruits of the Spirit (5:1-11)
 Adam and Christ compared (5:12-21)
 Becoming like Christ in this life (6:1-8:39)
 God's plan for Israel (9:1-11:36)
 Practical advice for living as Christians (12:1-15:13)
 Conclusion and greetings (15:14-16:27)

Who wrote the Book of Romans?

The Apostle Paul wrote the Book of Romans. Paul was from the city of Tarsus. He had been known as Saul in his early life. Before becoming a Christian, Paul was a Pharisee. He persecuted Christians. After he became a Christian, he traveled several times throughout the Roman Empire telling people about Jesus.

Paul probably wrote this letter while he was staying in the city of Corinth during his third trip through the Roman Empire.

What is the Book of Romans about?

Paul wrote this letter to the Christians in Rome. Paul wanted to get them ready to receive him when he visited them. He said his purpose was to "bring about the obedience of faith" (16:26).

In this letter Paul most fully described the gospel of Jesus Christ. He explained that both Jews and non-Jews have sinned, and God will forgive them and declare them righteous only if they believe in Jesus (chapters 1-11). Then he gave them practical advice for how believers should live (chapters 12-16),

How should the title of this book be translated?

Translators may choose to call this book by its traditional title, "Romans." Or they may choose a clearer title, such as "Paul's Letter to the Church in Rome," or "A Letter to the Christians in Rome." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

What are the titles used to refer to Jesus?

In Romans, Paul described Jesus Christ by many titles and descriptions: Jesus Christ (1:1), the Seed of David (1:3), the Son of God (1:4), the Lord Jesus Christ (1:7), Christ Jesus (3:24), Propitiation (3:25), Jesus (3:26), Jesus our Lord (4:24), Lord of Hosts (9:29), a Stumbling Stone and Rock of Offence (9:33), the End of the Law (10:4), the Deliverer (11:26), Lord of the Dead and the Living (14:9), and the Root of Jesse (15:12).

How should theological terms in Romans be translated?

Paul uses many theological terms that are not used in the four gospels. As early Christians learned more about the meaning of Jesus Christ and his message, they needed words and expressions for new ideas. Some examples of these words are “justification” (5:1), “works of the law” (3:20), “reconcile” (5:10), “propitiation” (3:25), “sanctification” (6:19), and “the old man” (6:6).

The “key terms” dictionary can help translators understand many of these terms. (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Terms such as those given above are difficult to explain. It is often hard or impossible for translators to find equivalent terms in their own languages. It can help to know that word equivalents of these terms are not necessary. Instead, translators can develop short expressions to communicate these ideas. For example, the term “gospel” can be translated as “the good news about Jesus Christ.”

Translators should also remember that some of these terms have more than one meaning. The meaning will depend on how the author is using the word in that particular passage. For example, “righteousness” sometimes means that a person obeys God’s law. At other times, “righteousness” means that Jesus Christ has perfectly obeyed God’s law for us.

What did Paul mean by “a remnant” of Israel (11:5)?

The idea of a “remnant” is important both in the Old Testament and for Paul. Most of the Israelites were either killed or scattered among other people when the Assyrians and then the Babylonians conquered their land. Only a relatively few Jews survived. They were known as “the remnant.”

In 11:1-9, Paul speaks of another remnant. This remnant is the Jews whom God saved because they believed in Jesus. (See: [remnant](#))

Part 3: Important Translation Issues

What did Paul mean by being “in Christ”?

The phrase “in Christ” and similar phrases occur in 3:24; 6:11, 23; 8:1,2,39; 9:1; 12:5,17; 15:17; and 16:3,7,9,10. Paul used these kinds of phrases as a metaphor to express that Christian believers belong to Jesus Christ. Belonging to Christ means the believer is saved and is made a friend with God. The believer is also promised to live with God forever. However, this idea can be difficult to represent in many languages.

These phrases also have specific meanings that depend on how Paul used them in a particular passage. For example, in 3:24 (“the redemption that is in Christ Jesus”), Paul referred to our being redeemed “because” of Jesus Christ. In 8:9 (“you are not in the flesh but in the Spirit”), Paul spoke of believers submitting “to” the Holy Spirit. In 9:1 (“I tell the truth in Christ”), Paul meant that he is telling the truth that “is in agreement with” Jesus Christ.

Nevertheless, the basic idea of our being united with Jesus Christ (and with the Holy Spirit) is seen in these passages as well. Therefore, the translator has a choice in many passages that use “in.” He will often decide to represent the more immediate sense of “in,” such as, “by means of,” “in the manner of,” or “in regard to.” But, if possible, the translator should choose a word or phrase that represents the immediate sense and the sense of “in union with.” (See: [in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him](#))

How are the ideas of “holy,” “saints” or “holy ones,” and “sanctify” represented in Romans in the ULT?

The scriptures use such words to indicate any one of various ideas. For this reason, it is often difficult for translators to represent them well in their versions. In translating into English, the ULT uses the following principles:

- Sometimes the meaning in a passage implies moral holiness. Especially important for understanding the gospel is the fact that God considers Christians to be sinless because they are united to Jesus Christ. Another related fact is that God is perfect and faultless. A third fact is that Christians are to conduct themselves in a blameless and faultless manner in life. In these cases, the ULT uses “holy,” “holy God,” “holy ones” or “holy people.” (See: 1:7)
- Sometimes the meaning in a passage indicates a simple reference to Christians without implying any particular role filled by them. In cases where some other English versions have “saints” or “holy ones,” the ULT uses “believers.” (See: 8:27; 12:13; 15:25, 26, 31; 16:2, 15)
- Sometimes the meaning in a passage indicates the idea of someone or something set apart for God alone. In these cases, the ULT uses “set apart,” “dedicated to,” “consecrated,” or “reserved for.” (See: 15:16)

The UST will often be helpful as translators think about how to represent these ideas in their own versions.

What are the major issues in the text of the Book of Romans?

For the following verses, modern version of the Bible differ from older versions. The ULT includes the modern reading and puts the older reading in a footnote.

- “he [God] works all things together for good” (8:28). Some older versions read, “All things work together for good.”
- “But if it is by grace, it is no longer by works. Otherwise grace would no longer be grace” (11:6). Some older versions read: “But if it is by works, then is it no more grace: otherwise work is no more work.”

The following verse is not in the best ancient copies of the Bible. Translators are advised not to include this verse. However, if in the translators’ region there are older Bible versions that have this verse, the translators can include it. If it is translated, it should be put inside square brackets ([]) to indicate that it is probably not original to the Book of Romans.

- “May the grace of our Lord Jesus Christ be with you all. Amen” (16:24).

(See: [Textual Variants](#))

Romans 1

Romans 1 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The first verse is a type of introduction. People in the ancient Mediterranean region often started their letters this way. Sometimes this is called a “salutation.”

Special concepts in this chapter

The gospel

This chapter refers to the contents of the Book of Romans as “the gospel” (Romans 1:2). Romans is not a gospel like Matthew, Mark, Luke and John. Instead, chapters 1-8 present the biblical gospel: All have sinned. Jesus died for our sins. He was raised again that we might have new life in him.

Fruit

This chapter uses the imagery of fruit. The image of fruit usually refers to a person’s faith producing good works in their life. In this chapter, it refers to the results of Paul’s work among the Roman Christians. (See: [fruit](#), [fruitful](#), [unfruitful](#) and [faith](#) and [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [unrighteous](#), [unrighteousness](#), [upright](#), [uprightness](#))

Universal Condemnation and the Wrath of God

This chapter explains that everyone is without excuse. We all know about the true God, Yahweh, from his creation all around us. Because of our sin and our sinful nature, every person justly deserves the wrath of God. This wrath was satisfied by Jesus dying on a cross for those who believe in him. (See: [believe](#), [believer](#), [belief](#), [unbeliever](#), [unbelief](#) and [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

“God gave them over”

Many scholars view the phrases “God gave them over” and “God gave them up” as theologically significant. For this reason, it is important to translate these phrases with God playing a passive role in the action. God simply allows men to pursue their own desires, he does not force them. (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Difficult phrases and concepts

This chapter has many difficult ideas in it. How Paul writes makes many of the phrases in this chapter difficult to translate. The translator may need to use the UST to understand the meaning of the phrases. And it may be necessary to more freely translate these phrases. Some of the difficult phrases include: “obedience of faith,” “whom I serve in my spirit,” “from faith to faith” and “exchanged the glory of the imperishable God for the likenesses of an image of perishable man.”

Romans 1:1

Paul (ULT)

Your language may have a particular way of introducing the author of a letter. You may also need to tell in this same verse who the people are to whom **Paul** wrote the letter ([Romans 1:7](#)). Alternate translation: "I, Paul, wrote this letter" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

¹ Paul, a servant of Christ Jesus, called {to be} an apostle, having been set apart for the gospel of God,

called {to be} an apostle, having been set apart for the gospel of God (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "whom God called to be an apostle and chose to tell people about the gospel" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

called (ULT)

This means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.

Translation Words - ULT

- Paul
- a servant
- of Christ Jesus
- of Christ
- called
- an apostle
- having been set apart
- the gospel
- of God

Romans 1:2

which he promised beforehand by his prophets in the holy scriptures (ULT)

God promised his people that he would set up his kingdom. He told the **prophets** to write these promises in the **scriptures**.

ULT

² which he promised beforehand by his prophets in the holy scriptures,

Translation Words - ULT

- he promised beforehand
- prophets
- the holy scriptures
- holy

Romans 1:3

concerning his Son (ULT)

This refers to “the gospel of God,” the good news that God promised to send **his Son** into the world.

Son (ULT)

Son is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

who was born from a seed of David according to the flesh (ULT)

Here the word **flesh** refers to the physical body. Alternate translation: “who is a descendant of David according to the physical nature” or “who was born into the family of David” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [a seed](#)
- [of David](#)
- [the flesh](#)

ULT

³ concerning his [Son](#)—who was born from a [seed of David](#) according to the [flesh](#),

Romans 1:4

who was designated the Son of God in power (ULT)

The pronoun **who** refers to Jesus Christ. You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “whom God declared with power to be the Son of God” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

⁴ who was designated the Son of God in power through the Spirit of holiness by the resurrection of the dead—Jesus Christ our Lord,

by the resurrection of the dead (ULT)

“by raising him from among the people who are dead.” This expression speaks of all dead people together in the underworld, and coming alive again is spoken of as **resurrection** from among them.

the Spirit of holiness (ULT)

This refers to the Holy **Spirit**.

Translation Words - ULT

- [who was designated](#)
- [the Son of God](#)
- [power](#)
- [the Spirit of holiness](#)
- [the resurrection](#)
- [of the dead](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [Lord](#)

Romans 1:5

we received grace and apostleship (ULT)

God has given Paul the gift of being an apostle. You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "God caused me to be an apostle. This is a special privilege" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

for obedience of faith among all the Gentiles, for the sake of his name (ULT)

Paul uses the word **name** as a metonym to refer to Jesus. Alternate translation: "in order to teach all nations to obey because of their faith in Jesus" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [we received](#)
- [grace](#)
- [apostleship](#)
- [obedience](#)
- [of faith](#)
- [Gentiles](#)
- [name](#)

ULT

⁵ through whom [we received grace](#) and [apostleship](#) for [obedience of faith](#) among all the [Gentiles](#), for the sake of his [name](#),

Romans 1:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- called
- of Jesus
- Christ

ULT

⁶ among whom are you also, called of Jesus Christ.

Romans 1:7

To all those being in Rome, beloved of God, called as saints (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "I am writing this letter to all of you in Rome whom God loves and has chosen to become his people" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

⁷ To all those being in Rome, beloved of God, called as saints: Grace to you and peace from God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ.

Grace to you and peace (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "May God give you grace and peace" or "May God bless you and give you inner peace" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

God our Father (ULT)

Father is an important title for God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Rome
- beloved
- Jesus
- Christ
- of God
- called
- as saints
- Grace
- peace
- God...Father
- the Lord

Romans 1:8

God...whole world (ULT)

the **world** Paul and his readers knew and could travel in, which was the Roman Empire

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Jesus
- Christ
- faith
- is being proclaimed
- world

ULT

⁸ First, I thank my God through Jesus Christ concerning all of you, because your faith is being proclaimed throughout the whole world.

Romans 1:9

For God is my witness (ULT)

Paul emphasizes that he earnestly prays for them and that God has seen him praying. The word **For** is often left untranslated.

in my spirit (ULT)

A person's **spirit** is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.

spirit...gospel of his Son (ULT)

The **gospel** is that the **Son** of God has given himself as the Savior of the world.

of...Son (ULT)

Son is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

I continually make mention of you (ULT)

"I always talk to God about you"

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [witness](#)
- [I serve](#)
- [spirit](#)
- [gospel](#)
- [of...Son](#)

ULT

⁹ For [God](#) is my [witness](#), whom I [serve](#) in my [spirit](#) in the [gospel](#) of his [Son](#), how I continually make mention of you,

Romans 1:10

always requesting in my prayers if somehow now at last I will be successful by the will of God to come to you (ULT)

“every time I pray, asking God that I might finally succeed in coming to visit you”

if somehow (ULT)

“in whatever way God allows”

at last (ULT)

“eventually” or “finally”

by the will of God (ULT)

“because God desires it,”

Translation Words - ULT

- prayers
- I will be successful
- will of God
- of God

ULT

¹⁰ always requesting in my prayers if somehow now at last I will be successful by the will of God to come to you.

Romans 1:11

For I long to see you (ULT)

“Because I really want to see you”

some...gift...spiritual...to strengthen you (ULT)

Paul wants to **strengthen** the Roman Christians spiritually. Alternate translation: “some gift that will help you to grow spiritually” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

11 For I long to see you so that I may give to you some **spiritual gift**, to **strengthen** you,

Translation Words - ULT

- [spiritual](#)
- [gift](#)
- [strengthen](#)

Romans 1:12

and that is to be mutually encouraged with you through the faith in one another, both yours and mine (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “and I mean that I want us to encourage each other by sharing our experiences of faith in Jesus” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [faith](#)

ULT

¹² and that is to be mutually encouraged with you through the [faith](#) in one another, both yours and mine.

Romans 1:13

I do not want...you to be uninformed (ULT)

Paul is emphasizing that he wanted them to have this information. You can translate this double negative in a positive form. Alternate translation: "I want you to know" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

brothers (ULT)

Here, **brothers** means fellow Christians, including both men and women.

but I was hindered until now (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "but something has always prevented me" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

so that I might have some fruit among you also (ULT)

The word **fruit** is a metaphor that represents people in Rome whom Paul wants to believe the gospel. Alternate translation: "that more people among you might trust in Jesus" (See: [Metaphor](#))

the rest of the Gentiles (ULT)

the Gentiles in the other regions where he had gone

Translation Words - ULT

- [to be uninformed](#)
- [brothers](#)
- [fruit](#)
- [just as](#)
- [of the Gentiles](#)

ULT

¹³ Now I do not want you [to be uninformed](#), [brothers](#), that I often intended to come to you (but I was hindered until now), so that I might have some [fruit](#) among you also, [just as](#) also among the rest [of the Gentiles](#).

Romans 1:14

I am a debtor (ULT)

Using the metaphor **debtor**, Paul speaks of his duty to serve God as if he owed God a financial debt. Alternate translation: "I am under obligation to take the gospel!" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [to Greeks](#)
- [to the wise](#)
- [to the foolish](#)

ULT

14 I am a debtor both [to Greeks](#) and to barbarians, both [to the wise](#) and [to the foolish](#).

Romans 1:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- to proclaim the gospel
- Rome

ULT

¹⁵ So, as it depends on me, {I am} eager to proclaim the gospel also to you who {are} in Rome.

Romans 1:16

not...I am...ashamed of the gospel (ULT)

You can translate this in a positive form. Alternate translation: “I trust completely in the gospel” (See: [Litotes](#))

the power...it is...of God for salvation to everyone who believes (ULT)

Here, **believes** means that one puts his trust in Christ. Alternate translation: “it is through the gospel that God powerfully saves those who put their trust in Christ” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

both to the Jew first and to the Greek (ULT)

“for Jewish people first, and now also for Greek people”

first (ULT)

Here, **first** means coming before all others in order of time.

Translation Words - ULT

- [I am...ashamed](#)
- [of...gospel](#)
- [the power](#)
- [of God](#)
- [salvation](#)
- [who believes](#)
- [to the Jew](#)
- [to the Greek](#)

ULT

16 For [I am](#) not [ashamed](#) of the [gospel](#), for it is [the power of God](#) for [salvation](#) to everyone [who believes](#), both [to the Jew](#) first and [to the Greek](#).

Romans 1:17

in it (ULT)

Here, **it** refers to the gospel. Paul explains why he completely trusts in the gospel.

the righteousness...of God is revealed in it from faith to faith (ULT)

Paul speaks about the gospel message as if it were an object that God could physically show to people. You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "God has told us that it is by faith from beginning to end that people become righteous" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

just as it has been written (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "just as someone has written in the scriptures" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the...righteous will live by faith (ULT)

Here, **righteous** refers to those who trust in God. Alternate translation: "it is people who trust in God that he considers right with him, and they will live forever" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the righteousness](#)
- [righteous](#)
- [of God](#)
- [is revealed](#)
- [faith](#)
- [faith](#)
- [faith \(2\)](#)
- [just as](#)
- [it has been written](#)
- [will live](#)

ULT

17 For [the righteousness of God is revealed](#) in it from [faith to faith](#), [just as it has been written](#), "But the [righteous will live](#) by [faith](#)."

Romans 1:18

For the wrath of God is revealed (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "For God shows how angry he is" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

For (ULT)

Paul uses the word **For** to show he is about to tell why people know that what he has said in [Romans 1:17](#) is true.

ULT

18 For [the wrath of God is revealed](#) from [heaven](#) against all [ungodliness](#) and [unrighteousness](#) of men, who through [unrighteousness](#) are holding back the [truth](#),

is revealed...the wrath of God...from heaven against all ungodliness and unrighteousness of men (ULT)

The words **ungodliness** and **unrighteousness** are abstract nouns that can be expressed using the adjectives "ungodly," which describes the people, and "unrighteous," which describes their deeds. Alternate translation: "the wrath of God is revealed against ungodly and unrighteous deeds" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

is revealed...the wrath of God...from heaven against all ungodliness and unrighteousness of men (ULT)

The words **ungodliness** and **unrighteousness** are metonyms for the people with whom God is angry. Alternate translation: "the wrath of God is revealed against people because they are ungodly and do unrighteous deeds" (See: [Metonymy](#))

is revealed...the wrath of God...from heaven against all ungodliness and unrighteousness of men (ULT)

You can translate this in active form. Alternate translation: "God reveals from heaven how angry he is with people because they are ungodly and do unrighteous deeds" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

who...through unrighteousness...are holding back...the truth (ULT)

Here, **truth** refers to true information about God. Alternate translation: "who hide the true information about God because they are unrighteous" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the wrath](#)
- [of God](#)
- [is revealed](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [ungodliness](#)
- [unrighteousness](#)
- [unrighteousness](#)
- [truth](#)

Romans 1:19

that which {is} known about God is visible to them (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “they can know about God because of what they can plainly see” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

¹⁹ because that which {is} known about God is visible to them, for God has made it known to them.

for God has made it known to them (ULT)

Here, **made it known them** means God has shown them the truth about him. Alternate translation: “because God has shown everyone what he is like” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [known](#)
- [about God](#)
- [God](#)
- [visible](#)
- [has made it known](#)

Romans 1:20

For his invisible qualities, both his eternal power and divine nature, are clearly seen from the creation of the world, being understood through the things that have been made (ULT)

Paul speaks of people understanding God's invisible qualities as if people have seen those qualities. Alternate translation: "For God's invisible qualities are clearly seen by people, namely his eternal power and divine nature, from the things God has created" (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

²⁰ For his invisible qualities, both his [eternal power](#) and [divine nature](#), are clearly seen from [the creation of the world, being understood](#) through the things that have been made. So they are without excuse.

For his invisible qualities, both his eternal power and divine nature, are clearly seen from the creation of the world, being understood through the things that have been made (ULT)

You can translate this in active form. Alternate translation: "For people have clearly understood God's invisible qualities, namely his eternal power and divine nature, from the things God has created" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

divine nature (ULT)

"all the qualities and characteristics of God" or "the things about God that make him God"

of the world (ULT)

This refers to the heavens and the earth, as well as everything in them.

through the things that have been made (ULT)

You can translate this in active form. Alternate translation: "because of the things that God has made" or "because people have seen the things that God has made" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

So...they...are...without excuse (ULT)

"Therefore, these people can never say that they did not know"

Translation Words - ULT

- [eternal](#)
- [power](#)
- [divine nature](#)
- [the creation](#)
- [of the world](#)
- [being understood](#)

Romans 1:21

they became foolish in their thoughts (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “began to think foolish things” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

their senseless heart was darkened (ULT)

Here, **darkness** is a metaphor that represents the people’s lack of understanding. Alternate translation: “they became unable to understand what God wanted them to know” (See: [Metaphor](#))

their senseless heart was darkened (ULT)

Here, **hearts** is a metonym for a person’s mind or inner being. Alternate translation: “their minds became unable to understand what God wanted them to know” (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

²¹ For [having known God](#), [they did](#) not [glorify him as God](#), nor did they give him thanks. Instead, [they became foolish](#) in their thoughts, and their [senseless heart was darkened](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [having known](#)
- [God](#)
- [God \(2\)](#)
- [they did...glorify him](#)
- [as](#)
- [they became foolish](#)
- [senseless](#)
- [heart](#)
- [was darkened](#)

Romans 1:22

Claiming to be wise, they became foolish (ULT)

“While they were claiming that they were wise, they became foolish”

they became foolish (ULT)

Here, **they** refers to the people in [Romans 1:18](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [wise](#)
- [they became foolish](#)

ULT

²² Claiming to be [wise](#), they became [foolish](#),

Romans 1:23

exchanged the glory of the imperishable God (ULT)

“traded the truth that God is glorious and will never die” or “stopped believing that God is glorious and will never die”

for the likenesses of an image (ULT)

“and instead chose to worship idols that were images”

of perishable man (ULT)

“of human beings that will die”

of birds, of four-footed beasts, and of creeping things

“or that looked like birds, four-footed beasts, or creeping things”

Translation Words - ULT

- glory
- of...God
- of an image
- perishable

ULT

²³ and exchanged the glory of the imperishable God for the likenesses of an image of perishable man, and of birds, and of four-footed beasts, and of creeping things.

Romans 1:24

Therefore (ULT)

“Because what I have just said is true,”

God gave them over to (ULT)

“God allowed them to indulge in”

them...their...themselves (ULT)

These words refer to the “mankind” of [Romans 1:18](#).

the lusts of their hearts for uncleanness (ULT)

Here, **lusts of their hearts** is a synecdoche that represents the evil things they wanted to do. Alternate translation: “the morally impure things they desired greatly” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

to dishonor their bodies among themselves (ULT)

This is a euphemism that means they committed immoral sexual acts. Alternate translation: “and they committed sexually immoral and degrading acts” (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [lusts](#)
- [of...hearts](#)
- [bodies](#)

ULT

²⁴ Therefore, [God](#) gave them over to the [lusts](#) of their [hearts](#) for uncleanness, to dishonor their [bodies](#) among themselves;

Romans 1:25

who (ULT)

The word **who** refers to the “mankind” of [Romans 1:18](#).

worshiped and served the creation (ULT)

Here, **creation** refers to what God created. Alternate translation: “they worshiped things that God created” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

instead of (ULT)

“rather than”

Translation Words - ULT

- [truth](#)
- [of God](#)
- [worshiped](#)
- [served](#)
- [creation](#)
- [Creator](#)
- [blessed](#)
- [eternity](#)
- [Amen](#)

ULT

²⁵ who exchanged the [truth of God](#) for the lie and [worshiped](#) and [served](#) the [creation](#) instead of the [Creator](#), who is [blessed](#) to [eternity](#). Amen.

Romans 1:26

For this reason (ULT)

“Because of idolatry and sexual sin”

God gave them over to (ULT)

“God allowed them to indulge in”

dishonorable passions (ULT)

“shameful sexual desires”

for both their women (ULT)

“because their women” The second clause indicated by **both** occurs in the next verse.

exchanged natural relations for those contrary to nature (ULT)

The idea of relations that were **contrary to nature** is a euphemism for immoral sexuality. Alternate translation: “started practicing sexuality in a way God did not design” (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [dishonorable](#)
- [passions](#)

ULT

²⁶ For this reason, [God](#) gave them over to [dishonorable passions](#), for both their women exchanged natural relations for those contrary to nature,

Romans 1:27

the men also, having left the natural use of the female (ULT)

Here, **natural relations** is a euphemism for sexual relationships.
 Alternate translation: "many men also stopped having natural sexual desire for women" (See: [Euphemism](#))

burned in their lust for one another (ULT)

"experienced strong sexual desire for other men"

the...committing...shameless acts (ULT)

"committed acts for which they should have been ashamed, but they were not ashamed"

also...the...the...in their...receiving...themselves...penalty they deserved...for...error (ULT)

", and God has punished them justly for the error they committed"

for...error (ULT)

moral wrong, not a mistake about facts

Translation Words - ULT

- [likewise](#)
- [lust](#)
- [committing](#)
- [shameless acts](#)
- [receiving](#)
- [penalty](#)
- [for...error](#)

ULT

²⁷ and [likewise](#), the men also, having left the natural use of the female, burned in their [lust](#) for one another, male with male [committing shameless acts](#) and [receiving](#) in themselves the [penalty](#) they deserved for their [error](#).

Romans 1:28

And just as they did not approve of having God in {their} awareness (ULT)

“And they did not think it was necessary to know God”

them (ULT)

Here, **them** refers to the “mankind” of [Romans 1:18](#).

God gave them up to a depraved mind (ULT)

Here, **a depraved mind** means a mind that thinks only about immoral things. Alternate translation: “God allowed their minds, which they had filled with worthless and immoral thoughts, to completely control them” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

are not proper (ULT)

“are disgraceful” or “are sinful”

Translation Words - ULT

- [just as](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [awareness](#)
- [a...mind](#)

ULT

²⁸ And [just as](#) they did not approve of having [God](#) in {their} [awareness](#), [God](#) gave them up to a depraved [mind](#), to do those things that are not proper.

Romans 1:29

Having been filled with all unrighteousness (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “They have in them a strong desire for every kind of unrighteousness” or “They strongly desire to do all kinds of unrighteous deeds” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

²⁹ Having been filled with all [unrighteousness](#), [wickedness](#), [covetousness](#), and [malice](#), {they} are full of [envy](#), murder, [strife](#), [deceit](#), and evil intentions. {They are} [gossips](#),

full of envy, murder, strife, deceit, and evil intentions (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “many are constantly envying other people, constantly desiring to murder people, causing arguments and quarrels among people, deceiving others, and speaking hatefully about others” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [with...unrighteousness](#)
- [wickedness](#)
- [and malice](#)
- [covetousness](#)
- [of envy](#)
- [strife](#)
- [deceit](#)
- [gossips](#)

Romans 1:30

slanderers (ULT)

The word **slanderers** refers to people who say false things about other people in order to damage the reputation of those people.

inventors of evil (ULT)

“thinking of new ways to do evil things to others”

Translation Words - ULT

- slanderers
- arrogant
- boastful
- of evil
- disobedient

ULT

³⁰ slanderers, haters of God, insolent, arrogant, boastful, inventors of evil, disobedient to parents,

Romans 1:31

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [senseless](#)

ULT

³¹ [senseless](#), faithless, heartless, and unmerciful.

Romans 1:32

They, having understood the righteous decree of God (ULT)

“They know how God wants them to live”

that those who practice such things (ULT)

Here, **practice** refers to continually or habitually doing things that are evil. Alternate translation: “and that those who keep on doing wicked things” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

are deserving of death (ULT)

“deserve to die”

these things (ULT)

“these kinds of evil things”

those who do them (ULT)

Here the verb **do** refers to continuing to do things that are evil. Alternate translation: “who keep on doing evil things” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [having understood](#)
- [righteous decree](#)
- [of God](#)
- [deserving](#)
- [of death](#)

ULT

³² They, [having understood](#) the [righteous decree of God](#), that those who practice such things are [deserving of death](#), not only do these things, but also approve of those who do them.

Romans 2

Romans 2 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter shifts its audience from Roman Christians to those who “judge” other people and do not believe in Jesus. (See: [judge, judgment](#) and [believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief](#))

“Therefore you are without excuse”

This phrase looks back at Chapter 1. In some ways, it actually concludes what Chapter 1 teaches. This phrase explains why everyone in the world must worship the true God.

Special concepts in this chapter

“Doers of the Law”

Those who try to obey the law will not be justified by trying to obey it. Those who are justified by believing in Jesus show that their faith is real by obeying God’s commands. (See: [just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification](#) and [law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Rhetorical Questions

Paul uses several rhetorical questions in this chapter. It appears the intent of these rhetorical questions is to make the reader see their sin so they will trust in Jesus. (See: [Rhetorical Question, guilt, guilty](#) and [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#) and [faith](#))

Hypothetical Situation

In context, “he will give eternal life” in verse 7 is a hypothetical statement. If a person could live a perfect life, they would earn eternal life as a reward. But only Jesus was able to live a perfect life.

Paul gives another hypothetical situation in verses 17-29. Here he explains that even those who earnestly try to obey the law of Moses are guilty of violating the law. In English, this is about those who follow the “letter” of the law but cannot follow the “spirit” or general principles of the law. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“You who judge”

At times, You can translate this in a simpler way. But it is translated in this relatively awkward way because when Paul refers to “people who judge” he is also saying that everyone judges. It is possible to translate this as “those who judge (and everyone judges).”

Romans 2:1

Connecting Statement:

Paul has affirmed all men are sinners and continues to remind them that all people are wicked.

Therefore, you are without excuse (ULT)

The word **Therefore** marks a new section of the letter. It also makes a concluding statement based on what Paul has said in [Romans 1:1-32](#). Alternate translation: “Since God will punish those who continually sin, he will certainly not excuse your sins” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

O man (ULT)

Paul is writing here as if he were addressing a Jewish person who is arguing with him. Paul is doing this to teach his audience that God will punish everyone who continually sins, whether Jew or Gentile. (See: [Apostrophe](#))

you are (ULT)

Here the pronoun **you** is singular. (See: [Forms of You](#))

O man—anyone who judges (ULT)

Paul here scolds anyone who might think he can act like God and judge others. Alternate translation: “you are just a human being, yet you judge others and say they deserve God’s punishment” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

for in that which you judge another you condemn yourself (ULT)

“but you are only judging yourself because you do the same wicked deeds as they do”

Translation Words - ULT

- [who judges](#)
- [you judge](#)
- [who judge \(2\)](#)
- [you condemn](#)

ULT

¹ Therefore, you are without excuse, O man—anyone [who judges](#)—for in that which [you judge](#) another [you condemn](#) yourself; for you [who judge](#) practice the same things.

Romans 2:2

But we know (ULT)

Here the pronoun **we** may include Christian believers and also Jews who are not Christians. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

the judgment of God is according to truth upon those (ULT)

Here Paul speaks of **the judgment of God** as if it were alive and could “fall” on people. Alternate translation: “God will judge those people truly and fairly” (See: [Personification](#))

those who practice such things (ULT)

“the people who do those wicked deeds”

Translation Words - ULT

- [we know](#)
- [judgment](#)
- [of God](#)
- [truth](#)

ULT

² But [we know](#) that the [judgment of God](#) is according to [truth](#) upon those who practice such things.

Romans 2:3**do you think...this (ULT)**

“think about what I am going to tell you”

man (ULT)

Use the general word for a human being “whoever you are”

ULT

³ But do you think this, O man [who judges](#) those who are practicing such things and you are doing the same things, that you will escape from the [judgment of God](#)?

O man who judges those who are practicing such things and you are doing the same things (ULT)

“you who say someone deserves God’s punishment while you do the same wicked deeds”

that you will escape from the judgment of God (ULT)

This remark appears in the form of a question to add emphasis. You can also translate this question as a strong negative statement. Alternate translation: “you will certainly not escape God’s judgment!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [who judges](#)
- [judgment](#)
- [of God](#)

Romans 2:4

Or do you scorn the riches of his kindness and forbearance and patience, knowing that the kindness of God leads you to repentance (ULT)

This remark appears in the form of a question to add emphasis. You can also translate this as a strong statement. Alternate translation:

“You should not act like it does not matter that God is good and that he patiently waits a long time before he punishes people, so that his goodness will cause them to repent!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

⁴ Or do you scorn the riches of his [kindness](#) and forbearance and [patience, knowing](#) that the [kindness of God](#) leads you to [repentance](#)?

Do you think so little of the riches ... patience

“do you consider the riches of his kindness, and his forbearance, and his patience unimportant”

knowing that the kindness of God leads you to repentance (ULT)

This remark appears in the form of a question to add emphasis. You can also translate this as a strong statement. Alternate translation: “although you must know that God shows you he is good so that you might repent!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of...kindness](#)
- [kindness](#)
- [patience](#)
- [knowing](#)
- [of God](#)
- [repentance](#)

Romans 2:5

Connecting Statement:

Paul continues to remind the people that all people are wicked.

But according to your hardness and unrepentant heart (ULT)

Paul uses a metaphor to compare a person who refuses to obey God to something hard, like a stone. Alternate translation: "It is because you refuse to listen and repent" (See: [Metaphor](#))

unrepentant heart (ULT)

Paul uses the metonym "heart" to represent the person's mind or inner being. (See: [Metonymy](#))

hardness...and unrepentant heart (ULT)

This is a doublet that you can combine as "unrepentant heart." (See: [Doublet](#))

you are storing up for yourself wrath (ULT)

The phrase **storing up** implies a metaphor that usually refers to a person gathering his treasures and putting them in a safe place. Paul says, instead of treasures, that the person is gathering God's punishment. The longer they go without repenting, the more severe the punishment. Alternate translation: "you are making your punishment worse" (See: [Metaphor](#))

on the day of wrath and of the revelation of the righteous judgment of God (ULT)

Both of these phrases refer to the same day. Alternate translation: "when God shows everyone that he is angry and that he judges all people fairly" (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [hardness](#)
- [heart](#)
- [wrath](#)
- [of wrath](#)
- [the day](#)
- [of the revelation](#)
- [of God](#)

ULT

⁵ But according to your [hardness](#) and unrepentant [heart](#), you are storing up for yourself [wrath](#) on [the day of wrath](#) and [of the revelation](#) of the righteous judgment [of God](#),

Romans 2:6

will pay back (ULT)

“will give a fair reward or punishment”

to each according to his deeds (ULT)

“to each person according to what that person has done”

Translation Words - ULT

- [deeds](#)

ULT

⁶ who will pay back to each according to his [deeds](#):

Romans 2:7

who...are seeking (ULT)

This means that they act in a way that will lead to a positive decision from God on judgment day.

praise, honor, and incorruptibility

They want God to praise and honor them, and they want to never die.

incorruptibility (ULT)

This refers to physical, not moral, decay.

Translation Words - ULT

- eternal
- life
- consistent
- good
- actions
- who...are seeking
- glory
- honor

ULT

⁷ eternal life to those who according to consistent, good actions are seeking glory and honor and incorruptibility;

Romans 2:8

Connecting Statement:

Though this section is speaking to the non-religious wicked person, Paul sums it up by stating both non-Jews and Jews are wicked before God.

from selfish ambition (ULT)

“only concerned with what is good for themselves”

who are disobeying the truth but obeying unrighteousness (ULT)

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. The second intensifies the first. (See: [Parallelism](#))

wrath and fierce anger (ULT)

The words **wrath** and **fierce anger** mean basically the same thing and emphasize God’s anger. Alternate translation: “God will show his terrible anger” (See: [Doublet](#))

wrath (ULT)

Here the word **wrath** is a metonym that refers to God’s severe punishment of wicked people. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [wrath](#)
- [who are disobeying](#)
- [truth](#)
- [obeying](#)
- [unrighteousness](#)

ULT

⁸ but [wrath](#) and fierce anger to those who {are} from selfish ambition and [who are disobeying](#) the [truth](#) but [obeying unrighteousness](#).

Romans 2:9

Tribulation and distress (ULT)

The words **Tribulation** and **distress** mean basically the same thing here and emphasize how bad God's punishment will be. Alternate translation: "Awful punishments" (See: [Doublet](#))

ULT

⁹ [Tribulation](#) and [distress](#) will be on every human [soul](#) that practices [evil](#), [to the Jew](#) first, and also [to the Greek](#).

will be on every human soul (ULT)

Here, Paul uses the phrase **human soul** as a synecdoche that refers to the whole person. Alternate translation: "upon every person" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

that practices evil (ULT)

"that continually does evil things"

and...to the Jew first, and...to the Greek (ULT)

"and God will judge the Jewish people first, and then those who are not Jewish people"

first (ULT)

This could mean: (1) "first in order of time." (2) "most certainly."

Translation Words - ULT

- [Tribulation](#)
- [distress](#)
- [soul](#)
- [evil](#)
- [to the Jew](#)
- [to the Greek](#)

Romans 2:10

But praise, honor, and peace will come to everyone

“But God will give praise, honor, and peace to everyone”

who practices good (ULT)

“who continually does what is good”

and...to the Jew first, and...to the Greek (ULT)

“and God will reward the Jewish people first, and then those who are not Jewish people”

first (ULT)

You should translate this the same way you did in [Romans 2:9](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [glory](#)
- [honor](#)
- [peace](#)
- [who practices](#)
- [good](#)
- [to the Jew](#)
- [to the Greek](#)

ULT

¹⁰ But [glory](#) and [honor](#) and [peace](#) will be to everyone [who practices good](#), to [the Jew](#) first, and also to [the Greek](#).

Romans 2:11

For there is no favoritism with God (ULT)

You can translate this in a positive form. Alternate translation: "For God treats all people the same" (See: [Litotes](#))

ULT

11 For there is no [favoritism](#) with [God](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [favoritism](#)
- [God](#)

Romans 2:12

For as many as...have sinned (ULT)

“For those who have sinned”

without the law...will also perish without the law (ULT)

Paul repeats **without the law** to emphasize that it does not matter if people do not know the law of Moses. If they sin, God will judge them. Alternate translation: “without knowing the law of Moses will certainly still die spiritually” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

¹² For as many as [have sinned](#) without the law will also [perish](#) without the law, and as many as [have sinned](#) under [the law will be judged](#) by [the law](#).

as many as...have sinned (ULT)

“all those who have sinned”

under the law...will be judged by the law (ULT)

God will judge sinful people according to his law. Alternate translation: “and who do know the law of Moses, will be judged by God according to that law” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

will be judged by the law (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “God will judge them according to that law” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [have sinned](#)
- [have sinned](#) (2)
- [will...perish](#)
- [the law](#)
- [the law](#)
- [will be judged](#)

Romans 2:13

Connecting Statement:

Paul continues to let the reader know that perfect obedience to God's law is required even for those who never had God's law.

For (ULT)

Verses 14 and 15 interrupt Paul's main argument to give the reader extra information. If you have a way to mark an interruption like this in your language, you can use it here.

ULT

¹³ For the hearers of the law {are} not righteous before God, but the doers of the law will be justified.

the hearers of the law (ULT)

Here, **the law** refers to the law of Moses. Alternate translation: "those who only hear the law of Moses" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

not...righteous before God (ULT)

"are not the ones whom God considers righteous"

the...of the law...but...doers (ULT)

"but those who obey the law of Moses"

will be justified (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "whom God will accept" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of the law
- of the law (2)
- righteous
- God
- will be justified

Romans 2:14

are a law to themselves (ULT)

The phrase **a law to themselves** is an idiom that means that these people naturally obey God's laws. Alternate translation: "have God's laws already inside them" (See: [Idiom](#))

who do...not...have...the law...not having the law (ULT)

Here, **the law** refers to the law of Moses. Alternate translation: "they do not actually have the laws that God gave to Moses...although they do not have the law of Moses" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Gentiles](#)
- [the law](#)
- [of...law](#)
- [the law \(2\)](#)
- [a law](#)

ULT

¹⁴ For when [Gentiles](#), who do not have [the law](#), do by nature the things of the [law](#), they, not having [the law](#), are [a law](#) to themselves.

Romans 2:15

They show (ULT)

“By naturally obeying the law they show”

the deeds of the law to be written in their hearts (ULT)

Here, **hearts** is a metonym for the person’s thoughts or inner person. (See: [Metonymy](#))

the deeds of the law to be written in their hearts (ULT)

The phrase **written in their hearts** is a metaphor for knowing something in their mind. Alternate translation: “that they know what the law requires them to do” or “that they know the actions that they should do according to God’s law” (See: [Metaphor](#))

the deeds of the law to be written in their hearts (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “that God has written on their hearts what the law requires them to do” or “that they know the actions that God wants them to do according to his law” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

bearing witness to them...the thoughts between themselves both accusing or even defending them (ULT)

Here, **bearing witness** refers to the knowledge they gain from the law that God has written in their hearts. Alternate translation: “telling them if they are disobeying or obeying God’s law” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [deeds](#)
- [of...law](#)
- [hearts](#)
- [conscience](#)
- [bearing witness](#)
- [accusing](#)

ULT

¹⁵ They show the [deeds](#) of the [law](#) to be written in their [hearts](#), the [conscience bearing witness](#) to them, the thoughts between themselves both [accusing](#) or even defending them

Romans 2:16

on the day when God will judge (ULT)

This finishes Paul's thought from [Romans 2:13](#). "which will happen when God judges"

Translation Words - ULT

- [the day](#)
- [God](#)
- [will judge](#)
- [gospel](#)
- [Christ Jesus](#)
- [Christ](#)

ULT

16 on [the day](#) when [God will judge](#) the secrets of men, according to my [gospel](#), through [Christ](#) Jesus.

Romans 2:17

Connecting Statement:

Here begins Paul's discussion that the law the Jews possess actually condemns them because they do not obey it.

if...you name yourself a Jew (ULT)

"since you call yourself a Jew"

rely upon the law (ULT)

The phrase **rely upon the law** represents believing that they can become righteous by obeying the law. Alternate translation: "rely on the law of Moses" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [name yourself](#)
- [a Jew](#)
- [the law](#)
- [boast](#)
- [God](#)

ULT

17 But if you [name yourself a Jew](#) and rely upon [the law](#) and [boast in God](#),

Romans 2:18

know {his} will (ULT)

“know God’s will”

being instructed from the law (ULT)

You can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “because people have taught you what is right from the law” or “because you have learned from the law” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

¹⁸ and [know](#) {his} [will](#) and approve of what is excellent, [being instructed](#) from the [law](#);

Translation Words - ULT

- [know](#)
- [will](#)
- [being instructed](#)
- [law](#)

Romans 2:19

and you are convinced that you yourself are a guide to the blind, a light to those in darkness (ULT)

Here, **the blind** and **those in darkness** represent people who do not understand the law. Alternate translation: “that because you teach the law, you yourself are like a guide to blind people, and you are like a light to people who are lost in the dark” (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

¹⁹ and [you are convinced that](#) you yourself are a guide to the blind, [a light](#) to those in [darkness](#),

a guide...to the blind, a light to those in darkness (ULT)

The phrases **the blind** and **those in darkness** refer to the same people and emphasize their condition. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [you are convinced that](#)
- [a light](#)
- [darkness](#)

Romans 2:20

an instructor of the foolish (ULT)

“you correct those who think foolish things”

a teacher of little children (ULT)

Here Paul compares those who do not know anything about the law to **little children**. Alternate translation: “and you teach those who do not know the law” (See: [Metaphor](#))

having in the law the form of knowledge and of the truth (ULT)

The **knowledge** of **the truth** that is in **the law** comes from God. Alternate translation: “because you are sure you understand the truth that God has given in the law” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [an instructor](#)
- [of the foolish](#)
- [a teacher](#)
- [of little children](#)
- [law](#)
- [of knowledge](#)
- [of...truth](#)

ULT

²⁰ [an instructor of the foolish](#), [a teacher of little children](#), having in the [law](#) the form of [knowledge](#) and of the [truth](#),

Romans 2:21

you...who teach others, do you not teach yourself (ULT)

Paul is using a question to scold his listeners. You can translate this as a strong statement. Alternate translation: "you teach others, but you do not teach yourself!" or "you teach others, but you do not do what you teach!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

²¹ then you [who teach](#) others, [do you](#) not [teach](#) yourself? You [who preach](#) not to steal, do you steal?

You who preach not to steal, do you steal (ULT)

Paul is using a question to scold his listeners. You can translate this as a strong statement. Alternate translation: "You tell people not to steal, but you steal!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [who teach](#)
- [do you...teach](#)
- [who preach](#)

Romans 2:22

You who says not to commit adultery, do you commit adultery (ULT)

Paul is using a question to scold his listeners. You can translate this as a strong statement. Alternate translation: "You tell people not to commit adultery, but you commit adultery!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

²² You who says not [to commit adultery](#), [do you commit adultery](#)? You who hate [idols](#), do you rob temples?

You who hate idols, do you rob temples (ULT)

Paul is using a question to scold his listener. You can translate this as a strong statement. Alternate translation: "You say you hate idols, but you rob temples!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

do you rob temples (ULT)

This could mean: (1) they do not send to the Jerusalem temple all the money that is due to God. (2) they steal items from local pagan temples to sell and make a profit.

Translation Words - ULT

- [to commit adultery](#)
- [do you commit adultery](#)
- [idols](#)

Romans 2:23

You who boast in the law, do you dishonor God by breaking the law (ULT)

Paul uses a question to scold his listener. You can translate this as a strong statement. Alternate translation: "It is wicked that you claim to be proud of the law, while at the same time you disobey it and bring shame to God!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

²³ You who [boast in the law](#), do you dishonor [God](#) by [breaking the law](#)?

Translation Words - ULT

- [You...boast](#)
- [the law](#)
- [law](#)
- [God](#)
- [breaking](#)

Romans 2:24

the...name of God...is blasphemed among the Gentiles (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “many Gentiles blaspheme the name of God” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

²⁴ For “the [name of God is blasphemed](#) among the [Gentiles](#) because of you,” [just as it has been written](#).

name of God (ULT)

The word **name** is a metonym that refers to the entirety of God, not just his name. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [name](#)
- [of God](#)
- [is blasphemed](#)
- [Gentiles](#)
- [just as](#)
- [it has been written](#)

Romans 2:25

Connecting Statement:

Paul continues to show that God, by his law, condemns even the Jews who have God's law.

For circumcision indeed benefits (ULT)

"I say all of this because being circumcised does benefit you"

if you break the law

"if you do not obey the commandments found in the law"

your circumcision becomes uncircumcision (ULT)

"it is as though you were no longer circumcised"

Translation Words - ULT

- [circumcision](#)
- [circumcision](#)
- [uncircumcision](#)
- [benefits](#)
- [the law](#)
- [of the law](#)
- [transgressors](#)

ULT

²⁵ For [circumcision](#) indeed [benefits](#) if you obey [the law](#), but if you are [transgressors of the law](#), your [circumcision](#) becomes [uncircumcision](#).

Romans 2:26

the uncircumcised one (ULT)

“the person who is not circumcised”

keeps the requirements of the law (ULT)

“obeys what God commands in the law”

will not his uncircumcision be considered as circumcision (ULT)

Paul asks this question to emphasize that **circumcision** is not what makes one right before God. Alternate translation: “he will be considered as circumcised.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

will not his uncircumcision be considered as circumcision (ULT)

You can translate this question as a statement in an active form. Alternate translation: “God will consider him as circumcised.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [uncircumcised one](#)
- [uncircumcision](#) (2)
- [circumcision](#)
- [keeps](#)
- [requirements](#)
- [of...law](#)

ULT

²⁶ If, then, the [uncircumcised one](#) keeps the [requirements](#) of the [law](#), will not his [uncircumcision](#) be considered as [circumcision](#)?

Romans 2:27

And the one who, by nature uncircumcised, fulfills the law, will condemn (ULT)

You can translate this statement in an active form. Alternate translation: "And the one who obeys the law, even though people have not physically circumcised him, will condemn" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [uncircumcised](#)
- [circumcision](#)
- [who...fulfills](#)
- [law](#)
- [of the law](#)
- [will condemn](#)
- [as a transgressor](#)

ULT

²⁷ And the one who, by nature [uncircumcised](#), [fulfills](#) the [law](#), [will condemn](#) you [as a transgressor of the law](#), though having the letter and [circumcision](#)!

Romans 2:28

outwardly (ULT)

This refers to Jewish rituals, such as circumcision, which people can see.

merely outward in the flesh

This refers to the physical change to a man's body when someone circumcises him.

the flesh (ULT)

Here, **the flesh** is a synecdoche for the whole body. Alternate translation: "the body" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [a Jew](#)
- [is circumcision](#)
- [the flesh](#)

ULT

28 For he is not [a Jew](#) who {is} one outwardly; neither [is circumcision](#) that which {is} outward in [the flesh](#).

Romans 2:29

the one who {is} inwardly a Jew, and circumcision of the heart (ULT)

These two phrases have similar meanings. The first phrase, **the one who is inwardly a Jew**, explains the second phrase, **circumcision of the heart**. (See: [Parallelism](#))

ULT

²⁹ But the one who {is} inwardly a Jew, and [circumcision of the heart](#) in the Spirit, not in the letter; of him the [praise](#) {is} not from men but from [God](#).

inwardly (ULT)

This refers to the values and motivations of the person whom God has transformed.

of the heart (ULT)

Here, **heart** is a metonym for the inner person. (See: [Metonymy](#))

in the Spirit, not in the letter (ULT)

Here, **letter** is a synecdoche that refers to written scripture. Alternate translation: “through the work of the Holy Spirit, not because you know the scriptures” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

inwardly...the Spirit (ULT)

The term **the Spirit** could refer to: (1) the Holy Spirit. (2) the spiritual part of the person that God changes.

Translation Words - ULT

- [a Jew](#)
- [circumcision](#)
- [of the heart](#)
- [the Spirit](#)
- [praise](#)
- [God](#)

Romans 3

Romans 3 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with verses 4 and 10-18 of this chapter, which are words from the Old Testament.

Special concepts in this chapter

Chapter 3 answers the question, "What advantage does being a Jew have over being a Gentile?" (See: [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [law of God](#) and [save](#), [saved](#), [safe](#), [salvation](#))

"For all have sinned and come short of the glory of God"

Because God is holy, anyone with him in heaven must be perfect. Any sin at all will condemn a person. (See: [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#) and [condemn](#), [condemned](#), [condemnation](#))

The purpose of the law of Moses

Obeying the law cannot make a person right with God. Obeying God's law is a way a person shows they believe in God. People have always been justified only by faith. (See: [just](#), [justice](#), [unjust](#), [injustice](#), [justify](#), [justification](#) and [faith](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Rhetorical Questions

Paul frequently uses rhetorical questions in this chapter. It appears the intent of these rhetorical questions is to make the reader see their sin so they will trust in Jesus. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [guilt](#), [guilty](#))

Romans 3:1

Connecting Statement:

Paul proclaims the advantage that Jews have because God gave them his law.

What then {is} the advantage of the Jew, or what {is} the benefit of the circumcision (ULT)

Paul presents ideas that people might have after they hear what he wrote in chapter 2. He does this in order to respond to them in verse 2. Alternate translation: "Some people might say, 'Then what advantage does the Jew have? And what is the benefit of circumcision?'" or "Some people might say, 'If that is true, then the Jews do not have any advantage, and there is no benefit in being circumcised.'" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

What then {is} the advantage of the Jew, or what {is} the benefit of the circumcision (ULT)

Paul used a rhetorical question to cause the listeners to think about the answer. He will answer clearly in the following verses. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of...Jew
- benefit
- of...circumcision

ULT

¹ What then {is} the advantage of the Jew, or what {is} the benefit of the circumcision?

Romans 3:2

Great in every way (ULT)

Paul now responds to the concerns brought up in verse 1. Here, **Great in every way!** is an emphatic answer to that question. Alternate translation: “But there is great advantage to being a Jew!” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

² Great in every way! For first of all, that they were entrusted with the sayings of God.

first of all (ULT)

This could mean: (1) “first in order of time.” (2) “most certainly.” (3) This could mean “most importantly.”

they were entrusted with the sayings of God (ULT)

Here, **the sayings of God** refers to God’s words and promises. You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “God gave his words that contain his promises to the Jews” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of God

Romans 3:3

For what if some were unfaithful? Their unbelief will not abolish the faithfulness of God, will it (ULT)

Paul uses these questions to make people think. Alternate translation: "Some Jews have not been faithful to God. Should we conclude from this that God will not fulfill his promise?" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

³ For what if some [were unfaithful](#)? Their [unbelief](#) will not abolish the [faithfulness of God](#), will it?

Translation Words - ULT

- [were unfaithful](#)
- [unbelief](#)
- [faithfulness](#)
- [of God](#)

Romans 3:4

May it never be (ULT)

This expression strongly denies that this could happen. You may have an expression in your language that you could use here. "That is not possible!" or "Certainly not!"

Instead, let God be (ULT)

"We should say this instead, let God be"

let...be...God...true (ULT)

God will always be true and will keep his promises. Alternate translation: "God always does what he has promised" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

but every man a liar (ULT)

The words **every** and **liar** are exaggerations here to add emphasis that God alone is always true to his promises. Alternate translation: "even if every man were a liar" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Just as it has been written (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "Just as the scriptures themselves agree with what I am saying" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

That you might be shown to be righteous in your words, and that you might prevail when you are judged (ULT)

These two phrases have very similar meanings. (See: [Parallelism](#))

That you might be shown to be righteous in your words, and that you might prevail when you are judged (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "Everyone must acknowledge that what you say is true, and you will always win your case when anyone accuses you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [true](#)
- [Just as](#)
- [it has been written](#)
- [you might be shown to be righteous](#)
- [when...are judged](#)

ULT

⁴ May it never be! Instead, let [God](#) be [true](#), but every man a liar. [Just as it has been written](#), "That [you might be shown to be righteous](#) in your words, and that you might prevail [when you are judged](#)."

Romans 3:5

But if our unrighteousness shows the righteousness of God, what will we say? God {is} not unrighteous for imposing {his} wrath (ULT)

Paul uses these questions to present what some people were arguing and to get his readers to think about whether or not this argument is true. Alternate translation: “Some people say that since our unrighteousness shows God’s righteousness, then God is unrighteous when he punishes us.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

⁵ But if our [unrighteousness](#) shows [the righteousness of God](#), what will we say? [God {is}](#) not [unrighteous](#) for imposing [{his} wrath](#), [{is he}](#)? (I speak according to men.)

for imposing {his} wrath (ULT)

Here, **wrath** is a metonym for punishment. Alternate translation: “to bring his punishment upon us” or “to punish us” (See: [Metonymy](#))

I speak according to men (ULT)

“I am saying here what some people say” or “This is what some people say”

Translation Words - ULT

- [unrighteousness](#)
- [the righteousness](#)
- [unrighteous](#)
- [of God](#)
- [God](#)
- [wrath](#)

Romans 3:6

May it never be (ULT)

“We must never say that God is unrighteous”

Otherwise, how will God judge the world (ULT)

Paul uses this question to show that the arguments against the gospel are not valid, since the Jews believe that God will judge all people. Alternate translation: “We all know that God will in fact judge the world!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

the world (ULT)

The **world** is a metonym for the people who live in the world. Alternate translation: “anyone in the world” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- will...judge
- world

ULT

⁶ May it never be! Otherwise, how will God judge the world?

Romans 3:7

But if the truth of God through my lie abounds to his glory, why am I still judged as a sinner (ULT)

Here Paul imagines someone continuing to reject the Christian gospel. That adversary argues, because his sin shows the righteousness of God, then God should not declare that he is a sinner on judgment day if, for example, he tells lies. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

⁷ But if the [truth of God](#) through my lie [abounds](#) to his [glory](#), why am I still [judged as a sinner](#)?

Translation Words - ULT

- [truth](#)
- [of God](#)
- [abounds](#)
- [glory](#)
- [judged](#)
- [as](#)
- [a sinner](#)

Romans 3:8

And not, just as we are blasphemed and just as some affirm us to say, “Let us do evil, so that good may come”?

Here Paul raises a question of his own, to show how ridiculous the argument of his imaginary adversary is. Alternate translation: “I might as well be saying, ‘Let us do evil, so that good may come!’” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

just as we are blasphemed (ULT)

“as some lie to tell others that this is what we are saying”

Their condemnation is just (ULT)

It will be only fair when God condemns these enemies of Paul, for telling lies about what Paul has been teaching.

Translation Words - ULT

- [just as](#)
- [just as](#)
- [we are blasphemed](#)
- [evil](#)
- [good](#)
- [condemnation](#)
- [just](#)

ULT

⁸ And not—[just as we are blasphemed](#) and [just as](#) some affirm us to say—“Let us do [evil](#), so that [good](#) may come”? Their [condemnation](#) is [just](#).

Romans 3:9

Connecting Statement:

Paul sums up that all are guilty of sin, none are righteous, and no one seeks God.

What then? Are we excusing ourselves (ULT)

Paul asks these questions to emphasize his point. Alternate translation: "We Jews should not try to imagine we are going to escape God's judgment, just because we are Jewish!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Not at all (ULT)

These words are stronger than a simple "no," but not as strong as "absolutely not!"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jews](#)
- [Greeks](#)
- [sin](#)

ULT

⁹ What then? Are we excusing ourselves? Not at all. For we have already accused both [Jews](#) and [Greeks](#), all of them, to be under [sin](#).

Romans 3:10

Just as it is written (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "This is as the prophets have written in the Scriptures" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

10 [Just as it is written](#): "There is none [righteous](#), not even one."

Translation Words - ULT

- [Just as](#)
- [it is written](#)
- [righteous](#)

Romans 3:11

There is none who understands (ULT)

There is no one who understands what is right. Alternate translation: “No one really understands what is right” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

11 There is none [who understands](#).

There is none [who seeks God](#).

There is none who seeks God (ULT)

Here the phrase **seeks God** means to have a relationship with God. Alternate translation: “No one sincerely tries to have a right relationship with God” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [who understands](#)
- [who seeks](#)
- [God](#)

Romans 3:12

They all have turned away (ULT)

This is an idiom that means the people do not even want to think about God. They want to avoid him. Alternate translation: "They have all rejected God" (See: [Idiom](#))

They together have become useless (ULT)

Since no one does what is good, they are useless to God. Alternate translation: "Everyone has become useless to God" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [They...have turned away](#)
- [good](#)

ULT

¹² They all [have turned away](#). They together have become useless. There is none doing [good](#)—there is not even one."

Romans 3:13

Their...Their (ULT)

The words **Their** refer to the “Jews and Greeks” of [Romans 3:9](#).

Their throat (ULT)

Here, **throat** is a metonym for everything that people say that is unrighteous and disgusting. (See: [Metonymy](#))

an open grave (ULT)

Here, **open grave** is a metaphor that refers to the stench of the evil words of the people. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Their tongues have deceived (ULT)

Here, **tongues** is a metonym for the false words that people speak. Alternate translation: “People have spoken lies” (See: [Metonymy](#))

The poison of asps {is} under their lips (ULT)

Here, **poison of asps** is a metaphor that is used to represent the great harm of the evil words that the people speak. Alternate translation: “Their evil words injure people just like the poison of a venomous snake” (See: [Metaphor](#))

The poison of asps {is} under their lips (ULT)

The word **lips** refers to the words of the people. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [an...grave](#)
- [tongues](#)
- [have deceived](#)

ULT

13 “Their throat {is} an open [grave](#). Their [tongues have deceived](#). The poison of asps {is} under their lips.”

Romans 3:14

Their mouths are full of cursing and bitterness (ULT)

Here, **mouths** is a metonym that represents the evil words of the people. Alternate translation: "They are full of cursing and bitterness" (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

¹⁴ "Their mouths are full of cursing and bitterness."

Their mouths are full of cursing and bitterness (ULT)

Paul exaggerates about the amount of **cursing and bitterness** in these people to emphasize how evil they were. Alternate translation: "They often speak curses and cruel words" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Their mouths are full of cursing and bitterness (ULT)

The word **full** exaggerates how often people speak bitterly and curse. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Romans 3:15

Their feet {are} swift to pour out blood (ULT)

Here, **feet** is a synecdoche that represents the people themselves. Alternate translation: "They are in a hurry to shed blood" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

ULT

15 "Their feet {are} swift to pour out [blood](#)."

Their feet {are} swift to pour out blood (ULT)

The word **blood** is a metaphor that refers to killing people. Alternate translation: "They are in a hurry to harm and murder people" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Their feet (ULT)

Their refers to the Jews and Greeks in [Romans 3:9](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [blood](#)

Romans 3:16

their paths (ULT)

Here, **their** refers to the Jews and Greeks in [Romans 3:9](#).

Destruction and suffering {are} in their paths (ULT)

Destruction and **suffering** are metonyms that represent the harm that these people cause others to suffer. Alternate translation: "They try to destroy others and cause them to suffer" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [suffering](#)

ULT

¹⁶ Destruction and [suffering](#) {are} in their paths.

Romans 3:17

they have...known (ULT)

These words refer to the Jews and Greeks in [Romans 3:9](#).

a way of peace (ULT)

“how to live at peace with others.” A **way** is a road or path.

Translation Words - ULT

- [they have...known](#)
- [of peace](#)

ULT

17 And [they have](#) not [known](#) a way of [peace](#).”

Romans 3:18

their (ULT)

Here, **their** refers to the Jews and Greeks in [Romans 3:9](#).

There is no fear of God before their eyes (ULT)

Here, **fear** is a metonym that represents respect for God and willingness to honor him. Alternate translation: "Everyone refuses to give God the respect he deserves" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

ULT

18 "There is no **fear of God** before their eyes."

Translation Words - ULT

- [fear](#)
- [of God](#)

Romans 3:19

whatever the law says...to those...it speaks (ULT)

Paul speaks of **the law** here as if it were alive and had its own voice. Alternate translation: “everything that the law says people should do is for those” or “all the commands that Moses wrote in the law are for those” (See: [Personification](#))

ULT

¹⁹ Now [we know](#) that whatever the [law](#) says, it speaks to those under the [law](#), so that every mouth may be shut, and the whole [world](#) may become [accountable to God](#).

to those under the law (ULT)

“those who must obey the law”

so that every mouth may be shut (ULT)

Here, **mouth** is a synecdoche that means the words people speak. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

so that every mouth may be shut (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “so that no people will be able to say anything valid to defend themselves” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the whole world may become accountable to God (ULT)

Here, **world** is a synecdoche that represents all the people who live in the world. Alternate translation: “that God can declare everyone in the world guilty” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [we know](#)
- [law](#)
- [law](#)
- [world](#)
- [accountable](#)
- [to God](#)

Romans 3:20**flesh (ULT)**

Here, **flesh** refers to all human beings.

for (ULT)

“Therefore” or “This is because”

through...of the law...the knowledge of sin (ULT)

“when someone knows God’s law, he realizes that he has sinned”

Translation Words - ULT

- flesh
- will be justified
- the works
- of the law
- the law (2)
- the knowledge
- of sin

ULT

²⁰ {This is} because no flesh will be justified by the works of the law in his sight; for through the law {is} the knowledge of sin.

Romans 3:21

Connecting Statement:

But here shows Paul has completed his introduction and is now beginning to make his main point.

now (ULT)

The word **now** refers to the time since Jesus came to the earth.

apart from the law, the righteousness of God has been made known (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "God has made known a way to be right with him without obeying the law" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

It was witnessed by the Law and the Prophets (ULT)

The words **the Law and the Prophets** refer to the parts of scripture that Moses and the prophets wrote in the Jewish scriptures. Paul describes them here as if they were people testifying in court. (See: [Personification](#))

It was witnessed by the Law and the Prophets (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "What Moses and the prophets wrote confirms this" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the law](#)
- [Law \(2\)](#)
- [the righteousness](#)
- [of God](#)
- [has been made known](#)
- [It was witnessed](#)
- [Prophets](#)

ULT

²¹ But now, apart from [the law](#), [the righteousness of God has been made known](#). It was witnessed by the [Law](#) and the [Prophets](#);

Romans 3:22

the righteousness...of God {is} through faith in Jesus Christ (ULT)

Here, **righteousness** means being right with God. Alternate translation: “being right with God comes about through trusting Jesus Christ” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

²² but the righteousness of God {is} through faith in Jesus Christ to all those who believe, for there is no distinction.

for there is no distinction (ULT)

Paul implies that God accepts all people in the same way. Alternate translation: “because there is no difference at all between the Jews and the Gentiles” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the righteousness](#)
- [of God](#)
- [faith](#)
- [in Jesus](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [who believe](#)

Romans 3:23

fall short of the glory of God (ULT)

Here the **glory of God** is a metonym that refers to the image of God and his nature. Alternate translation: "have failed to be like God" (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

²³ For all [have sinned](#) and fall short of the [glory of God](#),

Translation Words - ULT

- [have sinned](#)
- [of...glory](#)
- [of God](#)

Romans 3:24

being freely justified by his grace through the redemption that {is} in Christ Jesus (ULT)

Here, **justified** refers to being made right with God. Alternate translation: “the have been made right with God as a free gift, because Christ Jesus redeemed them” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

²⁴ being freely justified by his grace through the redemption that {is} in Christ Jesus;

being freely justified by his grace through the redemption that {is} in Christ Jesus (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “God makes them right with himself as a free gift, because Christ Jesus sets them free” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

being freely justified (ULT)

This means that they are justified without having to earn or merit being justified. God freely justifies them. Alternate translation: “they are made right with God without earning it”

Translation Words - ULT

- [being...justified](#)
- [freely](#)
- [by...grace](#)
- [redemption](#)
- [in Christ Jesus](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [Jesus](#)

Romans 3:25

in his blood (ULT)

Here, **his blood** is a metonym for the death of Jesus as a sacrifice for sins. Alternate translation: “in his death as a sacrifice for sins” (See: [Metonymy](#))

overlooking (ULT)

This could mean: (1) God ignores their sin. (2) God forgives their sin.

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [as a propitiation](#)
- [faith](#)
- [blood](#)
- [a demonstration](#)
- [of...justice](#)
- [of...sins](#)

ULT

²⁵ whom [God](#) intended [as a propitiation](#) through [faith](#) in his [blood](#) for a [demonstration](#) of his [justice](#), because of the overlooking of the [sins](#) that happened previously

Romans 3:26

in...for the demonstration of his righteousness...this present time (ULT)

“he did this to show how God makes people right with himself”

so that he could be just, and the justifier of the one who {is} of faith in Jesus (ULT)

“in order to show by this that he is both just and the one who declares everyone righteous who has faith in Jesus”

ULT

²⁶ in the forbearance of God, for the demonstration of his righteousness at this present time, so that he could be just, and the justifier of the one who {is} of faith in Jesus.

Translation Words - ULT

- of God
- demonstration
- of...righteousness
- just
- time
- present time
- the justifier
- faith
- in Jesus

Romans 3:27

Where then {is} boasting (ULT)

Paul asks this question to show that there is no reason for people to boast about obeying the law. Alternate translation: "So there is no way that we can boast that God favors us because we obeyed those laws." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

27 Where then {is} [boasting](#)? It is excluded. Through what kind [of law](#)? [Of works](#)? No, but through [the law of faith](#).

It is excluded (ULT)

You can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "We have no reason to boast at all" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Through what kind of law? Of works (ULT)

Paul asks two rhetorical questions to emphasize that it is not the **law** that keeps us from boasting. You can translate this by combining the two questions into one. Alternate translation: "Should we exclude it because of our good works?" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

No, but through the law of faith (ULT)

You can translate this by including the words that Paul implies. Alternate translation: "No, rather, we should exclude it because of faith" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [boasting](#)
- [of law](#)
- [the law](#) (2)
- [Of works](#)
- [of faith](#)

Romans 3:28

a man (ULT)

Here, a **man** refers to any person. (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))

a man to be justified by faith (ULT)

You can translate the abstract noun **faith** with the verb “believe.” Alternate translation: “a person is justified when they believe in Christ” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

a man to be justified by faith (ULT)

You can translate this in active form. Alternate translation: “God justifies any person who believes in Christ” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

apart from works of the law (ULT)

“even if he has done no works of the law”

Translation Words - ULT

- [to be justified](#)
- [by faith](#)
- [works](#)
- [of the law](#)

ULT

²⁸ For we reckon a man [to be justified by faith](#) apart from [works of the law](#).

Romans 3:29

Or {is} God of Jews only (ULT)

Paul asks this question for emphasis. Alternate translation: "You who are Jews certainly should not think that you are the only ones whom God will accept!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

²⁹ Or {is} [God of Jews](#) only? {Is he} not also [of Gentiles](#)? Yes, [of Gentiles](#) also.

not also of Gentiles? Yes, of Gentiles also (ULT)

Paul asks this question to emphasize his point. Alternate translation: "He will also accept non-Jews, that is, Gentiles" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [of Jews](#)
- [of Gentiles](#)
- [of Gentiles](#) (2)

Romans 3:30

he will justify the circumcision by faith, and the uncircumcision through faith (ULT)

Here, **the circumcision** is a metonym that refers to Jews and **the uncircumcision** is a metonym that refers to non-Jews. Alternate translation: "God will make both Jews and non-Jews right with himself through their faith in Christ" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [will justify](#)
- [the circumcision](#)
- [the uncircumcision](#)
- [faith](#)
- [faith \(2\)](#)

ULT

³⁰ If, indeed, [God](#) {is} one, he [will justify the circumcision by faith](#), and [the uncircumcision through faith](#).

Romans 3:31

Do we then nullify the law through faith (ULT)

Paul asks a question that one of his readers might have. Alternate translation: "Someone might say that we can ignore the law because we have faith." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

³¹ Do we then nullify [the law](#) through [faith](#)? May it never be! Instead, we uphold [the law](#).

May it never be (ULT)

This expression gives the strongest possible negative answer to the preceding rhetorical question. You may have a similar express in your language that you could use here. Alternate translation: "This is certainly not true" or "Certainly not" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

the law...we uphold (ULT)

"we obey the law"

Do we...nullify (ULT)

The pronoun **we** refers to Paul, other believers, and the readers. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the law](#)
- [the law](#) (2)
- [faith](#)

Romans 4

Romans 4 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with verses 7-8 of this chapter, which are words from the Old Testament.

Special concepts in this chapter

The purpose of the law of Moses

Paul builds upon material from chapter 3. He explains how Abraham, the father of Israel, was justified. Even Abraham could not be justified by what he did. Obeying the law of Moses does not make a person right with God. Obeying God's commands is a way a person shows they believe in God. People have always been justified only by faith. (See: [just](#), [justice](#), [unjust](#), [injustice](#), [justify](#), [justification](#) and [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [law of God](#) and [faith](#))

Circumcision

Circumcision was important to the Israelites. It identified a person as a descendant of Abraham. It was also a sign of the covenant between Abraham and Yahweh. However, no person was justified only by being circumcised. (See: [circumcise](#), [circumcised](#), [circumcision](#), [uncircumcised](#), [uncircumcision](#) and [covenant](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Rhetorical Questions

Paul uses rhetorical questions in this chapter. It appears the intent of these rhetorical questions is to make the reader see their sin so they will trust in Jesus. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [guilt](#), [guilty](#) and [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Romans 4:1

Connecting Statement:

Paul confirms that even in the past believers were made right with God by faith and not by the law.

What then will we say that Abraham, our forefather according to the flesh, has discovered (ULT)

Paul uses the question to catch the attention of the reader and to start talking about something new. Alternate translation: "This is what Abraham our physical ancestor found" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

¹ What then will we say that [Abraham](#), our [forefather](#) according to [the flesh](#), has discovered?

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abraham](#)
- [forefather](#)
- [the flesh](#)

Romans 4:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Abraham
- was justified
- works
- a reason to boast
- God

ULT

² For if Abraham was justified by works, he has a reason to boast, but not before God.

Romans 4:3

For what does the scripture say (ULT)

Paul uses this question to add emphasis. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

For what does the scripture say (ULT)

Paul speaks of the Scriptures as if they were alive and could talk. Alternate translation: “For we can read in the scripture” (See: [Personification](#))

it was counted to him as righteousness (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “God considered Abraham as a righteous person” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [scripture](#)
- [Abraham](#)
- [believed](#)
- [God](#)
- [righteousness](#)

ULT

³ For what does the [scripture](#) say? “But [Abraham believed God](#), and it was counted to him as [righteousness](#).”

Romans 4:4

the wage is not counted as a gift (ULT)

You can translate this in active form. Alternate translation: “no one counts what the employer pays him as a gift from the employer” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

but as an obligation (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “but as what his employer owes him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [who works](#)
- [wage](#)
- [a gift](#)

ULT

⁴ Now to the one [who works](#), the [wage](#) is not counted as [a gift](#), but as an obligation.

Romans 4:5

in the one who justifies (ULT)

“in God, who justifies”

his faith is counted as righteousness (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “God considers that person’s faith as righteousness” or “God considers that person righteous because of his faith” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

⁵ But to the one [who does not work](#), but [believes](#) in the one [who justifies](#) the [ungodly](#), his [faith](#) is counted as [righteousness](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [who does...work](#)
- [believes](#)
- [who justifies](#)
- [ungodly](#)
- [faith](#)
- [righteousness](#)

Romans 4:6

Even as David also speaks of the blessing of the man to whom God counts righteousness apart from works (ULT)

“David also wrote about how God blesses the man whom God makes righteous without works”

ULT

⁶ Even as David also speaks of the blessing of the man to whom God counts righteousness apart from works:

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- speaks
- of...blessing
- God
- righteousness
- works

Romans 4:7

those of whom {their} lawless deeds are forgiven...of whom {their} sins are covered (ULT)

The same concept is stated in two different ways. (See: [Parallelism](#))

ULT

⁷ “Blessed {are} those of whom {their} lawless deeds are forgiven, and of whom {their} sins are covered.

those of whom {their} lawless deeds are forgiven...of whom {their} sins are covered (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “the Lord has forgiven those who have broken the law ... whose sins the Lord has covered” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Blessed](#)
- [lawless deeds](#)
- [are forgiven](#)
- [sins](#)

Romans 4:8

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Blessed
- the Lord
- sin

ULT

⁸ Blessed {is} the man of whom the Lord will certainly not count sin.”

Romans 4:9

Then {is} this blessedness to the circumcision, or also to the uncircumcision (ULT)

This remark appears in the form of a question to add emphasis. Alternate translation: “Does God bless only those who are circumcised, or also those who are not circumcised?” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

⁹ Then {is} this [blessedness](#) to the [circumcision](#), or also to the [uncircumcision](#)? For we say, “[Faith](#) was counted [to Abraham](#) as [righteousness](#).”

the circumcision (ULT)

Here **the circumcision** is a metonym that refers to the Jewish people. Alternate translation: “the Jews” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the uncircumcision (ULT)

Here **the uncircumcision** is a metonym that refers to the people who are not Jews. Alternate translation: “the Gentiles” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Faith was counted to Abraham as righteousness (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “God considered the faith of Abraham as righteousness” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [blessedness](#)
- [circumcision](#)
- [uncircumcision](#)
- [Faith](#)
- [to Abraham](#)
- [righteousness](#)

Romans 4:10

How then was it counted? Being in circumcision, or in uncircumcision (ULT)

Paul asks these questions to add emphasis to his remarks. Alternate translation: "When did God consider Abraham to be righteous? Was it before his circumcision, or after it?" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

¹⁰ How then was it counted? Being in [circumcision](#), or in [uncircumcision](#)? {It was} not in [circumcision](#), but in [uncircumcision](#).

It was not in circumcision, but in uncircumcision

"It happened before he was circumcised, not after he was circumcised"

Translation Words - ULT

- [circumcision](#)
- [uncircumcision](#)
- [circumcision](#) (2)
- [uncircumcision](#) (2)

Romans 4:11

as a seal of the righteousness of the faith that {was} in {his} uncircumcision (ULT)

Here, **righteousness of the faith** means that God considered him to be righteous. Alternate translation: “a visible sign that God considered him righteous because he had believed in God before he was circumcised” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

through uncircumcision (ULT)

“even if they are not circumcised”

so as to be counted for them as righteousness (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “for God will consider them righteous” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- he received
- the sign
- of circumcision
- uncircumcision
- uncircumcision
- as a seal
- of...righteousness
- as righteousness
- of...faith
- the father
- who believe

ULT

¹¹ And he received the sign of circumcision as a seal of the righteousness of the faith that {was} in {his} uncircumcision, so that he would be the father of all those who believe through uncircumcision, so as to be counted for them as righteousness;

Romans 4:12

and the father of circumcision (ULT)

Here, **circumcision** refers to those who are true believers in God, both Jews and Gentiles.

who also walk in the footsteps of the uncircumcised faith of our father Abraham (ULT)

Here, **walk in the footsteps** is an idiom that means to follow someone's example. Alternate translation: "who follow our father Abraham's example of faith even before he was circumcised" or "who have faith as our father Abraham did while he was still uncircumcised" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the father](#)
- [father](#)
- [of circumcision](#)
- [the circumcision](#) (2)
- [uncircumcised](#)
- [who...walk](#)
- [of...faith](#)
- [of...Abraham](#)

ULT

¹² and [the father of circumcision](#) to those who {are} not only from [the circumcision](#), but who also [walk](#) in the footsteps of the [uncircumcised faith](#) of our [father Abraham](#).

Romans 4:13

but through the righteousness of faith (ULT)

The words “the promise came” are understood from the first phrase. You can translate this by adding these implied words. Alternate translation: “but the promise came through faith, which God considers as righteousness” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [promise](#)
- [to Abraham](#)
- [to...seed](#)
- [heir](#)
- [of the world](#)
- [the law](#)
- [the righteousness](#)
- [of faith](#)

ULT

¹³ For the [promise to Abraham](#) or to his [seed](#) that he would be [heir of the world](#) {was} not through [the law](#) but through [the righteousness of faith](#).

Romans 4:14

heirs (ULT)

The people to whom God has made promises are spoken of as if they were to inherit property and wealth from a family member. (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

14 For if those from [the law](#) {are} [heirs](#), [faith](#) has been made empty, and the [promise](#) has been nullified.

if...those from the law {are} heirs (ULT)

Here, **from the law** refers to obeying the law. Alternate translation: “if those who obey the law are the ones who will inherit the earth” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

faith is made empty, and the promise is void

“faith has no value, and the promise is meaningless”

Translation Words - ULT

- [the law](#)
- [heirs](#)
- [faith](#)
- [promise](#)

Romans 4:15

neither {is there} transgression (ULT)

This can be restated to remove the abstract noun **trespass**. Alternate translation: "no one can break the law" or "it is impossible to disobey the law" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [law](#)
- [law \(2\)](#)
- [wrath](#)
- [transgression](#)

ULT

¹⁵ For the [law](#) brings about [wrath](#), but where there is no [law](#), neither {is there} [transgression](#).

Romans 4:16

by faith (ULT)

The word **it** refers to receiving what God had promised. Alternate translation: “it is by faith that we receive the promise” or “we receive the promise by faith”

For this reason {it is} by faith, in order that according to grace, the promise might be certain (ULT)

“So the promise was given by faith and received through grace, so that it could be assured”

by...the...the law (ULT)

This refers to the Jewish people, who were obligated to obey **the law** of Moses.

by faith...the...of Abraham (ULT)

This refers to those who have faith just as Abraham did before he was circumcised. Alternate translation: “those who believe as Abraham did”

the father of us all (ULT)

Here the word **us** refers to Paul and includes all Jewish and non-Jewish believers in Christ. Abraham is the physical ancestor of the Jewish people, but he is also the spiritual father of those who have faith. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [faith](#)
- [the faith](#) (2)
- [grace](#)
- [promise](#)
- [to...seed](#)
- [law](#)
- [of Abraham](#)
- [the father](#)

ULT

16 For this reason {it is} by [faith](#), in order that according to [grace](#), the [promise](#) might be certain to all the [seed](#)—not only to those from the [law](#), but also to those from [the faith of Abraham](#). He is [the father](#) of us all,

Romans 4:17

just as it is written (ULT)

Where it is written can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “as it has been written in the scriptures” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

just as it is written (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “as someone has written in the scriptures” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

I have appointed you (ULT)

Here the word **you** is singular and refers to Abraham. (See: [Forms of You](#))

in the presence of God whom he trusted, who gives life to the dead (ULT)

Here, **whom he trusted** refers to God. Alternate translation: “Abraham was in the presence of God whom he trusted, who gives life to those who have died” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

calls the things that do not exist into existence

“created everything from nothing”

Translation Words - ULT

- [just as](#)
- [into](#)
- [it is written](#)
- [I have appointed](#)
- [the father](#)
- [of...nations](#)
- [God](#)
- [he trusted](#)
- [who gives life](#)
- [to...dead](#)
- [calls](#)

ULT

17 [just as it is written](#), “I have appointed you [the father](#) of many [nations](#),” in the presence of [God](#) whom [he trusted](#), who [gives life](#) to the [dead](#) and [calls](#) the things not existing [into](#) existence;

Romans 4:18

who against hope believed in hope (ULT)

This idiom means that Abraham trusted God even though it did not seem possible that he could have a son. Alternate translation: “and even though it seemed impossible for him to have descendants, he believe God” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

18 who against [hope](#) [believed](#) in [hope](#), that he might become [the father](#) of many [nations](#), according to what he had been told, “So will your [seed](#) be.”

according to what he had been told (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “just as God said to Abraham” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

So will your seed be (ULT)

The full promise God gave to Abraham can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “You will have more descendants than you can count” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [hope](#)
- [hope](#)
- [believed](#)
- [the father](#)
- [of...nations](#)
- [seed](#)

Romans 4:19

And not having become weak in the faith (ULT)

You can translate this in a positive form. Alternate translation: “And he remained strong in his faith, although” (See: [Litotes](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [in...faith](#)
- [body](#)
- [as...having died](#)
- [deadness](#)
- [of...womb](#)
- [of Sarah](#)

ULT

¹⁹ And not having become weak in the [faith](#), he considered his own [body](#) as already [having died](#) (being about a hundred years old)—and the [deadness](#) of the [womb of Sarah](#).

Romans 4:20

he did not waver in unbelief, but (ULT)

You can translate this double negative in a positive form. Alternate translation: "he kept on acting in faith, and" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

was strengthened in faith (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "became stronger in his faith" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

²⁰ But toward the [promise of God](#), he did not waver [in unbelief](#), but [was strengthened in faith](#), having given [glory to God](#),

Translation Words - ULT

- [promise](#)
- [of God](#)
- [to God](#)
- [in unbelief](#)
- [was strengthened](#)
- [in faith](#)
- [glory](#)

Romans 4:21

and fully convinced (ULT)

“and Abraham was completely sure”

and...he is...able to do (ULT)

“God was able to do”

Translation Words - ULT

- he had promised

ULT

²¹ and fully convinced that what he had promised, he is also able to do.

Romans 4:22

Therefore, this was also counted to him as righteousness (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation:

“Therefore God counted Abraham’s belief as righteousness” or

“Therefore God considered Abraham righteous because Abraham believed him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

²² Therefore, this was also counted to him as [righteousness](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [righteousness](#)

Romans 4:23

Now it was...written (ULT)

Now is used here to connect Abraham's being made right by faith to present-day believer's being made right by faith in Christ's death and resurrection.

ULT

²³ Now **it was** not **written** only for his sake, that it was counted to him,

only for his sake (ULT)

"for Abraham only"

that it was counted to him (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "that God counted righteousness to him" or "that God considered him righteous" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [it was...written](#)

Romans 4:24

for our sake (ULT)

The word **our** refers to Paul and includes all believers in Christ. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

to whom is about to be counted, to those who believe (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "because God will consider us righteous also if we believe" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the one who raised Jesus our Lord from the dead (ULT)

The phrase **raised ... from the dead** is an idiom for "caused to live again." Alternate translation: "the one who caused Jesus our Lord to live again" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [who believe](#)
- [who raised](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [the dead](#)

ULT

²⁴ but also for our sake, to whom is about to be counted, to those [who believe](#) in the one [who raised Jesus](#) our [Lord](#) from [the dead](#),

Romans 4:25

who was delivered up for our trespasses and was raised for our justification (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “whom God gave over to enemies for our trespasses and whom God brought back to life so he could make us right with him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

²⁵ who was delivered up for our [trespasses](#) and [was raised](#) for our [justification](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [trespasses](#)
- [was raised](#)
- [justification](#)

Romans 5

Romans 5 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Many scholars view verses 12-17 as some of the most important, but difficult, verses in Scripture to understand. Some of their richness and meaning has likely been lost while being translated from how the original Greek was constructed.

Special concepts in this chapter

Results of justification

How Paul explains the results of our being justified is an important part of this chapter. These results include having peace with God, having access to God, being confident about our future, being able to rejoice when suffering, being eternally saved, and being reconciled with God. (See: [just](#), [justice](#), [unjust](#), [injustice](#), [justify](#), [justification](#))

“All sinned”

Scholars are divided over what Paul meant in verse 12: “And death spread to all people, because all sinned.” Some believe that all of mankind was present in the “seed of Adam.” So, as Adam is the father of all mankind, all of mankind was present when Adam sinned. Others believe that Adam served as a representative head for mankind. So when he sinned, all of mankind “fell” as a result. Whether people today played an active or passive role in Adam’s original sin is one way these views differ. Other passages will help one decide. (See: [seed](#), [semen](#) and [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

The second Adam

Adam was the first man and the first “son” of God. He was created by God. He brought sin and death into the world by eating the forbidden fruit. Paul describes Jesus as the “second Adam” in this chapter and the true son of God. He brings life and overcame sin and death by dying on the cross. (See: [Son of God](#), [the Son](#) and [die](#), [dead](#), [deadly](#), [death](#))

Romans 5:1

Connecting Statement:

Paul begins to tell many different things that happen when God makes believers right with him.

Since we are justified (ULT)

“Because we are justified”

we have...our (ULT)

All occurrences of **we** and **our** refer to all believers and should be inclusive. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

through our Lord Jesus Christ (ULT)

“because of what our Lord Jesus Christ did”

Translation Words - ULT

- [we are justified](#)
- [faith](#)
- [peace](#)
- [God](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [Christ](#)

ULT

¹ Since [we are justified](#) by [faith](#), we have [peace](#) with [God](#) through our [Lord Jesus Christ](#),

Romans 5:2

Through him we also have our access by faith into this grace in which we stand

Here, **by faith** refers to our trust in Jesus, which allows us to **stand** before God. Alternate translation: “because we trust in Jesus, God allows us to come into his presence”

Translation Words - ULT

- by faith
- grace
- we boast
- the hope
- of...glory
- of God

ULT

² through whom we also have access by faith into this grace in which we stand, and we boast in the hope of the glory of God.

Romans 5:3

And not only this (ULT)

The word **this** refers to the ideas described in [Romans 5:1-2](#).

we also boast (ULT)

Here, **we** refers to all believers and should be inclusive. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [we...boast](#)
- [our sufferings](#)
- [suffering](#)
- [knowing](#)
- [endurance](#)

ULT

³ And not only this, but we also [boast](#) in [our sufferings](#), [knowing](#) that [suffering](#) produces [endurance](#),

Romans 5:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- endurance
- produces hope

ULT

⁴ and endurance produces character,
and character produces hope.

Romans 5:5

our...to us (ULT)

The words **our** and **us** refer to all believers and should be inclusive. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

that...hope does not disappoint (ULT)

Paul uses personification here as he speaks of **hope** as if it were alive. Alternate translation: “we are very confident that we will receive the things that we wait for” (See: [Personification](#))

ULT

⁵ And that **hope** does not **disappoint**, because the **love of God** has been poured into our **hearts** through **the Holy Spirit**, who has been given to us.

because the love of God has been poured into our hearts (ULT)

Here, **hearts** represents a person’s thoughts, feelings, or inner person. (See: [Metonymy](#))

because the love of God has been poured into our hearts (ULT)

The phrase **the love of God has been poured into our hearts** is a metaphor for God showing love to his people. Alternate translation: “because he has loved us greatly” or “because God has shown us how much he loves us” (See: [Metaphor](#))

because the love of God has been poured into our hearts (ULT)

You can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “because he has loved us greatly” or “because God has shown us how much he loves us” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [hope](#)
- [does...disappoint](#)
- [love](#)
- [of God](#)
- [hearts](#)
- [the Holy Spirit](#)

Romans 5:6

we (ULT)

The pronoun **we** here refers to all believers and so should be inclusive. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the right time](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [died](#)
- [the ungodly](#)

ULT

⁶ For we still being weak, yet at [the right time](#) [Christ died](#) for [the ungodly](#).

Romans 5:7

For someone will hardly die on behalf of a righteous man (ULT)

“For it is hard to find someone who is willing to die, even for a righteous man”

For someone...on behalf of...Perhaps...might even dare to die...a good person (ULT)

“But you might find someone who is willing to die for such a good person”

Translation Words - ULT

- will...die
- to die
- a righteous man
- a good person

ULT

⁷ For someone will hardly die on behalf of a righteous man. Perhaps, though, someone might even dare to die on behalf of a good person.

Romans 5:8

proves (ULT)

You can translate this verb in past tense using “demonstrated” or “showed.”

we...us (ULT)

The pronouns **us** and **we** refer to all believers and should be inclusive. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [love](#)
- [sinners](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [died](#)

ULT

⁸ But [God](#) proves his own [love](#) toward us, in that, we still being [sinners](#), [Christ](#) [died](#) for us.

Romans 5:9

Much more then, now that we have been justified by his blood (ULT)

Here, **justified** means that God puts us in a right relationship with himself. Alternate translation: "How much more then, now that we have been made right with God because of the death of Jesus on the cross" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

⁹ Much more then, now that [we have been justified](#) by his [blood](#), [we will be saved](#) through him from the [wrath](#).

Much more then, now that we have been justified by his blood (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "How much more will God do for us now that he has made us right with himself because of the death of Jesus on the cross" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

his blood (ULT)

Here, **his blood** is a metonym for the sacrificial death of Jesus on the cross. (See: [Metonymy](#))

we will be saved (ULT)

Here, **saved** means that through Jesus' sacrificial death on the cross, God has forgiven us and rescued us from being punished in hell for our sin.

the wrath (ULT)

Here, **wrath** is a metonym that refers to God's punishment of those who have sinned against him. Alternate translation: "God's punishment" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [we have been justified](#)
- [blood](#)
- [we will be saved](#)
- [wrath](#)

Romans 5:10

we have been reconciled...will we be saved (ULT)

Both occurrences of **we** refer to all believers and should be inclusive. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

his Son ... his life

“of God’s Son, much more, having been reconciled, will we be saved by the life of God’s Son”

we have been reconciled to God through the death of his Son (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “God allowed us to have a peaceful relationship with him because his son died for us” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

of his Son (ULT)

Son is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

having been reconciled (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “now that God has made us his friends again” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [enemies](#)
- [we have been reconciled](#)
- [having been reconciled](#)
- [to God](#)
- [death](#)
- [of...Son](#)
- [will we be saved](#)
- [life](#)

ULT

¹⁰ For if, being [enemies](#), [we have been reconciled to God](#) through the [death](#) of his [Son](#), much more, [having been reconciled](#), [will we be saved](#) by his [life](#).

Romans 5:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- we...rejoice
- God
- Lord
- Jesus
- Christ
- we...have received
- reconciliation

ULT

¹¹ Not only this, but we also rejoice in God through our Lord Jesus Christ, through whom we now have received this reconciliation.

Romans 5:12

Connecting Statement:

Paul explains why death happened even before God gave the law to Moses.

through one man sin entered into the world, and through sin, death (ULT)

Paul describes **sin** as a dangerous thing that came into the world through the actions of **one man**, Adam. This sin then became an opening through which death, pictured here as another dangerous thing, also came into the world. (See: [Personification](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [just as](#)
- [sin](#)
- [sin](#)
- [sinned](#)
- [world](#)
- [death](#)
- [death](#) (2)

ULT

¹² Therefore, [just as](#) through one man [sin](#) entered into the [world](#), and through [sin](#), [death](#), so also [death](#) spread to all people, because all [sinned](#).

Romans 5:13

For until the law, sin was in the world (ULT)

This means that the people sinned before God gave **the law**. Alternate translation: "People in the world sinned before God gave his law to Moses" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

¹³ For until [the law](#), [sin](#) was in [the world](#), but [sin](#) was not charged, being no [law](#).

but sin was not charged, being no law (ULT)

This means that God did not charge the people with sinning before he gave the law. You can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "but God did not record sin against the law before he gave the law" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the law](#)
- [law](#) (2)
- [sin](#)
- [sin](#) (2)
- [the world](#)

Romans 5:14

Nevertheless...death (ULT)

“Even though what I have just said is true, death” or “There was no written law from the time of Adam to the time of Moses, but death” (Romans 5:13).

death ruled from Adam until Moses (ULT)

Paul is speaking of **death** as if it were a king who **ruled**. Alternate translation: “people continued to die from the time of Adam until the time of Moses as a consequence of their sin” (See: [Personification](#))

even over those who did not sin like Adam’s disobedience

“even people whose sins were different from Adam’s continue to die”

who is a pattern of the one who is coming (ULT)

Adam was a pattern of Christ, who appeared much later. He had much in common with him.

Translation Words - ULT

- [death](#)
- [ruled](#)
- [Adam](#)
- [of Adam](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [who have...sinned](#)
- [like](#)
- [transgression](#)

ULT

¹⁴ Nevertheless, [death ruled](#) from [Adam](#) until [Moses](#), even over those [who have not sinned like the transgression of Adam](#), who is a pattern of the one who is coming.

Romans 5:15

For if by the trespass of one the many died (ULT)

Here, **one** refers to Adam. Alternate translation: "For if by the sin of Adam alone, many died" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

how much more did the grace of God and the gift by the grace of the one man, Jesus Christ, abound for the many (ULT)

Here, **grace** refers to God's free gift that he made available to everyone through Jesus Christ. Alternate translation: "even more through the man Jesus Christ, who died for us all, did God kindly offer us this gift of everlasting life, although we do not deserve it" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- like
- trespass
- trespass
- Christ
- did...abound
- gift
- gift
- died
- grace
- the grace
- of God
- Jesus

ULT

¹⁵ But not **like** the **trespass**, so also {is} the **gift**. For if by the **trespass** of one the many **died**, how much more did the **grace of God** and the **gift by the grace** of the one man, **Jesus Christ**, **abound** for the many!

Romans 5:16

And the gift {is} not as through the one having sinned (ULT)

Here, **the gift** refers to God's freely erasing the record of our sins. Alternate translation: "And the gift is not like the result of Adam's sin" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

¹⁶ And the **gift** {is} not **as** through the one **having sinned**. For indeed, the **judgment** followed one unto **condemnation**, but the **gift** followed many **trespasses** unto **justification**.

For indeed, the judgment followed one unto condemnation, but the gift followed many trespasses unto justification (ULT)

Here Paul gives two reasons why "the gift is not like the result of Adam's sin." The "judgment of condemnation" implies that we all deserve God's punishment for our sins. Alternate translation: "Because on the one hand, God declared that all people deserve to be punished because of the sin of one man, but on the other hand" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the...gift followed many trespasses unto justification (ULT)

This refers to how God makes us right with him even when we do not deserve it. Alternate translation: "God's kind gift to put us right with himself despite our many sins" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

followed many trespasses (ULT)

"after the sins of many"

Translation Words - ULT

- gift
- gift
- as
- having sinned
- judgment
- condemnation
- trespasses
- justification

Romans 5:17

by the trespass of the one (ULT)

This refers to the sin of Adam.

death ruled (ULT)

Here Paul speaks of **death** as a king who **ruled**. The “rule” of death causes everyone to die. Alternate translation: “everyone died” (See: [Personification](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [by...trespass](#)
- [death](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [ruled](#)
- [will...reign](#)
- [who receive](#)
- [of grace](#)
- [gift](#)
- [of righteousness](#)
- [life](#)
- [Jesus](#)

ULT

17 For if, by the [trespass](#) of the one, [death ruled](#) through the one, how much more will those [who receive](#) the abundance of [grace](#) and the [gift of righteousness reign](#) in [life](#) through the one, [Jesus Christ](#).

Romans 5:18

as through one trespass (ULT)

“as through the one sin committed by Adam”

to all men unto condemnation (ULT)

Here, **condemnation** refers to God’s punishment. Alternate translation: “all people deserve God’s punishment for sin” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

through one...righteous act (ULT)

the sacrifice of Jesus Christ

unto justification, life to all men (ULT)

Here, **justification** refers to God’s ability to make people right with him. Alternate translation: “God offered to make all people right with him so they would live” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- as
- trespass
- condemnation
- righteous act
- justification
- life

ULT

¹⁸ So then, as through one trespass to all men unto condemnation, so also through one righteous act unto justification, life to all men.

Romans 5:19

the disobedience of the one man (ULT)

the disobedience of Adam

the many were made sinners (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “many people sinned” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the...of the one...obedience (ULT)

the obedience of Jesus

will the many be made righteous (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “God will make many people right with him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [just as](#)
- [disobedience](#)
- [sinners](#)
- [obedience](#)
- [righteous](#)

ULT

¹⁹ For [just as](#) through the [disobedience](#) of the one man the many were made [sinners](#), so also through the [obedience](#) of the one will the many be made [righteous](#).

Romans 5:20

the law...came in (ULT)

Here Paul speaks of **the law** as if it were a person entering a room. Alternate translation: "God gave his law to Moses" (See: [Personification](#))

sin abounded (ULT)

"sin increased"

grace abounded even more (ULT)

Here, **grace** refers to God's undeserved blessings. Alternate translation: "God continued to act even more kindly toward them, in a way that they did not deserve" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the law](#)
- [trespass](#)
- [might increase](#)
- [sin](#)
- [grace](#)

ULT

²⁰ Now [the law](#) came in so that the [trespass might increase](#). But where [sin](#) abounded, [grace](#) abounded even more,

Romans 5:21

just as sin ruled in death (ULT)

Here Paul speaks of **sin** as if it were a king that **ruled**. Alternate translation: “as sin resulted in death” (See: [Personification](#))

so also grace might rule through righteousness unto everlasting life through Jesus Christ our Lord (ULT)

Paul speaks of **grace** here as if it were a king that ruled. Alternate translation: “grace gave people everlasting life through the righteousness of Jesus Christ our Lord” (See: [Personification](#))

so also grace might rule through righteousness (ULT)

Paul speaks of **grace** here as if it were a king that ruled. Alternate translation: “so God might give his free gift to people in righteousness” (See: [Personification](#))

so also grace might rule through righteousness (ULT)

The word **righteousness** refers to God’s ability to make people right with him. Alternate translation: “so God might give his free gift to people to make them right with him” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

our Lord (ULT)

With the pronoun **our**, Paul includes himself, his readers, and all believers. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [just as](#)
- [sin](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [ruled](#)
- [might rule](#)
- [death](#)
- [grace](#)
- [righteousness](#)
- [everlasting](#)
- [life](#)
- [Jesus](#)

ULT

²¹ so that [just as sin ruled](#) in [death](#), so also [grace might rule](#) through [righteousness](#) unto [everlasting life](#) through [Jesus Christ our Lord](#).

Romans 6

Romans 6 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Paul begins this chapter by answering how someone might hypothetically object to what he taught in Chapter 5. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Against the Law

In this chapter, Paul refutes the teaching that Christians can live however they want after they are saved. Scholars call this “antinomianism” or being “against the law.” To motivate godly living, Paul recalls the great price Jesus paid for a Christian to be saved. (See: [save, saved, safe, salvation](#) and [godly, godliness, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness](#))

Servants of sin

Before believing in Jesus, sin enslaves people. God frees Christians from serving sin. They are able to choose to serve Christ in their lives. Paul explains that when Christians choose to sin, they willingly choose to sin. (See: [faith](#) and [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#))

Fruit

This chapter uses the imagery of fruit. The image of fruit usually refers to a person’s faith producing good works in their life. (See: [fruit, fruitful, unfruitful](#) and [righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Rhetorical Questions

Paul uses rhetorical questions in this chapter. It appears the intent of these rhetorical questions is to make the reader see their sin so they will trust in Jesus. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [guilt, guilty](#) and [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Death

Paul uses “death” many different ways in this chapter: physical death, spiritual death, sin reigning in the heart of man, and to end something. He contrasts sin and death with the new life provided by Christ and the new way Christians are supposed to live after they are saved. (See: [die, dead, deadly, death](#))

Romans 6:1

Connecting Statement:

Under grace, Paul tells those who believe in Jesus to live a new life as though dead to sin and alive to God.

What then will we say? Should we continue in sin so that grace may abound (ULT)

Paul asks these rhetorical questions to get the attention of his readers. Alternate translation: "So, what should we say about all of this? We certainly should not keep on sinning so that God will give us more and more grace!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

will we say (ULT)

The pronoun **we** refers to Paul, his readers, and other people. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [in sin](#)
- [grace](#)

ULT

¹ What then will we say? Should we continue [in sin](#) so that [grace](#) may abound?

Romans 6:2

We who died to sin, how will we still live in it (ULT)

Paul uses this rhetorical question to add emphasis. You can translate this as a statement. Alternate translation: "We who died to sin should certainly not keep on sinning!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

² May it never be! We who [died to sin](#), how [will we](#) still [live](#) in it?

We who died to sin, how will we still live in it (ULT)

Here, **died to sin** means that those who follow Jesus are now like dead people who cannot be affected by sin. Alternate translation: "We are now like dead people on whom sin has no effect! So we certainly should not keep on sinning!" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [We...died](#)
- [to sin](#)
- [will we...live](#)

Romans 6:3

Or are you ignorant that as many as were baptized into Christ Jesus were baptized into his death (ULT)

Paul uses this question to add emphasis. Alternate translation:

“Remember, when someone baptized us to show that we have a

relationship with Christ, this also shows that we died with Christ on the cross!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

³ Or [are you ignorant](#) that as many as [were baptized](#) into [Christ Jesus](#) [were baptized](#) into his [death](#)?

Translation Words - ULT

- [are you ignorant](#)
- [were baptized](#)
- [were baptized](#) (2)
- [Christ Jesus](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [death](#)

Romans 6:4

We were buried, then, with him through baptism into death (ULT)

Here Paul speaks of a believer's **baptism** in water as if it were a **death** and burial. Alternate translation: "When someone baptized us, it is just like that person buried us with Christ in the tomb" (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

⁴ We were buried, then, with him through baptism into death, so that just as Christ was raised from the dead by the glory of the Father, so also we might walk in newness of life.

just as Christ was raised from the dead by the glory of the Father, so also we might walk in newness of life (ULT)

This compares a believer's new spiritual life to Jesus coming back to life physically. The believer's new spiritual life enables that person to obey God. Alternate translation: "just as Jesus was brought back to life after he died, we might have new spiritual life and obey God" (See: [Simile](#))

just as Christ was raised from the dead by the glory of the Father (ULT)

To be **raised from the dead** is an idiom for causing a person to live again. Alternate translation: "just as Jesus was raised back to life after he died" (See: [Idiom](#))

just as Christ was raised from the dead by the glory of the Father (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "just as the Father brought Jesus back to life after he died" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

from the dead (ULT)

This means he was brought back from among all those who have died. This expression describes all dead people together in the underworld. To be raised from among them speaks of becoming alive again.

Translation Words - ULT

- [We were buried](#)
- [baptism](#)
- [of life](#)
- [death](#)
- [the dead](#)
- [just as](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [was raised](#)
- [glory](#)
- [of...Father](#)
- [might walk](#)

Romans 6:5

we have become united with him in the likeness of his death, we will also certainly be united with {his} resurrection (ULT)

Paul compares our union with Christ to death. Those who are joined with Christ in death will share in his resurrection. (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

⁵ For if we have become united with him in the [likeness](#) of his [death](#), we will also certainly be united with {his} [resurrection](#);

we have become united with him in the likeness of his death, we will also certainly be united with {his} resurrection (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "died with him in the likeness of his death, we will also certainly be united with his resurrection" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [in...likeness](#)
- [of...death](#)
- [with...resurrection](#)

Romans 6:6

our old man was crucified with him (ULT)

The **old man** is a metaphor that refers to the person before he believes in Jesus. Paul describes our old sinful person as dying on the cross with Jesus when we believe in Jesus. Alternate translation: “our sinful person was crucified with Jesus” (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

⁶ [knowing](#) this, that our old man [was crucified with him](#), in order that the [body of sin](#) might be destroyed, that we might no longer [be enslaved to sin](#).

our old man was crucified with him (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “our sinful person died on the cross with Jesus” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the body of sin (ULT)

This is a metonym that refers to the whole sinful person. Alternate translation: “our sinful nature” (See: [Metonymy](#))

might be destroyed (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “might die” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

we might no longer be enslaved to sin (ULT)

You can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “sin should no longer enslave us” or “we should no longer be slaves to sin” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

we might no longer be enslaved to sin (ULT)

Being **enslaved to sin** is a metaphor meaning having such a strong desire to sin that one is unable to stop himself from sinning. It is as if sin controls the person. Alternate translation: “we should no longer be controlled by sin” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [knowing](#)
- [was crucified with him](#)
- [body](#)
- [of sin](#)
- [to sin](#)
- [might...be enslaved](#)

Romans 6:7

For the one having died is declared righteous from sin (ULT)

Here, **righteous** refers to God's ability to make people right with him. Alternate translation: "Because if a person has died to sin, that person is considered to be right with God" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

⁷ For the one [having died](#) is declared righteous from [sin](#).

For the one having died is declared righteous from sin (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "When a person has died to sin, God declares a person right with him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [having died](#)
- [sin](#)

Romans 6:8

we have died with Christ (ULT)

Here, **died** refers to the fact that believers are no longer controlled by sin. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- we have died
- Christ
- we believe
- we will...live together

ULT

⁸ But if [we have died](#) with Christ, [we believe](#) that [we will](#) also [live together](#) with him,

Romans 6:9

knowing that Christ, having been raised from the dead (ULT)

Here to be **raised** is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. Alternate translation: “for we know that Christ, who has been brought back to life after he died” (See: [Idiom](#))

ULT

⁹ knowing that Christ, having been raised from the dead, no longer dies; death no longer has authority over him.

knowing that Christ, having been raised from the dead (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “We know since God brought Christ back to life after he died” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

from the dead (ULT)

From among all those who have died. This expression describes all **dead** people together in the underworld. To be raised from among them is to become alive again.

death no longer has authority over him (ULT)

Here, **death** is described as a king or ruler that has power over people. Alternate translation: “he can never die again” (See: [Personification](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [knowing](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [having been raised](#)
- [the dead](#)
- [dies](#)
- [death](#)
- [has authority over](#)

Romans 6:10

For in that he died, he died to sin once for all (ULT)

The phrase **once for all** means to finish something completely. You can make this full meaning explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: "For when he died he broke the power of sin completely" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

¹⁰ For in that he died, he died to sin once for all. But in that he lives, he lives for God.

Translation Words - ULT

- he died
- he died (2)
- to sin
- he lives
- he lives (2)
- for God

Romans 6:11

In the same way, you also must consider (ULT)

“For this reason, consider”

must consider yourselves to be (ULT)

“think of yourselves as being” or “see yourselves as being”

dead to sin (ULT)

Just as one cannot force a corpse to do anything, **sin** has no power to force believers to dishonor God. Alternate translation: “as if you were dead to the power of sin” (See: [Metaphor](#))

dead to sin, but alive to God (ULT)

“dead to the power of sin, but living to honor God”

alive...to God in Christ Jesus (ULT)

“living to honor God through the power Christ Jesus gives you”

Translation Words - ULT

- [dead](#)
- [to sin](#)
- [alive](#)
- [to God](#)
- [in Christ Jesus](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [Jesus](#)

ULT

11 In the same way, you also must consider yourselves to be [dead to sin](#), but [alive to God in Christ Jesus](#).

Romans 6:12

Connecting Statement:

Paul reminds us that grace rules over us, not the law; we are not sin's slaves, but God's slaves.

ULT

¹² Therefore, do not let [sin rule](#) in your mortal [body, to obey](#) its [lusts](#).

not...do...let sin rule in your mortal body (ULT)

Paul speaks of people sinning as if sin was their master or king that controlled them. Alternate translation: "do not let sinful desires control you" (See: [Personification](#))

in your mortal body (ULT)

This phrase refers to the physical part of a person, which will die. Alternate translation: "you" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

to obey its lusts (ULT)

Paul speaks of a person having evil desires as if it sin were a master that had evil desires. (See: [Personification](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#)
- [do...let...rule](#)
- [body](#)
- [to obey](#)
- [lusts](#)

Romans 6:13

And do not present your members as tools of unrighteousness unto sin (ULT)

The picture is of the sinner offering the **members** of his body to his master or king. One's **members** are a synecdoche for the whole person. Alternate translation: "Do not offer yourselves to sin so that you do what is not right" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

ULT

¹³ And do not present your **members as tools of unrighteousness unto sin**. But present yourselves **to God**, as **living from death**, and your **members to God as tools of righteousness**.

But present yourselves to God, as living from death (ULT)

Here, **as living** refers to the believer's new spiritual life. Alternate translation: "But offer yourselves to God, because he has given you new spiritual life" or "But offer yourselves to God, as those who had died and are now alive" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

and your members to God as tools of righteousness (ULT)

Here, **members** is a synecdoche that refers to the whole person. Alternate translation: "let God use you for what is pleasing to him" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [members](#)
- [members](#) (2)
- [as tools](#)
- [as tools](#) (2)
- [unrighteousness](#)
- [of righteousness](#)
- [unto sin](#)
- [to God](#)
- [to God](#) (2)
- [living](#)
- [death](#)

Romans 6:14

sin...do not allow...to rule over you (ULT)

Paul speaks of **sin** here as if it were a king who rules over people. Alternate translation: “do not let sinful desires control what you do” or “do not allow yourselves to do the sinful things you want to do” (See: [Personification](#))

ULT

14 So do not [allow sin to rule over](#) you. For you are not under [law](#), but under [grace](#).

For you are not under law (ULT)

To be **under law** means to be subject to its limitations and weaknesses. You can make the full meaning explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: “For you are no longer bound to the law of Moses, which could not give you the power to stop sinning” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

but under grace (ULT)

To be **under grace** means that God’s free gift provides the power to keep from sinning. You can make the full meaning explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: “but you are bound to God’s grace, which does give you the power to stop sinning” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [do...allow...to rule over](#)
- [sin](#)
- [law](#)
- [grace](#)

Romans 6:15

What then? Shall we sin because we are not under law, but under grace (ULT)

Paul is using two questions to emphasize that living under grace is not a reason to sin. Alternate translation: “However, just because we are bound to grace instead of the law of Moses certainly does not mean we are allowed to sin” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

¹⁵ What then? [Shall we sin](#) because we are not under [law](#), but under [grace](#)?
May it never be!

May it never be (ULT)

“We would never want that to happen!” or “May God help me not to do that!” This expression shows an extremely strong desire that this does not take place. You may have a similar expression in your language that you could use here. See how you translated it in [Romans 3:31](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Shall we sin](#)
- [law](#)
- [grace](#)

Romans 6:16

Do you not know that the one to whom you present yourselves as slaves is the one to which you are obedient, the one you must obey?

Paul uses a question to scold anyone who may think God's grace is a reason to keep sinning. You can translate this as a strong statement.

Alternate translation: "You should know that you are slaves to the master you choose to obey—whether of sin unto death, or of obedience unto righteousness!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

¹⁶ Do you not know that to whom you present yourselves to obey {as} slaves, you are slaves to whom you obey—whether of sin unto death, or of obedience unto righteousness?

whether of sin...or of obedience (ULT)

Here, Paul speaks of **sin** and **obedience** as if they were masters that a slave would obey. Alternate translation: "whether you are like slaves to sin ... or like slaves to obedience" or "You are either a slave to sin ... or you are a slave to obedience" (See: [Personification](#))

to...death...to...righteousness (ULT)

"which results in death ... which results in righteousness"

Translation Words - ULT

- Do you...know
- obey
- you obey
- of obedience
- slaves
- slaves
- of sin
- death
- righteousness

Romans 6:17

But thanks be to God (ULT)

“But I thank God!”

For you were slaves of sin (ULT)

To be **slaves of sin** is a metaphor for having such a strong desire to sin that one is unable to stop himself from sinning. It is as if sin controls the person. Alternate translation: “For you were like slaves of sin” or “For you were controlled by sin” (See: [Metaphor](#))

but you have obeyed from the heart (ULT)

Here the word **heart** refers to having sincere or honest motives for doing something. Alternate translation: “but you truly obeyed” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the pattern of teaching unto which you were given (ULT)

Here, **pattern** refers to the way of living that leads to righteousness. The believers change their old way of living to match this new way of living that Christian leaders teach to them. You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “the teaching that Christian leaders gave you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- to God
- slaves
- of sin
- you have obeyed
- the heart
- of teaching

ULT

¹⁷ But thanks be to God! For you were slaves of sin, but you have obeyed from the heart the pattern of teaching unto which you were given.

Romans 6:18

Now having been freed from sin (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "Now that Christ has freed you from sin" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

¹⁸ Now [having been freed](#) from [sin](#), you [have been enslaved to righteousness](#).

Now having been freed from sin (ULT)

Here, **freed from sin** is a metaphor for no longer having a strong desire to sin and being able to stop oneself from sinning. Alternate translation: "Since your strong desire to sin has been taken away" or "Now that you have been made free from sin's control over you"

you have been enslaved to righteousness (ULT)

Being **enslaved to righteousness** is a metaphor meaning having a strong desire to do what is right. It is as if righteousness controls the person. Alternate translation: "you have been made like slaves of righteousness" or "you are now controlled by righteousness" (See: [Metaphor](#))

you have been enslaved to righteousness (ULT)

You can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "Christ has made you slaves of righteousness" or "Christ has changed you so that now you are controlled by righteousness"

Translation Words - ULT

- [having been freed](#)
- [sin](#)
- [you have been enslaved](#)
- [to righteousness](#)

Romans 6:19

I speak as a man (ULT)

Paul may have expected his readers to wonder why he was speaking of slavery and freedom. Here he is saying that he is using these ideas from their everyday experience to help them understand that people are controlled either by sin or by righteousness. Alternate translation: "I am speaking about this in human terms" or "I am using examples from everyday life"

because of the weakness of your flesh (ULT)

Often Paul uses the word **flesh** as the opposite of "spirit." Alternate translation: "because you do not fully understand spiritual things" (See: [Metonymy](#))

you presented your members as slaves to uncleanness and to more and more lawlessness (ULT)

Here, **members** refers to the whole person. Alternate translation: "offered yourselves as slaves to everything that is evil and not pleasing to God" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

present your members as slaves to righteousness unto sanctification (ULT)

Here, **members** refers to the whole person. Alternate translation: "offer yourselves as slaves to what is right before God so that he might set you apart and give you the power to serve him" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of...flesh](#)
- [just as](#)
- [members](#)
- [members \(2\)](#)
- [as slaves](#)
- [as slaves \(2\)](#)
- [to more and more lawlessness](#)
- [to more and more lawlessness](#)
- [to righteousness](#)
- [sanctification](#)

ULT

19 I speak as a man because of the weakness of your **flesh**. For **just as** you presented your **members as slaves** to uncleanness and **to more and more lawlessness**, in the same way, now present your **members as slaves to righteousness** unto **sanctification**.

Romans 6:20

you were free from righteousness (ULT)

Here, **free from righteousness** is a metaphor for not having to do what is righteous. Alternate translation: "it was as though you were free from righteousness" (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

²⁰ For when you were [slaves of sin](#), you were [free from righteousness](#).

you were free from righteousness (ULT)

The people were living as though they thought that they did not have to do what was right. Alternate translation: "you behaved as though you did not have to do what was right" (See: [Irony](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [slaves](#)
- [of sin](#)
- [free](#)
- [from righteousness](#)

Romans 6:21

So what fruit then did you have from that of which you are now ashamed (ULT)

Here, **fruit** here is a metaphor for “result” or “outcome.” Paul is using a question to emphasize that sinning results in nothing good. Alternate translation: “So nothing good came from those things that now cause you shame” or “So you gained nothing by doing those things that now cause you shame” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [fruit](#)
- [then...from](#)
- [you are...ashamed](#)
- [death](#)

ULT

²¹ So what [fruit](#) then did you have [from](#) that of which [you are](#) now [ashamed](#)? For the outcome of those things {is} [death](#).

Romans 6:22

But now, having been freed from sin and having been enslaved to God (ULT)

You can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “But now that you have become free from sin and have become God’s slaves” or “But now that God has freed you from sin and made you his slaves” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

²² But now, [having been freed](#) from [sin](#) and [having been enslaved to God](#), you have your [fruit](#) unto [sanctification](#), and the result {is} [eternal life](#).

But now, having been freed from sin (ULT)

Being **freed from sin** is a metaphor for being able not to sin. Alternate translation: “But now that God has made you able not to sin” (See: [Metaphor](#))

and having been enslaved to God (ULT)

Being **enslaved to God** is a metaphor for being able to serve and obey God. Alternate translation: “but now that God has made you able to serve him” (See: [Metaphor](#))

you have your fruit unto sanctification (ULT)

Here, **fruit** is a metaphor for “result” or “benefit.” Alternate translation: “the benefit is your sanctification” or “the benefit is that you live in a holy way” (See: [Metaphor](#))

and...the result {is} eternal life (ULT)

“and the result of all of this is that you will live forever with God”

Translation Words - ULT

- [having been freed](#)
- [sin](#)
- [having been enslaved](#)
- [to God](#)
- [fruit](#)
- [sanctification](#)
- [eternal](#)
- [life](#)

Romans 6:23

For the wages of {is} death (ULT)

The word **wages** refers to a payment given to someone for their work. Alternate translation: “For if you serve sin, you will receive spiritual death as payment” or “For if you continue sinning, God will punish you with spiritual death”

ULT

²³ For the wages of {is} death, but the gift of God {is} eternal life in Christ Jesus our Lord.

but the gift of God {is} eternal life in Christ Jesus our Lord (ULT)

“but God gives eternal life to those who belong to Christ Jesus our Lord”

Translation Words - ULT

- of
- death
- gift
- of God
- eternal
- life
- in Christ Jesus
- Christ
- Jesus
- Lord

Romans 7

Romans 7 General Notes

Structure and formatting

“Or do you not know”

Paul uses this phrase to discuss a new topic, while connecting what follows with the previous teaching.

Special concepts in this chapter

“We have been released from the law”

Paul explains that the law of Moses is no longer in effect. While this is true, the timeless principles behind the law reflect the character of God. (See: [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [law of God](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Marriage

Scripture commonly uses marriage as a metaphor. Here Paul uses it to describe how the church relates to the law of Moses and now to Christ. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Flesh

This is a complex issue. “Flesh” is possibly a metaphor for our sinful nature. Paul is not teaching that our physical bodies are sinful. Paul appears to be teaching that as long as Christians are alive (“in the flesh”), we will continue to sin. But our new nature will be fighting against our old nature. (See: [flesh](#) and [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Romans 7:1

Connecting Statement:

Paul explains how the law controls those who want to live under the law.

Or do you not know, brothers (for I am speaking to ones knowing the law), that the law rules over the man for as long as he lives (ULT)

Paul asks this question to add emphasis. Alternate translation: "So you certainly know that people have to obey laws only while they are alive" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

brothers (ULT)

Here **brothers** refers to fellow Christians, including both men and women.

Translation Words - ULT

- [do you not know](#)
- [to ones knowing](#)
- [brothers](#)
- [the law](#)
- [law](#)
- [rules over](#)
- [as long as](#)
- [he lives](#)

ULT

¹ Or [do you not know, brothers](#) (for I am speaking [to ones knowing the law](#)), that the [law rules over](#) the man for [as long as he lives](#)?

Romans 7:2

Connecting Statement:

This verse begins a description of what Paul means by “the law controls a person for as long as he lives” ([Romans 7:1](#)).

the...married woman has been bound by law to the living husband (ULT)

Here, **bound by law to her living husband** is a metaphor for a woman being united to her husband according to the law of marriage. Alternate translation: “according to the law, the married woman is united to the husband” (See: [Metaphor](#))

the...married woman (ULT)

This refers to any **woman** who is **married**.

Translation Words - ULT

- [has been bound](#)
- [by law](#)
- [law](#)
- [living](#)
- [dies](#)

ULT

² For the married woman [has been bound by law](#) to the [living](#) husband, but if the husband [dies](#), she has been released from the [law](#) of the husband.

Romans 7:3

Connecting Statement:

This verse ends a description of what Paul means by “the law controls a person for as long as he lives” (Romans 7:1).

she will be called an adulteress (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “God will consider her an adulteress” or “people will call her an adulteress” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the...she is free from...law (ULT)

Here being **free from the law** means not having to obey the law. In this case, the woman does not have to obey the law that says that a married woman cannot marry another man. Alternate translation: “she does not have to obey that law”

Translation Words - ULT

- [being alive](#)
- [she will be called](#)
- [an adulteress](#)
- [an adulteress](#)
- [dies](#)
- [free](#)
- [law](#)

ULT

³ So then, the husband [being alive](#), if she is joined to another man, [she will be called an adulteress](#). But if the husband [dies](#), she is [free](#) from the [law](#), so she is not [an adulteress](#), having been joined to another man.

Romans 7:4

Therefore, my brothers (ULT)

This relates back to [Romans 7:1](#).

brothers (ULT)

Here **brothers** refers to fellow Christians, including both men and women.

ULT

⁴ Therefore, my brothers, you were also made dead to the law through the body of Christ, for you to be joined to another, to the one who was raised from the dead, in order that we might produce fruit for God.

you were also made dead to the law through the body of Christ (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “you also died to the law when through Christ you died on the cross” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

to the one who was raised from the dead (ULT)

Here, **raised from the dead** is an idiom for “caused to live again.” Alternate translation: “to him who was caused to live again” (See: [Idiom](#))

to the one who was raised from the dead (ULT)

You can translate this in active form. Alternate translation: “to him whom God raised from the dead” or “to him whom God caused to live again” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

we might produce fruit for God (ULT)

Here, **fruit** is a metaphor for actions that please God. Alternate translation: “we might be able to do things pleasing to God” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Therefore](#)
- [brothers](#)
- [were...made dead](#)
- [the dead](#)
- [to...law](#)
- [body](#)
- [of Christ](#)
- [who was raised](#)
- [we might produce fruit](#)
- [for God](#)

Romans 7:5

to bear fruit to death (ULT)

Here, **fruit** is a metaphor for a “result of one’s actions” or “outcome of one’s actions.” Alternate translation: “which resulted in spiritual-death” or “the outcome of which was our own spiritual death” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [flesh](#)
- [sinful](#)
- [passions](#)
- [law](#)
- [members](#)
- [to bear fruit](#)
- [to death](#)

ULT

⁵ For when we were in the [flesh](#), the [sinful passions](#) that were through the [law](#) were working in our [members](#) to [bear fruit to death](#).

Romans 7:6

Connecting Statement:

Paul reminds us that God does not make us holy by the law.

we have been released from the law (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "God has released us from the law" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

we have been released (ULT)

The pronoun **we** refers to Paul and the believers. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

to that by which we were being held (ULT)

This refers to the law. You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "to the law which held us" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

of the letter (ULT)

Here, **the letter** refers to the law of Moses. Alternate translation: "of the law of Moses" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [law](#)
- [having died](#)
- [we were being held](#)
- [might serve](#)
- [of the Spirit](#)

ULT

⁶ But now we have been released from the [law](#), [having died](#) to that by which [we were being held](#), so that we [might serve](#) in newness [of the Spirit](#) and not in oldness of the letter.

Romans 7:7

What will we say then (ULT)

Paul uses this phrase to introduce a new topic. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

May it never be (ULT)

“Of course that is not true!” This expression gives the strongest possible negative answer to the preceding rhetorical question. You may have a similar expression in your language that you could use here. See how you translated this in [Romans 9:14](#).

ULT

⁷ What will we say then? {Is} the law sin? May it never be! However, I would not have known sin, if not through the law. For I would not have known covetousness unless the law said, “Do not covet.”

I would not have known sin, if not through the law (ULT)

Paul is speaking of **sin** as if it were a person who can act. (See: [Personification](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- law
- the law
- law (2)
- sin
- sin
- I would...have known
- I would...have known
- covetousness
- Do...covet

Romans 7:8

But sin, having taken opportunity through the commandment, brought about every lust in me (ULT)

Paul continues comparing sin to a person who can act. (See: [Personification](#))

ULT

⁸ But [sin](#), having taken opportunity through the [commandment](#), brought about every [lust](#) in me. For without [law](#), [sin](#) {is} [dead](#).

without...sin...law...dead (ULT)

“if there were no law, there would be no breaking of the law, so there would be no sin”

Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#)
- [sin \(2\)](#)
- [commandment](#)
- [lust](#)
- [law](#)
- [dead](#)

Romans 7:9

sin came to life again (ULT)

This could mean: (1) Paul realized that he was sinning. (2) Paul strongly desired to sin. (See: [Personification](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [was alive](#)
- [law](#)
- [commandment](#)
- [sin](#)

ULT

⁹ Now at one time I [was alive](#) without [law](#), but the [commandment](#) having come, [sin](#) came to life again,

Romans 7:10

the commandment that was to be life, it was found to be death for me (ULT)

Paul speaks of God's **commandment** as if it resulted primarily in physical death. Alternate translation: "God gave me the commandment so I would live, but it killed me instead" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [died](#)
- [to be death](#)
- [commandment](#)
- [to be life](#)

ULT

¹⁰ but I [died](#). And the [commandment](#) that was [to be life](#), it was found [to be death](#) for me.

Romans 7:11

For sin, having taken the opportunity through the commandment, deceived me, and through it, killed me (ULT)

As in [Romans 7:7-8](#), Paul is describing **sin** as a person who can do three things: take the opportunity, deceive, and kill. Alternate translation: "Because I wanted to sin, I deceived myself into thinking that I could sin and obey the commandment at the same time, but God punished me for disobeying the commandment by separating me from him" (See: [Personification](#))

ULT

¹¹ For [sin](#), having taken the opportunity through the [commandment](#), [deceived](#) me, and through it, killed me.

sin...sin (ULT)

"my desire to sin"

killed me (ULT)

Paul speaks of sin as if it resulted primarily in physical death. Alternate translation: "it separated me from God" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#)
- [commandment](#)
- [deceived](#)

Romans 7:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- law
- holy
- holy
- commandment
- righteous
- good

ULT

¹² So then, the law {is} holy, and the commandment {is} holy and righteous and good.

Romans 7:13

Connecting Statement:

Paul talks about the struggle inside his inner man between sin in his inner man and his mind with the law of God—between sin and good.

So (ULT)

Paul is introducing a new topic.

what...did...good become death to me (ULT)

Paul uses this question to add emphasis. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

what...good (ULT)

This refers to God's law.

did...become death to me (ULT)

"did ... cause me to die"

May it never be (ULT)

This expression gives the strongest possible negative answer to the preceding rhetorical question. You may have a similar expression in your language that you could use here. Alternate translation: "Of course that is not true!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

sin...bringing about death in me (ULT)

Paul is viewing **sin** as though it were a person who could act. (See: [Personification](#))

bringing about death in me (ULT)

"separated me from God"

through...the commandment (ULT)

"because I disobeyed the commandment"

Translation Words - ULT

- good
- good
- death
- death
- sin
- sin (2)

ULT

¹³ So did what {is} good become death to me? May it never be! But sin, in order that it might be shown {to be} sin through what {is} good, bringing about death in me, so that through the commandment, sin might become sinful beyond measure.

- [sinful](#)
- [sin \(3\)](#)
- [commandment](#)

Romans 7:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- we know
- law
- spiritual
- fleshly
- sin

ULT

¹⁴ For we know that the law is spiritual, but I am fleshly, having been sold into slavery under sin.

Romans 7:15

Connecting Statement:

Paul talks about the struggle inside his inner man between his flesh and the law of God—between sin and good.

For what I do, I do not understand (ULT)

“I am not sure why I do some of the things that I do”

For what I do (ULT)

“Because what I do”

not...what I want, this I do...do (ULT)

The words **I do not do** are an exaggeration to emphasize that Paul does not do what he wants to do as often as he would like or that he does what he does not want to do too often. Alternate translation: “I do not always do what I want to do” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

what I hate, this I do (ULT)

The words **I do**, which implies that he always does what he hates to do, are an exaggeration to emphasize that Paul does what he does not want to do too often. Alternate translation: “the things that I know are not good are the things that I sometimes do” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- I do...understand

ULT

¹⁵ For what I do, I do not understand.
For what I want, this I do not do. But
what I hate, this I do.

Romans 7:16

But if what I do not want, this I do (ULT)

“However, if I do what I do not want to do”

I agree with the law that {it is} good (ULT)

“I know God’s law is good”

Translation Words - ULT

- with...law
- good

ULT

¹⁶ But if what I do not want, this I do, I agree with the law that {it is} good.

Romans 7:17

the sin living in me (ULT)

Paul describes **sin** as a living being that has the power to influence him. (See: [Personification](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#)

ULT

17 But now no longer I do it, but the [sin](#) living in me.

Romans 7:18

my flesh (ULT)

Here, **flesh** is a metonym for the sinful nature. Alternate translation: “my sinful nature” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [I know](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [good](#)
- [good](#)

ULT

18 For [I know](#) that in me, that is, in my [flesh](#), lives nothing [good](#). For the desire is present in me, but not the ability to do the [good](#).

Romans 7:19

good (ULT)

“the good deeds” or “the good actions”

evil (ULT)

“the evil deeds” or “the evil actions”

Translation Words - ULT

- good
- evil

ULT

¹⁹ For I do not do the good I want; but the evil I do not want, this I do.

Romans 7:20

but the sin living in me (ULT)

Paul speaks of **sin** as if it were alive and living inside him. (See: [Personification](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#)

ULT

²⁰ Now if what I do not want, this I do, {it is} no longer I who do it, but the [sin](#) living in me.

Romans 7:21

but that evil is present in me (ULT)

Paul speaks of **evil** here as if it were alive and living inside him. (See: [Personification](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- law
- good
- evil

ULT

²¹ I find, then, this law: the wanting to do good {is} in me, but that evil is present in me.

Romans 7:22

the inner man (ULT)

This refers to the newly-revived spirit of a person who trusts in Christ. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [in...law](#)
- [of God](#)

ULT

²² For I rejoice in the [law of God](#) with the inner man.

Romans 7:23

But I see a different principle in my body parts. It fights against that new principle in my mind. It takes me captive

“But I am able only to do what my old nature tells me to do, not to live the new way the Spirit shows me”

my...the law of...mind (ULT)

This refers to the new spiritually-alive nature.

a different law in my members (ULT)

This refers to the old nature, the way people are when they are born.

the principle of sin that is in my body parts

“my sinful nature”

Translation Words - ULT

- a...law
- law
- law (2)
- members
- members (2)
- fighting against
- of...mind
- taking...captive
- of...sin

ULT

²³ But I see a different law in my members fighting against the law of my mind and taking me captive by the law of the sin that exists in my members.

Romans 7:24

Who will deliver me from this body of death (ULT)

Paul uses this question to express great emotion. If your language has a way of showing great emotion through an exclamation or a question, use it here. Alternate translation: "I want someone to set me free from the control of what my body desires!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

²⁴ I am a miserable man! Who [will deliver](#) me from this [body of death](#)?

will deliver me (ULT)

"will rescue me"

this body of death (ULT)

This is a metaphor that means a **body** that will experience physical **death**. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [will deliver](#)
- [body](#)
- [of death](#)

Romans 7:25

Thanks be to God through Jesus Christ our Lord (ULT)

This is the answer to the question in 7:24.

So then, I myself serve the law of God with my mind. However, with the flesh I serve the principle of sin

The mind and flesh are used here to show how they compare to serve either the **law of God** or the principle of **sin**. With the mind or intellect one can choose to please and obey God and with the flesh or physical nature to serve sin. Alternate translation: "My mind chooses to please God, but my flesh chooses to obey sin" (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

²⁵ Thanks be to God through Jesus Christ our Lord! So then, I myself serve the law of God with the mind, but with the flesh, the law of sin.

Translation Words - ULT

- to God
- of God
- Jesus
- of sin
- Christ
- Lord
- serve
- the law of God
- with...mind
- with...flesh
- the law (2)

Romans 8

Romans 8 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The first verse of this chapter is a transitional sentence. Paul concludes his teaching of Chapter 7 and leads into the words of Chapter 8.

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with verse 36. Paul quotes these words from the Old Testament.

Special concepts in this chapter

Indwelling of the Spirit

The Holy Spirit is said to live inside a person or inside their heart. If the Spirit is present, this signifies that a person is saved. (See: [save](#), [saved](#), [safe](#), [salvation](#))

“These are sons of God”

Jesus is the Son of God in a unique way. God also adopts Christians to be his children. (See: [Son of God](#), [the Son](#) and [adoption](#), [adopt](#), [adopted](#))

Predestination

Many scholars believe Paul in this chapter teaches on a subject known as “predestination.” This is related to the biblical concept of “predestine.” Some take this to indicate that God has, from before the foundation of the world, chosen some to be eternally saved. Christians have different views on what the Bible teaches on this subject. So translators need to take extra care when translating this chapter, especially with regards to elements of causation. (See: [predestine](#), [predestined](#) and [save](#), [saved](#), [safe](#), [salvation](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

Paul poetically presents his teaching in verses 38 and 39 in the form of an extended metaphor. He explains that nothing can separate a person from the love of God in Jesus. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

No condemnation

This phrase must be translated carefully to avoid doctrinal confusion. People are still guilty of their sin. God disapproves of acting sinfully, even after believing in Jesus. God still punishes the sins of believers, but Jesus has paid the punishment for their sin. This is what Paul expresses here. The word “condemn” has several possible meanings. Here Paul emphasizes that people who believe in Jesus are no longer punished eternally for their sin by being “condemned to hell.” (See: [guilt](#), [guilty](#) and [faith](#) and [condemn](#), [condemned](#), [condemnation](#))

Flesh

This is a complex issue. “Flesh” is possibly a metaphor for our sinful nature. Paul is not teaching that our physical bodies are sinful. Paul appears to be teaching that as long as Christians are alive (“in the flesh”), we will continue to sin. But our new nature will be fighting against our old nature. (See: [flesh](#))

Romans 8:1

Connecting Statement:

Paul gives the answer to the struggle he has with sin and good.

therefore now no condemnation for those who {are} in Christ Jesus (ULT)

Here, **condemnation** refers to punishing people. Alternate translation: “God will not condemn and punish those who are joined to Christ Jesus” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

therefore (ULT)

“for that reason” or “because what I have just told you is true”

Translation Words - ULT

- [condemnation](#)
- [in Christ Jesus](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [Jesus](#)

ULT

¹ {There is} therefore now no [condemnation](#) for those who {are} [in Christ Jesus](#).

Romans 8:2

the...law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus (ULT)

Here, **the Spirit of life** refers to God's Spirit. Alternate translation: "the working of the Holy Spirit in Christ Jesus" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

² For the [law](#) of the [Spirit of life in Christ Jesus](#) has set you [free](#) from the [law of sin and death](#).

has set you free from the law of sin and death (ULT)

Being **set free** from **the law of sin and death** is a metaphor for not being controlled by the law of sin and death. Alternate translation: "has caused the law of sin and death to no longer control you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

the law of sin and death

This could mean: (1) the **law** of Moses, which provokes people to sin, and their sin causes them to die. Alternate translation: "the law which causes sin and death" (2) Paul is stating the principle that people **sin** and die.

Translation Words - ULT

- [law](#)
- [law](#)
- [of...Spirit of life](#)
- [in Christ Jesus](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [has set...free](#)
- [of sin](#)
- [death](#)

Romans 8:3

For what the law was unable to do, being weak through the flesh, God did (ULT)

Here the **law** is described as a person who could not break the power of sin. Alternate translation: “For the law did not have the power to stop us from sinning, because the power of sin within us was too strong. But God did stop us from sinning” (See: [Personification](#))

ULT

³ For what the **law** was unable to do, being weak through the **flesh**, **God did**, **having sent** his own **Son** in **the likeness** of **sinful flesh** and for **sin**, **he condemned sin** in the **flesh**,

through the flesh (ULT)

“because of people’s sinful nature”

He ... sent his own Son in the likeness of sinful flesh ... an offering for sin ... he condemned sin

The **Son** of God forever satisfied God’s holy anger against our sin by giving his own body and human life as the eternal sacrifice for sin.

Son (ULT)

Son is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

being weak...the likeness of sinful flesh (ULT)

“who looked like any other sinful human being”

sinful...and for (ULT)

“so that he could die as a sacrifice for our sins”

being weak...he condemned sin...the flesh (ULT)

“God broke the power of sin through the body of his Son”

Translation Words - ULT

- law
- flesh
- of...flesh
- flesh
- God did
- having sent
- Son
- the likeness
- sinful
- sin (2)

- [sin](#)
- [he condemned](#)

Romans 8:4

the righteous deeds of the law might be fulfilled in us (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “we might fulfill what the law requires” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

those walking not according to the flesh (ULT)

Here, **walking** on a path is a metaphor for how a person lives his life. Alternate translation: “we who do not obey our sinful desires” (See: [Metaphor](#))

those walking not according to the flesh (ULT)

Here, **flesh** is an idiom for sinful human nature. (See: [Idiom](#))

according to...but...the Spirit (ULT)

“but who obey the Holy Spirit”

Translation Words - ULT

- [righteous deeds](#)
- [of...law](#)
- [might be fulfilled](#)
- [walking](#)
- [the flesh](#)
- [the Spirit](#)

ULT

⁴ so that the [righteous deeds](#) of the [law](#) [might be fulfilled](#) in us, those [walking](#) not according to [the flesh](#), but according to [the Spirit](#).

Romans 8:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the flesh
- of...flesh
- pay attention to
- the Spirit
- of...Spirit

ULT

⁵ For those existing according to the flesh pay attention to the things of the flesh, but those according to the Spirit, to the things of the Spirit.

Romans 8:6

Connecting Statement:

Paul continues to contrast the flesh with the Spirit we now have.

the...mind of the flesh...but the mind of the Spirit (ULT)

Here Paul speaks of both the **mind of the flesh** and the **mind of the Spirit** as if they were living persons. Alternate translation: "the way sinful people think ... the way people who listen to the Holy Spirit think" (See: [Personification](#))

ULT

⁶ For the **mind** of the **flesh** {is} **death**, but the **mind** of the **Spirit** {is} **life** and **peace**.

Translation Words - ULT

- [mind](#)
- [mind \(2\)](#)
- [of...flesh](#)
- [death](#)
- [of...Spirit](#)
- [life](#)
- [peace](#)

Romans 8:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- mind
- of...flesh
- God
- of God
- it has...been subjected to
- law

ULT

⁷ {This is} because the mind of the flesh {is} hostile toward God, for it has not been subjected to the law of God, for it is not able to do so.

Romans 8:8

those...existing in the flesh (ULT)

This refers to people who do what their sinful nature tells them to do.

Translation Words - ULT

- the flesh
- God

ULT

⁸ But those existing in the flesh are not able to please God.

Romans 8:9

in the flesh (ULT)

“acting according to your sinful natures.” See how **the flesh** was translated in [Romans 8:5](#).

in...the Spirit (ULT)

“acting according to the Holy Spirit”

the Spirit...the Spirit of God...the Spirit...of Christ (ULT)

These all refer to the Holy **Spirit**.

if indeed (ULT)

This phrase does not mean Paul doubts that some of them have God’s Spirit. Paul wants them to realize that they all have God’s Spirit. Alternate translation: “since” or “because”

Translation Words - ULT

- [the flesh](#)
- [the Spirit](#)
- [the Spirit of God](#)
- [the Spirit \(2\)](#)
- [of Christ](#)

ULT

⁹ However, you are not in [the flesh](#) but in [the Spirit](#), if indeed [the Spirit of God](#) lives in you. But if someone does not have [the Spirit of Christ](#), he is not of him.

Romans 8:10

if...Christ {is} in you (ULT)

How **Christ** lives in a person could be made explicit. Alternate translation: "If Christ lives in you through the Holy Spirit" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

¹⁰ But if **Christ** {is} in you, the **body** {is} **dead** because of **sin**, but the **spirit** {is} **alive** because of **righteousness**.

the body {is} dead because of sin (ULT)

This could mean: (1) a person is spiritually **dead** to the power of sin. (2) the physical **body** will still die because of sin. (See: [Idiom](#))

but the spirit {is} alive because of righteousness (ULT)

This could mean: (1) a person is spiritually **alive** because God has given him power to do what is right. (2) God will bring the person back to life after he dies because God is righteous and gives believers eternal life. (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Christ](#)
- [body](#)
- [dead](#)
- [sin](#)
- [spirit](#)
- [alive](#)
- [righteousness](#)

Romans 8:11

If indeed the Spirit of the one who raised Jesus from the dead lives in you (ULT)

Paul assumes that the Holy Spirit lives in his readers. Alternate translation: "Since the Spirit of the one who raised Jesus from the dead lives in you"

of the one who raised (ULT)

"of God, who raised"

who raised Jesus (ULT)

Here "to raise" is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. Alternate translation: "who caused Jesus to live again" (See: [Idiom](#))

to your mortal bodies (ULT)

"your physical bodies" or "your bodies, which will die someday"

Translation Words - ULT

- Spirit
- Spirit (2)
- who raised
- who raised
- Jesus
- Christ Jesus
- the dead
- the dead (2)
- Christ
- will give life
- bodies

ULT

¹¹ If indeed the Spirit of the one who raised Jesus from the dead lives in you, the one who raised Christ Jesus from the dead will give life also to your mortal bodies through his Spirit, who lives in you.

Romans 8:12

So then (ULT)

“Because what I have just told you is true”

brothers (ULT)

Here this means fellow Christians, including both men and women.

we are debtors (ULT)

Paul is speaking of obedience as if it were paying back a debt. Alternate translation: “we need to obey” (See: [Metaphor](#))

not to the flesh to live according to the flesh (ULT)

You can include the implied word “debtors.” Alternate translation: “but we are not debtors to the flesh, and we do not have to obey our sinful desires” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [to...flesh](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [to live](#)

ULT

¹² So then, [brothers](#), we are debtors— not to the [flesh to live](#) according to the [flesh](#).

Romans 8:13

For if you live according to the flesh (ULT)

“Because if you live only to please your sinful desires”

you are about to die (ULT)

“you will certainly be separated from God”

but if by the Spirit you put to death the deeds of the body (ULT)

Paul speaks of not doing sinful **deeds** as putting them to death. Alternate translation: “but if by the power of the Holy Spirit you stop obeying your sinful desires” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- you live
- you will live
- the flesh
- to die
- you put to death
- by the Spirit
- of...body

ULT

¹³ For if [you live](#) according to [the flesh](#), you are about [to die](#); but if [by the Spirit](#) [you put to death](#) the deeds of the [body](#), [you will live](#).

Romans 8:14

For as many as are being led by the Spirit of God (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "For all the people whom the Spirit of God leads" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

¹⁴ For as many as are being led by the Spirit of God, these are sons of God.

of God...sons (ULT)

Here, **sons of God** refers to all believers in Jesus.

Translation Words - ULT

- [by the Spirit of God](#)
- [sons](#)
- [sons of God](#)
- [of God \(2\)](#)

Romans 8:15

by which we cry (ULT)

“who causes us to cry out”

Abba, Father (ULT)

Abba is the word for **Father** in the Aramaic language. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- you did...receive
- you received (2)
- a spirit
- the Spirit
- of slavery
- fear
- of adoption
- we cry
- Father

ULT

¹⁵ For you did not receive again a spirit of slavery unto fear, but you received the Spirit of adoption, by which we cry, “Abba, Father!”

Romans 8:16

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Spirit
- with...spirit
- bears witness
- children
- of God

ULT

¹⁶ The Spirit himself bears witness with our spirit that we are children of God.

Romans 8:17

heirs of God (ULT)

Paul speaks of the Christian believers as if they will inherit property and wealth from a family member. Alternate translation: “we also will one day receive what God has promised us” (See: [Metaphor](#))

joint heirs...with Christ (ULT)

Paul speaks of the Christian believers as if they will inherit property and wealth from a family member. God will give to us what he gives to Christ. Alternate translation: “we will also receive what God has promised us and Christ together” (See: [Metaphor](#))

so that we may also be glorified with him (ULT)

God will honor Christian believers when he honors Christ. You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “that God may glorify us along with him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [children](#)
- [heirs](#)
- [heirs \(2\)](#)
- [joint heirs](#)
- [of God](#)
- [with Christ](#)
- [we suffer with him](#)
- [we may...be glorified with him](#)

ULT

17 Now if [children](#), then also [heirs: heirs of God](#) and [joint heirs with Christ](#)—if indeed [we suffer with him](#) so that [we may also be glorified with him](#).

Romans 8:18

Connecting Statement:

Paul reminds us as believers that our bodies will be changed at the redemption of our bodies in this section which ends in [Romans 8:25](#).

For (ULT)

This emphasizes **I consider**. Here, it does not mean “because.”

I consider...that the sufferings of this present time {are} not worthy {to be compared} with (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “I cannot compare the sufferings of this present time with” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

that is about...to be revealed (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “that God will reveal” or “that God will make known” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- sufferings
- of...time
- of...present time
- glory
- to be revealed

ULT

18 For I consider that the sufferings of this present time {are} not worthy {to be compared} with the glory that is about to be revealed to us.

Romans 8:19

the...eager expectation of the creation...the... waits for (ULT)

Paul describes everything that God created as a person who eagerly waits for something. (See: [Personification](#))

ULT

¹⁹ For the eager expectation of the [creation](#) waits for the [revealing](#) of the [sons of God](#).

the revealing of the sons of God (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "for the time when God will reveal his sons" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

of the sons of God (ULT)

Here refers to all believers in Jesus.

Translation Words - ULT

- [of...creation](#)
- [revealing](#)
- [of...sons](#)
- [of...sons of God](#)
- [of God](#)

Romans 8:20

For the creation was subjected to futility (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "For God caused what he had created to be unable to achieve what he intended" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

²⁰ For the [creation was subjected to futility](#), not willingly, but because of the one [who subjected it](#), in [hope](#)

not willingly, but because of the one who subjected it (ULT)

Here Paul describes "creation" as a person who can desire. Alternate translation: "not because this is what the created things wanted, but because it is what God wanted" (See: [Personification](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [creation](#)
- [was subjected](#)
- [who subjected it](#)
- [to futility](#)
- [hope](#)

Romans 8:21

the creation itself will be delivered (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "God will save creation" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

from bondage to decay (ULT)

Here being in **slavery to decay** is a metaphor for being certain to decay. Alternate translation: "from being destined to decay" (See: [Metaphor](#))

into the freedom of the glory of the children of God (ULT)

Here, **freedom** is in contrast with slavery to decay. It is a metaphor meaning that the creation will not decay. Alternate translation: "that it will become gloriously free from decay like the children of God" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [creation](#)
- [will be delivered](#)
- [freedom](#)
- [bondage](#)
- [of...glory](#)
- [of...children](#)
- [of God](#)

ULT

²¹ that also the [creation](#) itself [will be delivered](#) from [bondage](#) to decay into the [freedom](#) of the [glory](#) of the [children of God](#).

Romans 8:22

For we know that the whole creation groans and labors in pain together until now (ULT)

The creation is compared to a woman who **groans** while giving birth to a baby. Alternate translation: "For we know that everything that God created wants to be free and groans for it like a woman giving birth" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [we know](#)
- [creation](#)
- [groans](#)

ULT

²² For [we know](#) that the whole [creation](#) [groans](#) and labors in pain together until now.

Romans 8:23

waiting for our adoption (ULT)

Here, **our adoption** refers to when we will become full members of God's family, as adopted sons. Alternate translation: "waiting for when we are fully members of God's family" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the redemption of our body (ULT)

Here, the word **redemption** means when God saves us. Alternate translation: "when he saves our bodies from decay and death" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [firstfruits](#)
- [of...Spirit](#)
- [groan](#)
- [our adoption](#)
- [redemption](#)
- [of...body](#)

ULT

²³ Not only that, but also we, having the [firstfruits](#) of the [Spirit](#)—even we ourselves [groan](#) within ourselves, waiting for [our adoption](#), the [redemption](#) of our [body](#).

Romans 8:24

For in hope we were saved (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "For God saved us because we hoped in him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Now hope being seen is not hope. For who hopes for what he sees (ULT)

Paul uses a question to help his audience understand what **hope** is. Alternate translation: "But if we are confidently waiting, that means we do not yet have what we want. No one can confidently wait if he already has what he wants" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [in hope](#)
- [hope](#)
- [hope](#)
- [hopes for](#)
- [we were saved](#)

ULT

²⁴ For [in hope we were saved](#). Now [hope](#) being seen is not [hope](#). For who [hopes for](#) what he sees?

Romans 8:25

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- we hope for
- patience

ULT

²⁵ But if we hope for what we do not see, we wait for it with patience.

Romans 8:26

Connecting Statement:

Though Paul has been emphasizing that there is a struggle in believers between the flesh and the Spirit, he affirms that the Spirit is aiding us.

with inexpressible groans (ULT)

“with groanings that we cannot express in words”

Translation Words - ULT

- in the same way
- Spirit
- Spirit (2)
- we do...know
- we should pray
- with...groans

ULT

²⁶ Now in the same way, the Spirit also helps in our weakness. For we do not know what we should pray as we ought, but the Spirit himself intercedes with inexpressible groans.

Romans 8:27

the one...who searches the hearts (ULT)

Here, **the one** refers to God.

the one...who searches the hearts (ULT)

Here, **hearts** is a metonym for a person's thoughts and emotions.

Alternate translation: "God, who searches all our thoughts and feelings" (See: [Metonymy](#))

the one...who searches the hearts (ULT)

The phrase **searches the hearts** is a metaphor for examining thoughts and emotions. Alternate translation: "God, who knows all our thoughts and feelings" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [hearts](#)
- [knows](#)
- [mind](#)
- [of...Spirit](#)
- [he intercedes](#)
- [the saints](#)
- [the will of God](#)

ULT

²⁷ But the one who searches the [hearts](#) [knows](#) what {is} the [mind](#) of the [Spirit](#), because [he intercedes](#) on behalf of [the saints](#) according to [the will of God](#).

Romans 8:28

Connecting Statement:

Paul reminds the believers that nothing can separate them from God's love.

for those...who are called (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "for those whom God chose" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [we know](#)
- [who love](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [good](#)
- [called](#)

ULT

²⁸ For [we know](#) that for those [who love God](#), [God](#) works all things together for [good](#),^[1] for those who are [called](#) according to {his} purpose.

Romans 8:29

those whom he foreknew (ULT)

“those whom he knew before he even created them”

he also predestined (ULT)

“he also made it their destiny” or “he also planned in advance for them”

to be conformed to the image of his Son (ULT)

God planned from before the beginning of creation to grow those who believe in Jesus, the **Son** of God, into persons who are like Jesus. You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “that he would change them to be like his Son” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

of his Son (ULT)

Son is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

that he might be the firstborn (ULT)

“so that his Son would be the firstborn”

among many brothers (ULT)

Here, **brothers** refers to all believers, both male and female. Alternate translation: “among many brothers and sisters who belong to the family of God” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [he foreknew](#)
- [he...predestined](#)
- [image](#)
- [of...Son](#)
- [the firstborn](#)
- [brothers](#)

ULT

²⁹ Because those whom [he foreknew](#), [he](#) also [predestined](#) to be conformed to the [image](#) of his [Son](#), that he might be [the firstborn](#) among many [brothers](#).

Romans 8:30

those whom...he predestined (ULT)

“those whom God made plans for in advance”

these he also justified (ULT)

Here, **justified** is in the past tense to emphasize that this will certainly happen. Alternate translation: “these he also put right with himself” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

these he also glorified (ULT)

The word **glorified** is in the past tense to emphasize that this will certainly happen. Alternate translation: “these he will also glorify” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [he predestined](#)
- [he...called](#)
- [he called \(2\)](#)
- [he...justified](#)
- [he justified \(2\)](#)
- [he...glorified](#)

ULT

³⁰ Now those whom [he predestined](#), these [he](#) also [called](#). And those whom [he called](#), these [he](#) also [justified](#). And those whom [he justified](#), these [he](#) also [glorified](#).

Romans 8:31

What then will we say about these things? If God {is} for us, who {is} against us (ULT)

Paul uses questions to emphasize the main point of what he said previously. Alternate translation: "This is what we should know from all of this: since God is helping us, no one can defeat us!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)

ULT

³¹ What then will we say about these things? If [God](#) {is} for us, who {is} against us?

Romans 8:32

He who did not spare his own Son (ULT)

God the Father sent the Son of God, Jesus Christ, to the cross as the holy, infinite sacrifice necessary to satisfy God's infinite, holy nature against the sin of humanity. Here, **Son** is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

ULT

³² He who did not spare his own [Son](#) but delivered him up on behalf of us all, how will he not also with him freely give us all things?

but...delivered him up (ULT)

"but put him under the control of his enemies"

how will he not also with him freely give us all things (ULT)

Paul is using a question for emphasis. Alternate translation: "he will certainly and freely give us all things!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

how will he not also with him freely give us all things (ULT)

"he will certainly also kindly give us all things"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)

Romans 8:33

Who will bring an accusation against the chosen ones of God? God {is} the one who justifies (ULT)

Paul uses a question for emphasis. Alternate translation: "No one can accuse us before God because he is the one who makes us right with him!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- will bring an accusation against
- the chosen ones
- of God
- God
- who justifies

ULT

³³ Who will bring an accusation against the chosen ones of God? God {is} the one who justifies.

Romans 8:34

Who {is} the one who condemns (ULT)

Paul uses a question for emphasis. He does not expect an answer. Alternate translation: “No one will condemn us!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

he also is at the right hand of God (ULT)

To be **at the right hand of God** is a symbolic action of receiving great honor and authority from God. Alternate translation: “who is at the place of honor beside God” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

ULT

³⁴ Who {is} the one **who condemns?** Christ Jesus {is} the one **who died**—but more than that, **having been raised**, he also is **at the right hand of God**—he also **intercedes** for us.

Translation Words - ULT

- [who condemns](#)
- [Christ Jesus](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [who died](#)
- [having been raised](#)
- [the right hand](#)
- [of God](#)
- [intercedes](#)

Romans 8:35

Who will separate us from the love of Christ (ULT)

Paul uses this question to teach that nothing can separate us from the love of Christ. Alternate translation: “No one will ever separate us from the love of Christ!” or “Nothing will ever separate us from the love of Christ!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

³⁵ Who will separate us from the [love of Christ](#)? [Tribulation](#), or distress, or [persecution](#), or [hunger](#), or nakedness, or danger, or [sword](#)?

Tribulation, or distress, or persecution, or hunger, or nakedness, or danger, or sword (ULT)

The words “shall separate us from the love of Christ” are understood from the previous question. Alternate translation: “Shall tribulation, or distress, or persecution, or hunger, or nakedness, or danger, or sword separate us from the love of Christ?” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Tribulation, or distress, or persecution, or hunger, or nakedness, or danger, or sword (ULT)

Paul uses this question to emphasize that even these things cannot separate us from the love of Christ. Alternate translation: “Even tribulation, distress, persecution, hunger, nakedness, danger, and sword cannot separate us from the love of Christ!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Tribulation, or distress, or persecution, or hunger, or nakedness, or danger, or sword (ULT)

The abstract nouns can be expressed with verbal phrases. Alternate translation: “Even if people cause us trouble, hurt us, take away our clothes and food, or kill us, they cannot separate us from the love of Christ.” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

or sword (ULT)

Here, **sword** is a metonym that represents being killed violently. Alternate translation: “or being killed” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Tribulation, or distress (ULT)

These words both mean the same thing. (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [love](#)
- [of Christ](#)
- [Tribulation](#)
- [persecution](#)
- [hunger](#)
- [sword](#)

Romans 8:36

For your benefit

Here, **your** is singular and refers to God. Alternate translation: “For you” (See: [Forms of You](#))

we are killed all day long (ULT)

Here, **we** refers to the one who wrote this part of Scripture, but not his audience, who was God. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

we are killed all day long (ULT)

The phrase **all day long** is an exaggeration to emphasize how much danger they are in. Paul uses this part of Scripture to show that all who belong to God should expect difficult times. Alternate translation: “we are continually killed” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

we are killed all day long (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “our enemies continually seek to kill us” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

We were considered as sheep for the slaughter (ULT)

Here Paul compares to livestock those whom people kill because they are loyal to God. Alternate translation: “Our lives are considered of no more value to them than the sheep they kill” (See: [Simile](#))

We were considered as sheep for the slaughter (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “Our lives have no more value to them than the sheep they kill” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Just as](#)
- [as](#)
- [it is written](#)
- [we are killed](#)
- [day long](#)
- [sheep](#)
- [for the slaughter](#)

ULT

³⁶ [Just as it is written](#), “For your benefit [we are killed all day long](#). We were considered [as sheep for the slaughter](#).”

Romans 8:37

we are more than conquerors (ULT)

“we have complete victory”

through the one who loved us (ULT)

You can make explicit the kind of love that Jesus showed. Alternate translation: “because of Jesus, who loved us so much he was willing to die for us” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

³⁷ But in all these things we are more than conquerors through the one [who loved](#) us.

Translation Words - ULT

- [who loved](#)

Romans 8:38

I have been convinced (ULT)

"I am confident"

governments (ULT)

This could refer to: (1) demons. (2) human kings and rulers.

neither...powers (ULT)

This could refer to: (1) spiritual beings with power. (2) human beings with power.

Translation Words - ULT

- I have been convinced
- death
- life
- angels
- governments
- powers

ULT

³⁸ For I have been convinced that neither death, nor life, nor angels, nor governments, nor things present, nor things to come, nor powers,

Romans 8:39

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- created thing
- love
- of God
- in Christ Jesus
- Christ
- Jesus
- Lord

ULT

³⁹ nor height, nor depth, nor any other **created thing**, will be able to separate us from the **love of God**, which {is} in **Christ Jesus** our **Lord**.

8:28 ^[1] some older versions read,

Romans 9

Romans 9 General Notes

Structure and formatting

In this chapter, Paul changes what he is teaching about. In Chapters 9-11, he focuses on the nation of Israel.

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with verses 25-29 and 33 of this chapter. Paul quotes all of these words from the Old Testament.

Special concepts in this chapter

Flesh

Paul uses the word “flesh” in this chapter only to refer to Israelites, people physically descending from Abraham through Jacob, who God named Israel. (See: [flesh](#))

In other chapters, Paul uses the word “brother” to mean fellow Christians. However, in this chapter, he uses “my brothers” to mean his kinsmen the Israelites.

Paul refers to those who believe in Jesus as “children of God” and “children of the promise.”

Predestination

Many scholars believe Paul in this chapter teaches extensively on a subject known as “predestination.” This is related to the biblical concept of “predestine.” Some take this to indicate that God has, from before the foundation of the world, chosen some people to eternally save. Christians have different views on what the Bible teaches on this subject. So translators need to take extra care when translating this chapter. (See: [predestine](#), [predestined](#) and [save](#), [saved](#), [safe](#), [salvation](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Stone of stumbling

Paul explains that while some Gentiles accepted Jesus as their savior by believing in him, most Jews were trying to earn their salvation and so rejected Jesus. Paul, quoting the Old Testament, describes Jesus as a stone that the Jews stumble over when walking. This “stone of stumbling” causes them to “fall.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“It is not everyone in Israel who truly belongs to Israel”

Paul uses the word “Israel” in this verse with two different meanings. The first “Israel” means the physical descendants of Abraham through Jacob. The second “Israel” means those who are God’s people through faith. The UST reflects this.

Romans 9:1

Connecting Statement:

Paul tells of his personal desire that the people of the nation of Israel will be saved. Then he emphasizes the different ways in which God has prepared them to believe.

ULT

¹ I tell **the truth in Christ**. I do not lie—
my **conscience bearing witness** with me
in **the Holy Spirit**—

I tell the truth in Christ. I do not lie (ULT)

These two expressions mean basically the same thing. Paul uses them to emphasize that he is telling the truth. (See: [Doublet](#))

in...my conscience bearing witness with me...the Holy Spirit (ULT)

“the Holy Spirit controls my conscience and confirms what I say”

Translation Words - ULT

- [the truth](#)
- [in Christ](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [conscience](#)
- [bearing witness](#)
- [the Holy Spirit](#)

Romans 9:2

that for me there is great sorrow and unceasing pain in my heart (ULT)

Here, **unceasing pain in my heart** is an idiom that Paul uses to share his emotional distress. Alternate translation: "I tell you that I grieve very greatly and deeply" (See: [Idiom](#))

ULT

² that for me there is great sorrow and unceasing pain in my [heart](#).

sorrow...great...and unceasing pain (ULT)

These two expressions mean basically the same thing. Paul uses them together to emphasize how great his emotions are. (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [in...heart](#)

Romans 9:3

For I could wish that I myself would be cursed, set apart from Christ (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “I personally would be willing to let God curse me and, keep me apart from Christ forever” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

³ For I could wish that I myself would be [cursed](#), set apart from [Christ](#) for the sake of my [brothers](#), those of my [own race](#) according to [the flesh](#);

brothers (ULT)

Here, **brothers** means fellow Christians, including both men and women.

Translation Words - ULT

- [cursed](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [brothers](#)
- [of...own race](#)
- [the flesh](#)

Romans 9:4

who are Israelites (ULT)

“who, like me, are Israelites”

of whom {are} the adoption (ULT)

Here Paul uses the metaphor of **adoption** to indicate that the Israelites are like God’s children. Alternate translation: “who have God as their father” (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

⁴ who are [Israelites](#), of whom {are} the [adoption](#), and the [glory](#), and the [covenants](#), and the [giving of the law](#), and the [service](#), and the [promises](#);

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israelites](#)
- [adoption](#)
- [glory](#)
- [covenants](#)
- [giving of the law](#)
- [service](#)
- [promises](#)

Romans 9:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- ancestors
- Christ
- the flesh
- God
- blessed
- eternity
- Amen

ULT

⁵ of whom {are} the **ancestors** from whom also **Christ** {is} with respect to **the flesh**—he who {is} **God** over all, **blessed** to **eternity**. Amen.

Romans 9:6

Connecting Statement:

Paul emphasizes that those who are born in the family of Israel can really only be a true part of Israel through faith.

But it is not as though the promises of God have failed

“But God has not failed to keep his promises” or “But God has kept his promises”

For it is not everyone in Israel who truly belongs to Israel

God did not make his promises to all the physical descendants of **Israel** (or Jacob), but to his spiritual descendants, that is, those who trust in Jesus.

Translation Words - ULT

- word of God
- Israel
- Israel (2)

ULT

⁶ But {it is} not as though the **word of God** has failed. For not everyone who {is} from **Israel**, that one {is} **Israel**.

Romans 9:7

Neither that all the children are the descendants of Abraham (ULT)

“Nor are they all children of God just because they are Abraham’s descendants”

Translation Words - ULT

- the children
- the descendants
- descendants (2)
- of Abraham
- Isaac
- will be called

ULT

⁷ Neither that all the children are the descendants of Abraham. But, “In Isaac your descendants will be called.”

Romans 9:8

the children of the flesh (ULT)

Here, **children of the flesh** is a metonym that refers to the physical descendants of Abraham. Alternate translation: "all of Abraham's descendants" (See: [Metonymy](#))

not...these...the children of God (ULT)

The phrase **children of God** is a metaphor that refers to people who are spiritual descendants, those who have faith in Jesus. (See: [Metaphor](#))

the children...the...of...promise (ULT)

The phrase **children of the promise** refers to people who will inherit the promises that God gave to Abraham.

Translation Words - ULT

- [children](#)
- [the children](#) (2)
- [children](#) (3)
- [of...flesh](#)
- [of God](#)
- [of...promise](#)

ULT

8 That is, the [children](#) of the [flesh](#), these {are} not [the children of God](#). But the [children](#) of the [promise](#) are regarded as descendants.

Romans 9:9

of promise...this {is} the word (ULT)

“these are the words God used when he made the promise”

a son will be given to Sarah (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form to express that God will give a son to Sarah. Alternate translation: “I will give Sarah a son” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

⁹ For this {is} the word of promise: “At this time I will come, and a son will be given to Sarah.”

Translation Words - ULT

- of promise
- time
- a son
- to Sarah

Romans 9:10

our father (ULT)

Paul refers to Isaac as **our father** because Isaac was the ancestor of Paul and of the Jewish believers in Rome. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

conceived (ULT)

“had become pregnant”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Rebekah](#)
- [conceived](#)
- [father](#)
- [Isaac](#)

ULT

¹⁰ Not only this, but [Rebekah](#) also [conceived](#) by one man, our [father Isaac](#)

—

Romans 9:11

for not yet having been born, not yet having done anything good or bad (ULT)

“before the children were born and before they had done anything, whether good or bad”

so that the purpose of God according to {his} choice might endure (ULT)

“so that what God wants to happen according to His choice will happen”

for not yet having been born (ULT)

“before the children were born”

not yet having done anything good or bad (ULT)

“not because of anything they had done”

Translation Words - ULT

- good
- bad
- of God
- choice

ULT

¹¹ for not yet having been born, not yet having done anything good or bad, so that the purpose of God according to {his} choice might endure,

Romans 9:12

Connecting Statement:

It may be necessary in your language to place this verse between verse 10 and verse 11: “our father Isaac, it was said to her, ‘The older will serve the younger.’ Now the children were not yet born and had not yet done anything good or bad, but so that the purpose of God according to choice might stand—not because of actions, but because of him who calls. It is just”

ULT

¹² not because of **actions**, but because of the one **who calls**—it was said to her, “The older **will serve** the younger.”

because of the one (ULT)

because of God

it was said to her, “The older will serve the younger.”

“God said to Rebecca, ‘The older son will serve the younger son’”

Translation Words - ULT

- **actions**
- **who calls**
- **will serve**

Romans 9:13

Jacob I loved, but Esau I hated (ULT)

The word **hated** is an exaggeration. God **loved Jacob** much more than he loved **Esau**. He did not literally hate Esau. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [just as](#)
- [had been written](#)
- [Jacob](#)
- [I loved](#)
- [Esau](#)

ULT

¹³ {It is} [just as had been written](#): "Jacob I loved, but [Esau](#) I hated."

Romans 9:14

What then will we say (ULT)

Paul is using the question to get the attention of his readers. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

no...May it never be (ULT)

“That is not possible!” or “Certainly not!” This expression strongly denies that this could happen. You may have a similar expression in your language that you could use here.

Translation Words - ULT

- [unrighteousness](#)
- [God](#)

ULT

14 What then will we say? {There is} no [unrighteousness](#) with [God](#){, is there}?
May it never be!

Romans 9:15

For he says to Moses (ULT)

Paul speaks about God's talking with **Moses** as if it is being done in the present time. Alternate translation: "For God said to Moses" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- to Moses
- I will have mercy
- I will have mercy
- I will have compassion
- I will have compassion

ULT

15 For he says to Moses, "I will have mercy on whomever I will have mercy, and I will have compassion on whomever I will have compassion."

Romans 9:16

it is not because of him who wills, nor because of him who runs

“it is not because of what people want or because they try hard”

nor of the one who runs (ULT)

Paul speaks of a person who does good things in order to gain God’s favor as if that person were running a race. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of God](#)
- [who shows mercy](#)

ULT

¹⁶ So then, {it is} not of the one who wills, nor of the one who runs, but [of God, who shows mercy](#).

Romans 9:17

For the scripture says (ULT)

Here the **scripture** is personified as if God were talking to Pharaoh. Alternate translation: "For the scripture records that God said" (See: [Personification](#))

I raised you up...I might demonstrate...my (ULT)

Here the pronouns **I** and **my** refer to God as the speaker.

you (ULT)

Here **you** is singular and refers to Pharaoh. (See: [Forms of You](#))

I raised you up (ULT)

Here, **raised** is an idiom for causing something to be what it is. Alternate translation: "I made you the powerful man that you are" (See: [Idiom](#))

so that my name might be proclaimed (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "so that people might proclaim my name" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

my name (ULT)

Here, **name** is a metonym that could refer to: (1) God in all of his being. Alternate translation: "who I am" (2) God's reputation. Alternate translation: "how great I am" (See: [Metonymy](#))

in all the earth (ULT)

"wherever there are people" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [scripture](#)
- [to Pharaoh](#)
- [I raised...up](#)
- [power](#)
- [name](#)
- [might be proclaimed](#)
- [earth](#)

ULT

17 For the [scripture](#) says to Pharaoh, "For this very purpose I [raised you up](#), so that I might demonstrate my [power](#) in you, and so that my [name might be proclaimed](#) in all the [earth](#)."

Romans 9:18

on whom he wishes, but...he makes stubborn (ULT)

God makes stubborn whoever he wishes to make stubborn.

Translation Words - ULT

- he has mercy
- he makes stubborn

ULT

¹⁸ So then, he has mercy on whom he wishes, but whom he wishes, he makes stubborn.

Romans 9:19

You will say then to me (ULT)

Paul is talking to the critics of his teaching as though he were only talking to one person. You may need to use the plural here. (See: [Forms of You](#))

ULT

19 You will say then to me, “Why then does he still find fault? For who has ever withstood [his will](#)?”

Why then does he still find fault? For who has ever withstood his will (ULT)

These rhetorical questions are complaints against God. You can translate them as strong statements. Alternate translation: “He should not find fault with us. No one has ever been able to withstand his will.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

does he...find fault...his (ULT)

The words **he** and **his** here refer to God.

will...who has ever withstood his...will (ULT)

“who has ever stopped him from doing what he wanted to do”

Translation Words - ULT

- [his...will](#)

Romans 9:20

The thing molded will not say to the one who molded it, “Why did you make me this way?” will it (ULT)

Paul uses the potter’s right to make any kind of container he wants from the clay as a metaphor for the creator’s right to do whatever he wants with his creation. (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

²⁰ O man, on the contrary, who are you who answers against [God](#)? The thing molded will not say to the one who molded it, “Why did you make me this way?” will it?

The thing molded will not say to the one who molded it, “Why did you make me this way?” will it (ULT)

Paul asks questions to emphasize his point. You can translate this as a strong statement. Alternate translation: “What a person has molded should never say to the one who molds it, ‘Why did you make me this way?!’” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Why did you make me this way (ULT)

This question is a rebuke and can be translated as a strong statement. Alternate translation: “You should not have made me this way!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)

Romans 9:21

Does the potter not have the right ... for daily use?

This rhetorical question is a rebuke. Alternate translation: "The potter certainly has the right over the clay to make from the same lump a container for special occasions, but another for daily use." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [authority](#)
- [honor](#)
- [dishonor](#)

ULT

²¹ Or does the potter not have [authority](#) over the clay to make from the same lump a container for [honor](#), but another for [dishonor](#)?

Romans 9:22

containers of wrath (ULT)

Paul speaks of people as if they were **containers**. Alternate translation: "people who deserve wrath" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- wrath
- of wrath
- to make...known
- power
- endured
- patience
- prepared

ULT

²² But what if God, willing to show {his} wrath and to make his power known, endured with much patience containers of wrath prepared for destruction;

Romans 9:23

he might make known...his (ULT)

The pronouns **he** and **his** here refer to God.

containers of mercy (ULT)

Paul speaks of people as if they were **containers**. Alternate translation: “people who deserve mercy” (See: [Metaphor](#))

the riches of his glory upon (ULT)

Paul compares God’s wonderful actions here to great **riches**. Alternate translation: “his glory, which is of great value, upon” (See: [Metaphor](#))

which he had previously prepared for glory (ULT)

Here, **glory** refers to life in heaven with God. Alternate translation: “whom he prepared ahead of time in order that they might live with him” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [he might make known](#)
- [of...glory](#)
- [glory](#)
- [of mercy](#)

ULT

²³ and so that [he might make known](#) the riches of his [glory](#) upon containers [of mercy](#), which he had previously prepared for [glory](#)—

Romans 9:24

even...us (ULT)

The pronoun **us** here refers to Paul and fellow believers. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

he called (ULT)

Here, **called** means God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.

Translation Words - ULT

- [he called](#)
- [the Jews](#)
- [the Gentiles](#)

ULT

²⁴ even us whom [he called](#), not only from among [the Jews](#), but also from among [the Gentiles](#)?

Romans 9:25

Connecting Statement:

In this section Paul explains how Israel's unbelief as a nation was told ahead of time by the prophet Hosea.

As he says also in Hosea (ULT)

Here, **he** refers to God. Alternate translation: "As God says also in the book that Hosea wrote" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Hosea (ULT)

Hosea was an Old Testament prophet. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

I will call my people who were not my people

"I will choose for my people those who were not my people"

the one who was not beloved, 'Beloved (ULT)

Here, **the one** refers to Hosea's wife, Gomer, who represents the nation of Israel. You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "I will choose her whom I did not love to be one whom I love" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [As](#)
- [he says](#)
- [Hosea](#)
- [my people](#)
- [my people](#)
- [people](#)
- [people \(2\)](#)
- [who was...beloved](#)
- [Beloved \(2\)](#)

ULT

²⁵ [As he says](#) also in [Hosea](#): "I will call those who were not [my people](#), '[my people](#),' and the one [who was not beloved](#), '[Beloved](#).'"

Romans 9:26

sons of the living God (ULT)

The word **living** may refer to the fact that God is the only true God, and not like the false idols. Alternate translation: "children of the true God"

Translation Words - ULT

- my people
- people
- living
- they will be called
- sons
- sons of the living God
- of the...God

ULT

26 And it will be that in the place where it was said to them, 'You {are} not my people,' there they will be called 'sons of the living God.'"

Romans 9:27**cries out (ULT)**

“calls out”

as the sand of the sea (ULT)

Here Paul compares the number of the people of Israel to the number of grains of **sand** in the **sea**. Alternate translation: “too many to count” (See: [Simile](#))

will be saved (ULT)

Paul uses the word **saved** in a spiritual sense. If God saves a person, it means that through believing in Jesus' death on the cross, God has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished for his sin. You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “God will save” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Isaiah](#)
- [cries out](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [of...sons](#)
- [as](#)
- [remnant](#)
- [will be saved](#)

ULT

²⁷ But [Isaiah](#) [cries out](#) concerning [Israel](#),
“Though the number of the [sons of Israel](#) might be [as](#) the sand of the sea,
the [remnant will be saved](#),

Romans 9:28

word...the Lord will carry out...on the earth (ULT)

Here, **word** refers to how he has decided to punish people. Alternate translation: “the Lord will punish people on the earth according to how he has said”

ULT

²⁸ for the Lord will carry out {his} word on the earth, completely and without delay.”

Translation Words - ULT

- the Lord
- earth

Romans 9:29

us ... we

Here the pronouns **us** and **we** refer to Isaiah and those to whom he spoke. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

we would have become like Sodom, and we would have been made like Gomorrah (ULT)

God killed all of the people of Sodom and Gomorrah because of their sin. Alternate translation: “we all would have been destroyed like the people of Sodom and Gomorrah” or “God would have destroyed all of us, like he destroyed the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

²⁹ And [just as Isaiah](#) had said previously, “If [the Lord of hosts](#) had not left us descendants, we would have become [like Sodom](#), and [we would have been made like Gomorrah](#).”

Translation Words - ULT

- [just as](#)
- [like](#)
- [like \(2\)](#)
- [we would have been made](#)
- [Isaiah](#)
- [the Lord of hosts](#)
- [Sodom](#)
- [Gomorrah](#)

Romans 9:30

What will we say then (ULT)

Paul uses this question to get the attention of his readers. Alternate translation: "This is what we must say." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

That the Gentiles (ULT)

"We will say that the Gentiles"

who are not pursuing righteousness (ULT)

"who were not trying to please God"

righteousness...that {is} by faith (ULT)

Here, **by faith** refers to placing one's trust in Christ. You can make this explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: "because God made them right with him when they trusted in Christ" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Gentiles](#)
- [righteousness](#)
- [righteousness](#) (2)
- [righteousness](#) (3)
- [faith](#)

ULT

³⁰ What will we say then? That [the Gentiles](#), who are not pursuing [righteousness](#), obtained [righteousness](#), but [righteousness](#) that {is} by [faith](#).

Romans 9:31

did not attain it through the law (ULT)

This means that the Israelites could not please God by trying to keep **the law**. You can make this explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: “were not able to please God by keeping the law because they could not keep it” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

³¹ But [Israel](#), pursuing [a law of righteousness](#), did not attain it through [the law](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [a law](#)
- [the law](#) (2)
- [of righteousness](#)

Romans 9:32

Why (ULT)

This is an ellipsis. You can include the implied words in your translation. Alternate translation: "Why could they not attain righteousness?" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

ULT

³² Why? Because it was not by [faith](#), but [as](#) by [works](#). [They stumbled over the stone of stumbling](#),

Why (ULT)

Paul asks this question to get the attention of his readers. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

as by works (ULT)

This refers to things that people do to try to please God. You can make this explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: "by trying to do things that would please God" or "by keeping the Law" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [faith](#)
- [as](#)
- [works](#)
- [They stumbled over](#)
- [of stumbling](#)
- [stone of stumbling](#)

Romans 9:33

just as it has been written (ULT)

You can indicate that Isaiah wrote this. Alternate translation: “just as it has been written by Isaiah the prophet” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

just as it has been written (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “as Isaiah the prophet wrote” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

in Zion (ULT)

Here, **Zion** is a metonym that represents Israel. Alternate translation: “in Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

a stone of stumbling and a rock of offense (ULT)

Both of these phrases mean basically the same thing. (See: [Doublet](#))

a stone of stumbling and a rock of offense (ULT)

These phrases are metaphors that refer to Jesus and his death on the cross. It was as if the people stumbled over a stone because they were disgusted when they considered Jesus’ death on the cross. (See: [Metaphor](#))

who believes in it (ULT)

Because the stone stands for a person, you may need to translate this as “who believes in him.”

Translation Words - ULT

- [just as](#)
- [it has been written](#)
- [Zion](#)
- [a stone of stumbling](#)
- [of stumbling](#)
- [who believes](#)
- [will...be ashamed](#)

ULT

33 [just as it has been written](#), “Behold, I place in Zion a stone of stumbling and a rock of offense, and the one [who believes](#) in it will not be ashamed.”

Romans 10

Romans 10 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set prose quotations from the Old Testament farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text. The ULT does this with the quoted words in verse 8.

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with verses 18-20 of this chapter, which are words from the Old Testament.

Special concepts in this chapter

God's righteousness

Paul teaches here that while many Jews earnestly tried to be righteous, they did not succeed. We cannot earn God's righteousness. God gives us Jesus' righteousness when we believe in him. (See: [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [unrighteous](#), [unrighteousness](#), [upright](#), [uprightness](#) and [faith](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Rhetorical questions

Paul uses many rhetorical questions in this chapter. He does this to convince his readers that God does not save only the Hebrew people, so Christians must be ready to go and share the gospel with the whole world. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [save, saved, safe, salvation](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

"I will provoke you to jealousy by what is not a nation"

Paul uses this prophecy to explain that God will use the church to make the Hebrew people jealous. This is so they will seek God and believe the gospel. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#) and [jealous](#), [jealousy](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Romans 10:1

Connecting Statement:

Paul continues stating his desire for Israel to believe but emphasizes that both those who are Jews as well as everyone else can only be saved by faith in Jesus.

ULT

¹ Brothers, the desire of my heart and {my} request to God {is} for them, for salvation.

Brothers (ULT)

Here, **brothers** refers to fellow Christians, including both men and women.

the desire of my heart (ULT)

Here, **heart** is a metonym for a person's emotions or inner being. Alternate translation: "my greatest desire" (See: [Metonymy](#))

for them, for salvation (ULT)

"is that God will save the Jews"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Brothers](#)
- [of...heart](#)
- [request](#)
- [God](#)
- [salvation](#)

Romans 10:2

I testify...about them (ULT)

"I declare truthfully about them"

Translation Words - ULT

- I testify
- a zeal
- for God
- knowledge

ULT

² For I testify about them that they have a zeal for God, but not according to knowledge.

Romans 10:3

For they do not know the righteousness of God (ULT)

Here, **righteousness** refers to the way God puts people right with himself. You can make this explicit in the translation. Alternate translation: "For they do not know how God puts people right with himself" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

³ For they do not know the righteousness of God, and seeking to establish their own righteousness, they did not submit to the righteousness of God.

of God...they did not submit to the righteousness (ULT)

"they did not accept God's way of putting people right with himself"

Translation Words - ULT

- they do not know
- righteousness
- righteousness (2)
- to...righteousness
- of God
- of God (2)
- seeking
- they did...submit

Romans 10:4

For Christ {is} the fulfillment of the law (ULT)

“For Christ completely fulfilled the law”

for righteousness for everyone who believes (ULT)

Here, **believes** means “trusts.” Alternate translation: “in order that he may make everyone who trusts in him right before God” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

⁴ For **Christ** {is} the fulfillment of the law for **righteousness** for everyone **who believes**.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Christ](#)
- [of the law](#)
- [righteousness](#)
- [who believes](#)

Romans 10:5

the righteousness that comes from the law

“how the law makes a person right before God”

The man who does the righteousness of the law will live by this righteousness

In order to be made right with God through the law, a person would have to keep the law perfectly, which is not possible. Alternate translation: “The person who perfectly obeys the law will live because the law will make him right before God” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

will live (ULT)

Here, **will live** could refer to: (1) eternal life. (2) mortal life in fellowship with God.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [writes](#)
- [righteousness](#)
- [the law](#)
- [will live](#)

ULT

⁵ For [Moses writes](#) about the [righteousness](#) that {is} from [the law](#):
“The man who has done these things [will live](#) by them.”

Romans 10:6

But the righteousness from faith says this (ULT)

Here, **righteousness** is described as a person who can speak.
Alternate translation: "But Moses writes this about how faith makes a person right before God" (See: [Personification](#))

ULT

⁶ But the [righteousness](#) from [faith](#) says this: "Do not say in your [heart](#), 'Who will ascend into [heaven](#)?' (that is, to bring [Christ](#) down);

Do not say in your heart (ULT)

Moses was addressing the people as if he were speaking to only one person. The pronoun **your** is singular. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Do not say in your heart (ULT)

Here, **heart** is a metonym for a person's mind or inner being. Alternate translation: "Do not say to yourself" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Who will ascend into heaven (ULT)

Moses uses a question to teach his audience. His previous instruction of, "Do not say" requires a negative answer to this question. You can translate this question as a statement. Alternate translation: "No one is able to go up to heaven" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

that is, to bring Christ down (ULT)

"in order that they might have Christ come down to earth"

Translation Words - ULT

- [righteousness](#)
- [faith](#)
- [heart](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [Christ](#)

Romans 10:7

Who will descend into the abyss (ULT)

Moses uses a question to teach his audience. His previous instruction of, "Do not say" requires a negative answer to this question. You can translate this as a statement. Alternate translation: "No person can go down and enter the place where the spirits of dead persons are" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

⁷ or, 'Who will descend into the [abyss](#)?' (that is, to bring [Christ](#) up from [the dead](#)).

from the dead (ULT)

From among all those who have died. This expression describes all **dead** people together in the underworld.

the dead (ULT)

Here, **the dead** speaks of physical death.

Translation Words - ULT

- [abyss](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [the dead](#)

Romans 10:8

But what does it say (ULT)

The word **it** refers to “the righteousness” of [Romans 10:6](#). Here Paul describes righteousness as a person who can speak. Alternate translation: “But this is what Moses says?” (See: [Personification](#))

But what does it say (ULT)

Paul uses a question to emphasize the answer he is about to give. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

The word is near you (ULT)

Paul speaks of God’s word as if it were a person who can move. Alternate translation: “You have heard the message” (See: [Personification](#))

The word is near you, in your mouth and in your heart (ULT)

The word **mouth** is a metonym that refers to what a person says. Alternate translation: “You can hear and know how to speak and think about God’s message” (See: [Metonymy](#))

in your heart (ULT)

The phrase **in your heart** is metonym that refers to what a person thinks and believes. Alternate translation: “and you know what it means” (See: [Metonymy](#))

The...word of faith (ULT)

“God’s message that tells us that we must believe in him”

Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [of faith](#)
- [we proclaim](#)

ULT

⁸ But what does it say? “The word is near you, in your mouth and in your heart.” That is the word [of faith](#), which [we proclaim](#).

Romans 10:9

if with your mouth you confess Jesus as Lord (ULT)

“if you verbally confess that Jesus is Lord”

believe in your heart (ULT)

Here, **heart** is a metonym for a person’s mind or inner person. Alternate translation: “believe in your mind” or “truly believe” (See: [Metonymy](#))

raised him from the dead (ULT)

Here, **raised** here is an idiom for “caused to live again.” Alternate translation: “caused him to live again” (See: [Idiom](#))

you will be saved (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “God will save you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [you confess](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [as Lord](#)
- [believe](#)
- [heart](#)
- [God](#)
- [raised](#)
- [the dead](#)
- [you will be saved](#)

ULT

⁹ For if with your mouth [you confess Jesus as Lord](#), and [believe](#) in your [heart](#) that [God raised](#) him from [the dead](#), [you will be saved](#).

Romans 10:10

For with the heart one believes unto righteousness, and with the mouth one confesses unto salvation (ULT)

Here, **heart** is a metonym that represents the mind or will. Alternate translation: "For it is with the mind that a person trusts and is right before God, and it is with the mouth that a person confesses and God saves him" (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

¹⁰ For [with the heart one believes](#) unto [righteousness](#), and with the mouth [one confesses](#) unto [salvation](#).

with the mouth (ULT)

Here, **mouth** is a synecdoche that represents a person's capacity to speak. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [with the heart](#)
- [one believes](#)
- [righteousness](#)
- [one confesses](#)
- [salvation](#)

Romans 10:11

For the scripture says (ULT)

Paul speaks of the scripture as if it were alive and had a voice. (See: [Personification](#))

For the scripture says (ULT)

You can make explicit who wrote the scripture that Paul uses here. Alternate translation: "For Isaiah wrote in the scriptures" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Everyone who believes on him will not be put to shame (ULT)

This is equivalent to: "Everyone who does not believe will be shamed." The negative is used here for emphasis. You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "God will honor everyone who believes in him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [scripture](#)
- [who believes](#)
- [will...be put to shame](#)

ULT

¹¹ For the [scripture](#) says, "Everyone [who believes](#) on him will not [be put to shame](#)."

Romans 10:12

For there is no difference between Jew and Greek (ULT)

Paul implies that God will treat all people the same. You can make this explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: "In this way, God treats the Jews and the non-Jews the same" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

¹² For there is no difference between [Jew](#) and [Greek](#); for the same [Lord](#) {is} of all, being rich to all [who call upon](#) him.

being rich to all who call upon him (ULT)

Here, **being rich** means that God blesses richly. You can make this explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: "and he richly blesses all who trust in him" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jew](#)
- [Greek](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [who call upon](#)

Romans 10:13

For everyone who calls on the name of the Lord will be saved (ULT)

Here the word **name** is a metonym for Jesus. (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

¹³ For everyone [who calls on](#) the [name of the Lord](#) will be saved.

For everyone who calls on the name of the Lord will be saved (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "For the Lord will save everyone who trusts in him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [who calls on](#)
- [name](#)
- [of the Lord](#)
- [will be saved](#)

Romans 10:14

How then would they call to whom they have not believed (ULT)

Paul uses a question to emphasize the importance of taking the good news of Christ to those who have not heard. The word **they** refers to those who do not yet belong to God. Alternate translation: "Those who do not believe in God cannot call on him!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

¹⁴ How then [would they call](#) to whom [they have not believed](#)? And how [would they believe in](#) whom they have not heard? And how would they hear without [someone preaching](#)?

how...would they believe in whom they have not heard (ULT)

Paul uses another question for the same reason. Alternate translation: "they cannot believe in him if they have not heard his message!" or "they cannot believe in him if they have not heard the message about him!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

would they believe in (ULT)

Here this means to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

how...would they hear without someone preaching (ULT)

Paul uses another question for the same reason. Alternate translation: "they cannot hear the message if someone does not tell them!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [would they call](#)
- [they have...believed](#)
- [would they believe in](#)
- [someone preaching](#)

Romans 10:15

How beautiful {are} the feet of those who proclaim good news of good things (ULT)

Paul uses **feet** to represent those who travel and bring the message to those who have not heard it. Alternate translation: "It is wonderful when messengers come and tell us the good news" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [would they preach](#)
- [they would be sent](#)
- [Just as](#)
- [it is written](#)
- [who proclaim good news](#)
- [of good things](#)

ULT

¹⁵ And how [would they preach](#), unless [they would be sent](#)? [Just as it is written](#), "How beautiful {are} the feet of those [who proclaim good news of good things](#)!"

Romans 10:16

not all of them obeyed (ULT)

Here, **them** refers to the Jews. “not all of the Jews obeyed”

Lord, who has believed our message (ULT)

Paul is using this question to emphasize that Isaiah prophesied in the Scriptures that many Jews would not believe in Jesus. You can translate this as a statement. Alternate translation: “Lord, so many of them do not believe our message.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

our message (ULT)

Here, **our** refers to God and Isaiah.

Translation Words - ULT

- [obeyed](#)
- [gospel](#)
- [Isaiah](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [has believed](#)
- [message](#)

ULT

¹⁶ But not all of them [obeyed](#) the [gospel](#). For [Isaiah](#) says, “[Lord](#), who [has believed](#) our [message](#)?”

Romans 10:17

faith {is} from hearing (ULT)

Here, **faith** refers to “believing in Christ”

hearing by the word of Christ

“hearing by listening to the message about Christ”

Translation Words - ULT

- faith
- of Christ

ULT

¹⁷ So **faith** {is} from hearing, and hearing by the word **of Christ**.

Romans 10:18

But I say, “Did they certainly not hear?” Yes, indeed (ULT)

Paul uses a question for emphasis. You can translate this as a statement. Alternate translation: “But, I say the Jews certainly have heard the message about Christ” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

¹⁸ But I say, “Did they certainly not hear?” Yes, indeed. “Their [sound](#) has gone out into all the [earth](#), and their words to the ends of the [world](#).”

Their sound has gone out into all the earth, and their words to the ends of the world (ULT)

Both of these statements mean basically the same thing and Paul uses them for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Their sound has gone out into all the earth, and their words to the ends of the world (ULT)

The word **their** refers to the sun, moon, and stars. Here they are described as human messengers that tell people about God. This refers to how their existence shows God’s power and glory. Alternate translation: “The sun, moon, and the stars are proof of God’s power and glory, and everyone in the world sees them and knows the truth about God.” (See: [Personification](#))

Their sound has gone out into all the earth, and their words to the ends of the world (ULT)

You can make explicit that Paul is quoting Scripture here. Alternate translation: “As the Scriptures record, ‘The sun, moon, and the stars are proof of God’s power and glory, and everyone in the world sees them and knows the truth about God.’” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sound](#)
- [earth](#)
- [of...world](#)

Romans 10:19

But I say, “Did Israel certainly not know (ULT)

Paul uses a question for emphasis. Alternate translation: “Again I tell you that Israel did know the message.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

But I say, “Did Israel certainly not know (ULT)

The word **Israel** is a metonym for the people who lived in the nation of Israel. Alternate translation: “Again I tell you the people of Israel did know the message” (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

19 But I say, “Did **Israel** certainly not know?” First **Moses** says, “I will provoke you to **jealousy** by {what is} not a **nation**; by means of a **nation without understanding**, I will provoke you to anger.”

First Moses says (ULT)

This means that Moses wrote down what God said. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

I will provoke you to jealousy...I will provoke you to anger (ULT)

Both instances of **I** refer to God, and **you** refers to the Israelites. Alternate translation: “God will provoke you ... God will stir you up to anger.” (See: [Forms of You](#))

certainly not...by...a nation (ULT)

“by those you do not consider to be a real nation” or “by people who do not belong to any nation”

by means of a nation without understanding (ULT)

Here, **without understanding** means that the people do not know God. Alternate translation: “by a nation with people who do not know me or my commands” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

you...I will provoke...to anger (ULT)

“I will make you angry” or “I will cause you to become angry”

you (ULT)

Here, **you** refers to the nation of Israel. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [Did...know](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [will provoke...to jealousy](#)
- [a nation](#)
- [a nation \(2\)](#)
- [without understanding](#)

Romans 10:20

General Information:

Here the words I, “me,” and “my” refer to God.

Now Isaiah was very bold when he says (ULT)

This means the prophet **Isaiah** wrote what God had said.

I was found by those not seeking me (ULT)

Prophets often speak of things in the future as if they have already happened. This emphasizes that the prophecy will certainly come true.

I was found by those not seeking me (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “Even though the Gentile people will not look for me, they will find me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

I appeared (ULT)

“I made myself known”

he says (ULT)

He refers to God, who is speaking through Isaiah.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Isaiah](#)
- [was very bold](#)
- [seeking](#)

ULT

²⁰ Now [Isaiah was very bold](#) when he says, “I was found by those not [seeking](#) me; I appeared to those not asking for me.”

Romans 10:21

The whole day (ULT)

This phrase is used to emphasize God's continual effort.
"Continually"

I reached out my hands to a disobedient and stubborn people (ULT)

The action of reaching out a hand represents offering help to a person. Alternate translation: "I tried to welcome you and to help you, but you refused my help and continued to disobey" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [day](#)
- [hands](#)
- [disobedient](#)
- [a...people](#)

ULT

²¹ But to [Israel](#) he says, "The whole [day](#) I reached out my [hands](#) to a [disobedient](#) and stubborn [people](#)."

Romans 11

Romans 11 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with verses 9-10, 26-27, and 34-35, which are words from the Old Testament.

Special concepts in this chapter

Grafting

Paul uses the image of “grafting” to refer to the place of the Gentiles and Jews in the plans of God. Making one plant to be permanently part of another plant is called “grafting.” Paul uses the picture of God grafting the Gentiles as a wild branch into his saving plans. But God has not forgotten about the Jews, who are spoken of as the natural plant. God will also save Jews who believe in Jesus.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“Did God reject his people? May it never be”

Whether Israel (the physical descendants of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob) has a future in the plans of God, or if they have been replaced in the plans of God by the church, is a major theological issue in Chapters 9-11. This phrase is an important part of this section of Romans. It seems to indicate that Israel remains distinct from the church. Not all scholars arrive at this conclusion. Despite their currently rejecting Jesus as their Messiah, Israel has not exhausted the grace and mercy of God. (See: [Christ, Messiah](#) and [grace, gracious](#) and [mercy, merciful](#))

Romans 11:1

Connecting Statement:

Though Israel as a nation has rejected God, God wants them to understand salvation comes by grace without works.

I say then (ULT)

“I, Paul, say then”

God did not reject his people, did he (ULT)

Paul asks this question so that he can answer the questions of other Jews who are upset that God has included the Gentiles among his people, while the hearts of the Jewish people have been hardened. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

not...did he...May it never be (ULT)

“That is not possible!” or “Certainly not!” This expression strongly denies that this could happen. You may have a similar expression in your language that you could use here. See how you translated this in [Romans 9:14](#).

of the tribe of Benjamin (ULT)

This refers to the **tribe** descended from **Benjamin**, one of the 12 tribes into which God divided the people of Israel.

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [did...reject](#)
- [his...people](#)
- [people](#)
- [an Israelite](#)
- [the seed](#)
- [of Abraham](#)
- [of the tribe](#)
- [of Benjamin](#)

ULT

¹ I say then, [God](#) did not [reject his people](#), did he? May it never be! For I also am [an Israelite](#), from [the seed of Abraham](#), of the tribe of Benjamin.

Romans 11:2

whom he foreknew (ULT)

“whom he knew ahead of time”

Or do you not know what the scripture says about Elijah, how he pleaded with God against Israel (ULT)

You can translate this as a statement. Alternate translation: “Surely you know what the Scriptures record about when Elijah pleaded with God against Israel” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

what the scripture says (ULT)

Paul is referring to the **scriptures** as if they were able to speak. (See: [Personification](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- with God
- did...reject
- he pleaded
- Israel
- his...people
- people
- he foreknew
- do you...know
- scripture
- Elijah

ULT

² God did not reject his people, whom he foreknew. Or do you not know what the scripture says about Elijah, how he pleaded with God against Israel?

Romans 11:3

they have killed (ULT)

Here, **they** refers to the people of Israel.

and I alone was spared (ULT)

The pronoun **I** here refers to Elijah.

they seek my life (ULT)

“they want to kill me”

Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- prophets
- altars
- they seek
- life

ULT

³ “Lord, they have killed your prophets, they have broken down your altars, and I alone was spared, and they seek my life.”

Romans 11:4

But what does the divine response say to him (ULT)

Paul is using this question to bring the reader to his next point.
Alternate translation: "How does God answer him?" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

to him (ULT)

The pronoun **him** refers to Elijah.

Translation Words - ULT

- [divine response](#)
- [have...bent](#)
- [to Baal](#)

ULT

⁴ But what does the [divine response](#) say to him? "I have reserved for myself 7,000 men who have not [bent](#) the knee [to Baal](#)."

Romans 11:5

a remnant (ULT)

Here this means a small part of people whom God chose to receive his grace.

Translation Words - ULT

- present time
- a remnant
- the choice
- of grace

ULT

⁵ Even so then, at this present time also there is a remnant according to the choice of grace.

Romans 11:6

But if by grace (ULT)

Paul continues to explain how God's mercy works. Alternate translation: "But since God's mercy works by grace" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [by grace](#)
- [grace](#)
- [grace \(2\)](#)
- [works](#)

ULT

⁶ But if [by grace](#), {it is} no longer by [works](#). Otherwise [grace](#) would no longer be [grace](#).^[1]

Romans 11:7

What then (ULT)

“What should we conclude?” Paul asks this question to move his reader to his next point. You can translate this as a statement. Alternate translation: “This is what we need to remember.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [seeks](#)
- [chosen](#)
- [were hardened](#)

ULT

⁷ What then? The thing [Israel seeks](#), it did not obtain, but the [chosen](#) obtained it, and the rest [were hardened](#),

Romans 11:8

God gave them a spirit of dullness, eyes not to see, and ears not to hear (ULT)

This is a metaphor about the fact that the people are spiritually dull. They are not able to **hear** or receive spiritual truth. (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

⁸ [just as it is written](#): “God gave them a [spirit](#) of dullness, eyes not to see, and ears not to hear, to this very [day](#).”

a spirit of dullness (ULT)

Here **spirit** means “the characteristics of,” such as the “spirit of wisdom.”

eyes not to see (ULT)

The concept of seeing with one’s **eyes** was considered to be equivalent to gaining understanding.

not to see...ears...to hear (ULT)

The concept of hearing with the **ears** was considered to be equivalent to obedience.

Translation Words - ULT

- [just as](#)
- [it is written](#)
- [God](#)
- [a spirit](#)
- [day](#)

Romans 11:9

Let their table become for a net and for a trap (ULT)

Here, **table** here is a metonym that represents feasting. Alternate translation: "Please, God, make their feasts become like a trap" (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

⁹ And [David](#) says, "Let their table become for [a net](#) and for [a trap](#), and for [a stumbling block](#) and for a retribution for them."

Let their table become for a net and for a trap (ULT)

Here, **net** and **trap** are metaphors that represent punishment. Alternate translation: (See: [Metaphor](#))

Let their table become for a net and for a trap (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "Please, God, make their feasts like a trap that catches them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

a stumbling block (ULT)

A **stumbling block** is anything that causes a person to trip so that he falls down. Here it represents something that tempts a person to sin. Alternate translation: "something that tempts them to sin" (See: [Metaphor](#))

a retribution for them (ULT)

"something that allows you to take revenge on them"

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [a net](#)
- [a trap](#)
- [a stumbling block](#)

Romans 11:10

make their backs bend continually (ULT)

Here, **make their backs bend** is a metonym for forcing slaves to carry heavy loads on their backs. Alternate translation: “make them continually carry heavy loads” (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

¹⁰ Let their eyes be darkened to not see, and make their backs bend continually.”

make their backs bend continually (ULT)

This is a metaphor for making them suffer. Alternate translation: “make them continually suffer like people carrying heavy loads” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Let...be darkened
- make...bend

Romans 11:11

Connecting Statement:

With Israel as a nation rejecting God, Paul warns the Gentiles to be careful they do not make the same mistake.

They did not stumble so as to fall, did they (ULT)

Paul uses this question to add emphasis. Alternate translation: "Has God rejected them forever because they sinned?" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

not...did they...May it never be (ULT)

"That is not possible!" or "Certainly not!" This expression strongly denies that this could happen. You may have a similar expression in your language that you could use here. See how you translated this in [Romans 9:14](#).

to provoke...them...to jealousy (ULT)

See how you translated this phrase in [Romans 10:19](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [They did...stumble](#)
- [by...failure](#)
- [salvation](#)
- [to...Gentiles](#)
- [to provoke...to jealousy](#)

ULT

11 I say then, "They did not [stumble](#) so as to fall, did they?" May it never be! Instead, by their [failure](#), [salvation](#) {is} to the [Gentiles](#), to [provoke](#) them to [jealousy](#).

Romans 11:12

if...their transgression {is} riches of the world, and their loss {is} riches of the Gentiles (ULT)

Both of these phrases mean basically the same thing. If you need to, you can combine them in your translation. Alternate translation: “when the Jews failed spiritually, the result was that God abundantly blessed the non-Jews” (See: [Doublet](#))

ULT

¹² Now if their [transgression](#) {is} riches [of the world](#), and their loss {is} riches [of the Gentiles](#), how much greater {will} their [completion](#) {be}?

riches...of the Gentiles (ULT)

Because the Jews rejected Christ, God richly blessed the **Gentiles** by giving them the opportunity to receive Christ.

of the world (ULT)

Here the **world** is a metonym that refers to the people who live in the world, especially the Gentiles.

Translation Words - ULT

- [transgression](#)
- [of the world](#)
- [of the Gentiles](#)
- [completion](#)

Romans 11:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Gentiles
- to the Gentiles
- an apostle
- I glorify
- ministry

ULT

¹³ Now I speak to you Gentiles. As much therefore as I am an apostle to the Gentiles, I glorify my ministry,

Romans 11:14

I might provoke to jealousy (ULT)

See how you translated this phrase in [Romans 10:19](#).

those who {are} of my own flesh (ULT)

This refers to Paul's fellow Jews.

and might save some of them (ULT)

God will save those who believe. Alternate translation: "and perhaps some will believe and God will save them"
(See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [I might provoke to jealousy](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [might save](#)

ULT

¹⁴ if somehow [I might provoke to jealousy](#) those who {are} of my own [flesh](#) and [might save](#) some of them.

Romans 11:15

For if their rejection {is} reconciliation of the world (ULT)

“For if because God rejected them, he will reconcile the rest of the **world** to himself”

ULT

¹⁵ For if their **rejection** {is} **reconciliation of the world**, what {is their} acceptance if not **life** from **the dead**?

their rejection (ULT)

The pronoun **their** refers to Jewish unbelievers.

of the world (ULT)

Here, **the world** is a metonym for the people who live in the world. Alternate translation: “the people in the world” (See: [Metonymy](#))

what {is their} acceptance if not life from the dead (ULT)

Paul asks this question to emphasize that when God accepts the Jews, it will be a wonderful thing. Alternate translation: “how will it be when God accepts them? It will be like they have come back to life from among the dead!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

what {is their} acceptance if not life from the dead (ULT)

You can translate it in an active form. Alternate translation: “then when God accepts them, it will be like they have died and become alive again!” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the dead (ULT)

These words speak of all **dead** people together in the underworld.

Translation Words - ULT

- [rejection](#)
- [reconciliation](#)
- [of the world](#)
- [life](#)
- [the dead](#)

Romans 11:16

Now if the firstfruits {are} holy, the lump of dough also (ULT)

Paul is speaking of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, the Israelites' ancestors, as if they were the first grain or **firstfruits** to be harvested. He is also speaking of the Israelites who are descendants of those men as if they were a **lump of dough** that they made from the grain. Alternate translation: "If Abraham is counted as the first of what has been offered to God, all of our ancestors who followed should also be counted as God's possession" (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

¹⁶ Now if the [firstfruits](#) {are} [holy](#), the lump of dough also. And if the root {is} [holy](#), the branches also.

if the root {is} holy, the branches also (ULT)

Paul is speaking of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, the Israelites' ancestors, as if they were the **root** of a tree, and the Israelites who are descendants of those men, as if they were the **branches** of the tree. (See: [Metaphor](#))

holy (ULT)

The people always dedicated to God the first crops that they harvested. Here, "firstfruits" stands for the first people to believe in Christ. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [firstfruits](#)
- [holy](#)
- [holy](#) (2)

Romans 11:17

But if some of the branches were broken off (ULT)

Here Paul refers to the Jews who rejected Jesus as **branches** that were **broken off**. (See: [Metaphor](#))

But if some of the branches were broken off (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "But if someone broke off some of the branches" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

and you, being a wild olive branch (ULT)

The pronoun **you**, and the phrase **a wild olive branch**, refer to the Gentile people who have accepted salvation through Jesus.

were grafted into them (ULT)

Here Paul speaks of the Gentile Christians as if they were **grafted** into the faith of Abraham and the Jewish patriarchs. (See: [Metaphor](#))

were grafted into them (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "God attached you to the tree among the remaining branches" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

of the richness of the root of the olive tree (ULT)

Here, **the richness of the root** is a metaphor that refers to the promises of God. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [a wild olive branch](#)
- [olive](#)

ULT

¹⁷ But if some of the branches were broken off, and you, being [a wild olive branch](#), were grafted into them, and partakers with them of the richness of the root of the [olive](#) tree,

Romans 11:18

do not boast over the branches (ULT)

Here, **the branches** is a metaphor that stands for the Jewish people. Alternate translation: “do not say you are better than the Jewish people God has rejected” (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

18 do not **boast over** the branches. But if **you boast**, you do not **support** the root, but the root, you.

you do not support the root, but the root, you (ULT)

Again Paul implies that the Gentile believers are branches that are connected to the **root** of the faith of the Abraham and the Jewish patriarchs. God saves them only because of the covenant promises that he made to the Jews. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- do...boast over
- you boast
- do...support

Romans 11:19

Branches were broken off (ULT)

Branches here refer to the Jews who rejected Jesus and whom God has now rejected. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Branches were broken off (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "God broke branches off" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

I might be grafted in (ULT)

Paul uses this phrase to refer to the Gentile believers whom God has accepted. (See: [Metaphor](#))

I might be grafted in (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "he might attach me in" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

19 You will say then, "Branches were broken off so that I might be grafted in."

Romans 11:20

They were broken off in {their} unbelief (ULT)

The pronouns **They** and **their** refer to the Jewish people who did not believe.

but you stand firm in the faith (ULT)

Paul speaks of the Gentile believers remaining faithful as if they were standing **firm** and no one could move them. Alternate translation: "but you remain because of your faith" (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

²⁰ {That is} true. They were broken off in {their} **unbelief**, but you stand firm in the **faith**. Do not **think** highly of **yourself**, but **fear**.

Translation Words - ULT

- [in...unbelief](#)
- [in...faith](#)
- [Do...think...of yourself](#)
- [fear](#)

Romans 11:21

For if God did not spare the natural branches, neither will he spare you (ULT)

Here the **natural branches** refer to the Jewish people who rejected Jesus. Alternate translation: “Since God did not spare those unbelieving Jews, who grew up like a tree’s natural branches that came from the root, then know, if you do not believe, he will not spare you either” (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

²¹ For if [God](#) did not spare the natural branches, neither will he spare you.

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)

Romans 11:22

kindness and severity of God (ULT)

Paul is reminding the Gentile believers that although God may act very kindly toward them, he will not hesitate to judge and punish them.

severity on those who fell, but kindness of God on you (ULT)

This can be restated to remove the abstract nouns **severity** and **kindness**. Alternate translation: “God dealt harshly with the Jews who fell, but God acts kindly toward you” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

those who fell (ULT)

Doing what is wrong is spoken of as if it is falling down. Alternate translation: “the Jews who have done wrong” or “the Jews who have refused to trust in Christ” (See: [Metaphor](#))

if you continue in {his} kindness (ULT)

This can be restated to remove the abstract noun **kindness**. Alternate translation: “if you continue doing what is right so that he continues being kind to you” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Otherwise you also will be cut off (ULT)

Paul again uses the metaphor of a branch, which God can **cut off** if he needs to. Here, **cut off** is a metaphor for rejecting someone. Alternate translation: “Otherwise you will be rejected” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Otherwise you also will be cut off (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “Otherwise God will cut you off” or “Otherwise God will reject you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [kindness](#)
- [kindness](#)
- [kindness](#)
- [of God](#)
- [of God \(2\)](#)
- [will be cut off](#)

ULT

²² See, then, [kindness](#) and severity of God: severity on those who fell, but [kindness of God](#) on you, if you continue in {his} [kindness](#). Otherwise you also [will be cut off](#).

Romans 11:23

if they do not continue in {their} unbelief (ULT)

The phrase **do not continue in their unbelief** is a double negative. You can translate this in a positive form. Alternate translation: “if the Jews start believing in Christ” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

ULT

²³ But they, if they do not continue in {their} **unbelief**, will be grafted in. For **God** is able to graft them in again.

will be grafted in (ULT)

Paul speaks of the Jews as if they were branches that could be **grafted** back into a tree if they start to believe in Jesus. (See: [Metaphor](#))

will be grafted in (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “God will graft them back in” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

to graft...in (ULT)

This is a common process where the end of a live branch of one tree is inserted into another tree so that the new branch will continue to grow in that tree.

they...them (ULT)

The occurrences of **they** and **them** refer to the Jews.

Translation Words - ULT

- [in...unbelief](#)
- [God](#)

Romans 11:24

For if you were cut from what is by nature a wild olive tree, and contrary to nature were grafted into a good olive tree, how much more will these, who {are} according to nature, be grafted back into their own olive tree (ULT)

Paul continues speaking of the Gentile believers and Jews as if they were branches of a tree. (See: [Metaphor](#))

For if you were cut from what is by nature a wild olive tree, and contrary to nature were grafted into a good olive tree, how much more will these, who {are} according to nature, be grafted back into their own olive tree (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "For if God had cut you out of what is by nature a wild olive tree, and contrary to nature had grafted you into a good olive tree, how much more will he graft these Jews, who are the natural branches, into their own olive tree?" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

who {are} according to nature (ULT)

Paul continues speaking of the Jews and Gentiles as if they were branches. The branches **according to nature** represent the Jews who were originally connected to the faith of Abraham and the Jewish patriarchs. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [were cut](#)
- [a good olive tree](#)
- [olive tree](#)

ULT

²⁴ For if you [were cut](#) from what is by nature a wild olive tree, and contrary to nature were grafted into [a good olive tree](#), how much more will these, who {are} according to nature, be grafted back into their own [olive tree](#)?

Romans 11:25

not...I do...want you to be ignorant (ULT)

Here Paul uses a double negative. You can translate this in a positive form. Alternate translation: "I very much want you to be aware" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

brothers (ULT)

Here, **brothers** refers to fellow Christians, including both men and women.

I do...want (ULT)

Here the pronoun **I** refers to Paul.

you...you might...be...yourselves (ULT)

The pronouns **you** and **yourselves** refer to the Gentile believers.

in order that you might not be wise in yourselves (ULT)

Paul does not want the Gentile believers to think they are wiser than the Jewish unbelievers. Alternate translation: "so that you will not think you are wiser than you are" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

a partial hardening has occurred in Israel (ULT)

Paul speaks of stubbornness as if it were a **hardening** of physical organs in the body. Some Jews have refused to accept salvation through Jesus. Alternate translation: "many people of Israel continue to be stubborn" (See: [Metaphor](#))

of...mystery...until...completion of the Gentiles might come in (ULT)

The word **until** here implies that a portion Jews will refuse to believe until after God has finished bringing the **Gentiles** into the church.

Translation Words - ULT

- [to be ignorant](#)
- [of...mystery](#)
- [brothers](#)
- [wise](#)
- [a...hardening](#)
- [in Israel](#)
- [of...Gentiles](#)

ULT

²⁵ For I do not want you [to be ignorant](#) of this [mystery](#), [brothers](#), in order that you might not be [wise](#) in yourselves, for a partial [hardening](#) has occurred [in Israel](#), until the completion of the [Gentiles](#) might come in;

Romans 11:26

Connecting Statement:

Paul says that a deliverer will come out of Israel to the glory of God.

and thus all Israel will be saved (ULT)

You can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “and thus God will save all Israel” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

just as it is written (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “just as the scriptures record” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

From Zion (ULT)

Here, **Zion** is used as a metonym for the place where God dwells. Alternate translation: “From where God is among the Jews” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the Deliverer (ULT)

“the one who brings his people to safety”

He will remove ungodliness (ULT)

Paul speaks of **ungodliness** as if it were an object that someone could remove, perhaps like someone removes a garment. (See: [Metaphor](#))

from Jacob (ULT)

Here, **Jacob** is used as a metonym for Israel. Alternate translation: “from the Israelite people” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [will be saved](#)
- [just as](#)
- [it is written](#)
- [Zion](#)
- [Deliverer](#)
- [ungodliness](#)
- [Jacob](#)

ULT

²⁶ and thus all [Israel](#) will be saved, just as it is written: “From [Zion](#) will come the [Deliverer](#). He will remove [ungodliness](#) from [Jacob](#).”

Romans 11:27

I will take away their sins (ULT)

Here Paul speaks of **sins** as if they were objects that someone could take away. Alternate translation: "I will remove the burden of their sins" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [covenant](#)
- [sins](#)

ULT

²⁷ And this {will be} the [covenant](#) from me to them, when I will take away their [sins](#)."

Romans 11:28

As far as the gospel is concerned

You can make explicit why Paul mentions the **gospel**. Alternate translation: "Because the Jews rejected the gospel" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

enemies for your sake (ULT)

You can make explicit whose **enemies** they are, and how this was for the Gentiles' sake. Alternate translation: "they are God's enemies for your sake" or "God has treated them as enemies in order that you also might hear the gospel" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

according to...election (ULT)

You can make explicit why Paul mentions **election**. Alternate translation: "because God has elected the Jews" or "because God has chosen the Jews" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

beloved because of their forefathers (ULT)

You can make explicit who loves the Jews and why Paul mentions **their forefathers**. Alternate translation: "they are loved by God because of what he promised to do for their ancestors" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

beloved because of their forefathers (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "God still loves them because of what he promised to do for their ancestors" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [gospel](#)
- [enemies](#)
- [election](#)
- [beloved](#)
- [forefathers](#)

ULT

²⁸ According to the [gospel](#), {they are} [enemies](#) for your sake, but according to [election](#), {they are} [beloved](#) because of their [forefathers](#).

Romans 11:29

For the gifts and the calling of God {are} unchangeable (ULT)

Paul speaks of the spiritual and material blessings that God promised to give his people as if they were **gifts**. (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

²⁹ For the [gifts](#) and the [calling of God](#) {are} unchangeable.

For the gifts and the calling of God {are} unchangeable (ULT)

The call of God refers to the fact that God called the Jews to be his people. Alternate translation: “For God never changed his mind about what he has promised to give them, and about how he has called them to be his people” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [gifts](#)
- [calling](#)
- [of God](#)

Romans 11:30

you were formerly disobedient (ULT)

“you did not obey in the past”

have received mercy in that disobedience (ULT)

Here, **mercy** means God’s undeserved blessings. Alternate translation: “because the Jews have rejected Jesus, you have received blessings that you did not deserve” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

you (ULT)

Here, **you** refers to Gentile believers, and is plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [just as](#)
- [were...disobedient](#)
- [in...disobedience](#)
- [to God](#)
- [have received mercy](#)

ULT

³⁰ For [just as](#) you were formerly [disobedient to God](#), but now [have received mercy](#) in that [disobedience](#),

Romans 11:31

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- have been disobedient
- by...mercy
- might...receive mercy

ULT

³¹ thus also, these now **have been disobedient**, that by the **mercy** shown to you, they might also now **receive mercy**.

Romans 11:32

has shut up...God...all into disobedience (ULT)

God has treated people who disobey him like prisoners who are unable to escape from prison. Alternate translation: "God has made prisoners of those who disobey him. Now they cannot stop disobeying God" (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

³² For [God has shut up](#) all into [disobedience](#), in order that [he might have mercy on](#) all.

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [has shut up](#)
- [disobedience](#)
- [he might have mercy on](#)

Romans 11:33

Oh, the depth of the riches and the wisdom and the knowledge of God (ULT)

Here, **wisdom** and **knowledge** mean basically the same thing.
Alternate translation: "How amazing are the many benefits of both God's wisdom and knowledge!" (See: [Doublet](#))

ULT

³³ Oh, the depth of the riches and [the wisdom](#) and [the knowledge of God](#)!
How unsearchable {are} his [judgments](#),
and his ways beyond discovering!

How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering

"We are completely unable to understand the things that he has decided and find out the ways in which he acts toward us"

Translation Words - ULT

- [the wisdom](#)
- [the knowledge](#)
- [of God](#)
- [judgments](#)

Romans 11:34

For who has known the mind of the Lord or who has become his advisor (ULT)

Paul uses this question to emphasize that no one is as wise as the Lord. You can translate this as a statement. Alternate translation:

“No one has ever known the mind of the Lord, and no one has become his advisor.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

³⁴ “For who [has known the mind of the Lord](#) or who has become his [advisor](#)?”

the mind of the Lord (ULT)

Here, **mind** is a metonym for knowing things or thinking about things. Alternate translation: “all that the Lord knows” or “what the Lord thinks about” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [has known](#)
- [the mind](#)
- [of the Lord](#)
- [advisor](#)

Romans 11:35

Or who has first given anything to him, that he will be repaid by him (ULT)

Paul uses this question to emphasize his point. Alternate translation: “No one has ever given anything to God that he did not first receive from God” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

³⁵ Or who has first given anything to him, that he will be repaid by him?”

Romans 11:36

For from him ... through him ... to him

Here, all occurrences of **him** refer to God. (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

To him {be} the glory to the ages (ULT)

This expresses Paul's desire for all people to honor God. You can make this explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: "May all people honor him forever" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [glory](#)
- [the ages](#)
- [Amen](#)

ULT

³⁶ For from him and through him and to him {are} all things. To him {be} the [glory](#) to the ages. [Amen](#).

11:6 ^[1]

Romans 12

Romans 12 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the words of verse 20, which are from the Old Testament.

Many scholars believe Paul uses the word **therefore** in Romans 12:1 to refer back to all of Chapters 1-11. Having carefully explained the Christian gospel, Paul now explains how Christians should live in light of these great truths. Chapters 12-16 focus on living out one's Christian faith. Paul uses many different commands in these chapters to give these practical instructions. (See: [faith](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Christian living

Under the law of Moses, people were required to offer temple sacrifices of animals or grain. Now Christians are required to live their lives as a type of sacrifice to God. Physical sacrifices are no longer required. (See: [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [law of God](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Body of Christ

The body of Christ is an important metaphor or image used in Scripture to refer to the church. Each church member plays a unique and important function. Christians need each other. (See: [body](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Romans 12:1

Connecting Statement:

Paul tells what the life of a believer should be and how believers should serve.

I urge you therefore, brothers, by the mercies of God (ULT)

Here, **brothers** refers to fellow believers, both male and female. Alternate translation: "Fellow believers, because of the great mercy that God has given you I very much want you" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

to present your bodies a living sacrifice (ULT)

Here Paul uses the word **bodies** to refer to the whole person. Alternate translation: "to offer yourselves completely to God as a living sacrifice" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

to present your bodies a living sacrifice (ULT)

Paul is comparing a believer in Christ who completely obeys God to the animals that the Jews killed and then offered to God. Alternate translation: "to offer yourselves completely to God while you are alive as if you were a dead sacrifice on a temple altar" (See: [Metaphor](#))

holy, acceptable to God (ULT)

This could refer to: (1) a sacrifice that you give to God alone and that pleases him. (2) a sacrifice that is **acceptable** to God because it is morally pure. (See: [Doublet](#))

your...which...reasonable service (ULT)

"which is the right way to worship God"

Translation Words - ULT

- I urge
- brothers
- mercies
- of God
- to God
- bodies
- living
- a...sacrifice
- holy
- service

ULT

¹ I urge you therefore, **brothers**, by the **mercies of God**, to present your **bodies** a **living sacrifice**, **holy**, acceptable to **God**, which {is} your reasonable **service**.

Romans 12:2

do not be conformed to this age (ULT)

This could mean: (1) do not behave as the world behaves. (2) do not think the way the world does. (See: [Metaphor](#))

do not be conformed to this age (ULT)

You can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “do not act and think like the world does” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

to this age (ULT)

Here, **this world** refers to unbelievers who live in the world. (See: [Metonymy](#))

but be transformed by the renewal of the mind (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “but let God change the way you think” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- to...age
- of...mind
- good
- perfect
- will of God
- of God

ULT

² And do not be conformed to this [age](#), but be transformed by the renewal of the [mind](#), for you to prove what {is} the [good](#) and acceptable and [perfect will of God](#).

Romans 12:3

through the grace that has been given to me (ULT)

Here, **grace** refers to God's choosing Paul to be an apostle and leader of the church. You can make this explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: "through the grace that caused me to become an apostle" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

through the grace that has been given to me (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "because God freely chose me to be an apostle" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

to everyone who is among you to not think more highly of himself than what he ought to think (ULT)

"that no one among you should think they are better than they are"

to think, but...with sound mind (ULT)

"but you should be wise in how you think about yourselves"

as God has distributed to each one a measure of faith (ULT)

Paul implies here that believers have different abilities that correspond to their **faith** in God. Alternate translation: "since God has given each of you the faith to trust in him" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [grace](#)
- [to think](#)
- [to think](#) (2)
- [as](#)
- [God](#)
- [of faith](#)

ULT

³ For I say, through the [grace](#) that has been given to me, to everyone who is among you to not think more highly of himself than what he ought [to think](#), but [to think](#) with sound mind, [as God](#) has distributed to each one a measure [of faith](#).

Romans 12:4

For (ULT)

Paul the word **For** to show that he will now explain why some Christians should not think they are better than others.

we have many members in one body (ULT)

Paul refers to all the believers in Christ as if they were different parts of the human **body**. He does this to illustrate that although believers may serve Christ in different ways, each person belongs to Christ and serves in an important way. (See: [Metaphor](#))

members (ULT)

Here, **members** are such things as eyes, stomachs, and hands.

Translation Words - ULT

- [members](#)
- [members \(2\)](#)
- [body](#)

ULT

⁴ For just as we have many [members](#) in one [body](#), but not all the [members](#) have the same function,

Romans 12:5

are individually members of each other

Paul speaks of the believers as if God had physically joined them together like the parts of the human body. (See: [Metaphor](#))

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "God has joined each believer together with all other believers" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [body](#)
- [in Christ](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [members](#)

ULT

⁵ in the same way, the many are one [body in Christ](#) and individually [members](#) of each other.

Romans 12:6

But we have different gifts according to the grace that has been given to us (ULT)

Paul speaks of believers' different abilities as being free gifts from God. (See: [Metaphor](#))

But we have different gifts according to the grace that has been given to us (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "God has freely given each of us the ability to do different things for him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

according to the...proportion of {his} faith (ULT)

This could mean: (1) he should speak prophecies that do not go beyond the amount of faith God has given us. (2) he should speak prophecies that agree with the teachings of our faith.

Translation Words - ULT

- [gifts](#)
- [grace](#)
- [prophecy](#)
- [of...faith](#)

ULT

⁶ But we have different [gifts](#) according to the [grace](#) that has been given to us: if [prophecy](#), according to the proportion of {his} [faith](#);

Romans 12:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- service
- serving
- teaching
- teaching

ULT

⁷ if [service](#), in [serving](#); if the one [teaching](#), in [teaching](#);

Romans 12:8

the one giving (ULT)

Here, **giving** refers to giving money and other things to people. You can make this meaning explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: “if one has the gift of giving money or other goods to people in need” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [encouraging](#)
- [encouragement](#)
- [leading](#)
- [showing mercy](#)

ULT

⁸ if the one [encouraging](#), in [encouragement](#); the one giving, in generosity; the one [leading](#), with care; the one [showing mercy](#), with cheerfulness.

Romans 12:9

Let love be without hypocrisy (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "You must love people sincerely and truly" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

love (ULT)

The word Paul uses here refers to the kind of love that comes from God and focuses on the good of others, even when it does not benefit oneself.

Translation Words - ULT

- [love](#)
- [evil](#)
- [good](#)

ULT

⁹ Let [love](#) be without hypocrisy, abhorring the [evil](#), holding on to the [good](#);

Romans 12:10

in love of the brothers (ULT)

This is another word that means brotherly **love** or love for a friend or family member. This is natural human love between friends or relatives.

ULT

10 in love of the brothers, affectionate to one another; in honor, preferring one another;

in love of the brothers...affectionate (ULT)

Here Paul begins a list of nine items, each of the form **in ... be** to tell the believers what kind of people they should be. You may need to translate some of the items as "in ... do." The list continues to [Romans 12:13](#).

in love of the brothers (ULT)

"as for how you love your fellow believers"

in love of the brothers...one another...in honor...preferring (ULT)

"honor and respect one another" or "honor your fellow believers by respecting them"

Translation Words - ULT

- in love of the brothers
- in honor

Romans 12:11

**Concerning diligence, do not be hesitant.
Concerning the spirit, be eager. Concerning
the Lord, serve him**

“do not be lazy in your duty, but be eager to follow the Spirit and to serve the Lord”

Translation Words - ULT

- in spirit
- in...Lord
- serving him

ULT

¹¹ in diligence, not hesitant; in spirit, being eager; in the Lord, serving him;

Romans 12:12

in hope...in suffering...being patient (ULT)

“wait patiently whenever you have troubles”

Translation Words - ULT

- in hope
- rejoicing
- in suffering
- being patient
- in prayer

ULT

¹² in hope, rejoicing; in suffering, being patient; in prayer, being faithful;

Romans 12:13

in the needs of the saints, sharing (ULT)

“when fellow Christians are in trouble, help them with what they need”

pursuing hospitality (ULT)

This is the last item in the list that began in [Romans 12:9](#). “always welcome them into your home when they need a place to stay”

Translation Words - ULT

- [saints](#)

ULT

¹³ in the needs of the [saints](#), sharing; pursuing hospitality.

Romans 12:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Bless
- bless (2)
- who persecute you
- do...curse

ULT

¹⁴ Bless those who persecute you; bless and do not curse;

Romans 12:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- to rejoice
- those who rejoice
- to weep
- those who weep

ULT

¹⁵ to rejoice with those who rejoice; to weep with those who weep;

Romans 12:16

of the same mind toward one another (ULT)

This is an idiom that means to live in unity. Alternate translation: “agreeing with one another” or “living in unity with each other” (See: [Idiom](#))

of...mind...not...in proud ways (ULT)

“do not think that you are more important than others”

accepting lowly people (ULT)

“welcome people who do not seem important”

not...Do...be wise in yourselves (ULT)

“Do not think of yourselves as having more wisdom than everyone else”

Translation Words - ULT

- [of...mind](#)
- [thinking](#) (2)
- [thinking...in proud ways](#)
- [lowly people](#)
- [wise](#)

ULT

16 of the same [mind](#) toward one another, not [thinking in proud ways](#), but accepting [lowly people](#). Do not be [wise](#) in yourselves;

Romans 12:17

repaying no one evil for evil (ULT)

“do not do evil things to someone who has done evil things to you”

practicing good things in the sight of all men (ULT)

“do things that everyone considers to be good”

Translation Words - ULT

- evil
- evil
- good things

ULT

17 repaying no one evil for evil;
practicing good things in the sight of all men;

Romans 12:18

what {is} from you, living at peace with all men (ULT)

“do whatever you can to live in peace with everyone”

Translation Words - ULT

- living at peace

ULT

¹⁸ if possible, what {is} from you, living at peace with all men;

Romans 12:19

give way to the wrath (ULT)

Here, **wrath** is a metonym for God's punishment. Alternate translation: "allow God to punish them" (See: [Metonymy](#))

for it is written (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "for someone has written" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Vengeance {is} to me; I will repay (ULT)

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize that God will avenge his people. Alternate translation: "I will certainly avenge you" (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [avenging](#)
- [Vengeance](#)
- [beloved](#)
- [to...wrath](#)
- [it is written](#)
- [the Lord](#)

ULT

¹⁹ not [avenging](#) yourselves, [beloved](#), but give way to the [wrath](#), for [it is written](#), "'Vengeance {is} to me; I will repay,' says [the Lord](#)."

Romans 12:20

your enemy...you will heap (ULT)

The pronouns **your** and **you** are singular and addressed as to one person. (See: [Forms of You](#))

But if your enemy is hungry ... his head

In 12:20 Paul quotes another part of scripture. Alternate translation: "But the scripture also says, 'If your enemy is hungry, feed him. If he is thirsty, give him a drink. For doing this, you will heap coals of fire on his his head'"

you will heap coals of fire on his head (ULT)

Paul speaks of the blessings that the enemies will receive as if someone were pouring hot **coals** on their heads. This could mean: (1) you will make the person who harmed you feel badly about how he has mistreated you. (2) you will give God a reason to judge your enemy more harshly. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [enemy](#)
- [of fire](#)
- [head](#)

ULT

²⁰ "But if your [enemy](#) is hungry, feed him. If he is thirsty, give him a drink. For doing this, you will heap coals [of fire](#) on his [head](#)."

Romans 12:21

Do not be overcome by evil, but overcome evil with good (ULT)

Paul describes **evil** as though it were a person. (See: [Personification](#))

ULT

²¹ Do not be overcome by **evil**, but overcome **evil** with **good**.

Do not be overcome by evil (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "Do not let those who are evil defeat you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Do not be overcome by evil, but overcome...evil (ULT)

These verbs are addressed as to one person and so are singular.

Translation Words - ULT

- [evil](#)
- [evil](#)
- [good](#)

Romans 13

Romans 13 General Notes

Structure and formatting

In the first part of this chapter, Paul teaches Christians to obey rulers who govern them. At that time, ungodly Roman rulers governed the land. (See: [godly](#), [godliness](#), [ungodly](#), [godless](#), [ungodliness](#), [godlessness](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Ungodly rulers

When Paul teaches about obeying rulers, some readers will find this difficult to understand, especially in places where rulers persecute the church. Christians must obey their rulers as well as obey God, unless the rulers do not allow Christians to do something God explicitly commands them to do. There are times when a believer must submit to these rulers and suffer at their hands. Christians understand that this world is temporary and they will ultimately be with God forever. (See: [eternity](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [forever](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Flesh

This is a complex issue. “Flesh” is possibly a metaphor for our sinful nature. Paul is not teaching that our physical bodies are sinful. Paul appears to be teaching that as long as Christians are alive (“in the flesh”), we will continue to sin. But our new nature will be fighting against our old nature. (See: [flesh](#) and [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Romans 13:1

Connecting Statement:

Paul tells believers how to live under their rulers.

every soul...Let...be (ULT)

Here, **soul** is a synecdoche for the whole person. "Let every Christian obey" or "Everyone should obey" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

subject to governing authorities (ULT)

"submit to government officials"

no...there is...authority except from God (ULT)

This is a double negative. You can translate it in a positive form. Alternate translation: "all authority comes from God" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

and the ones that exist are appointed by God (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "And the people who are in authority are there because God put them there" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [soul](#)
- [Let...be](#)
- [to governing authorities](#)
- [authority](#)
- [God](#)
- [God \(2\)](#)
- [appointed](#)

ULT

¹ Let every [soul be](#) subject to [governing authorities](#), for there is no [authority](#) except from [God](#), and the ones that exist are [appointed by God](#).

Romans 13:2

that authority (ULT)

“that government authority” or “the authority that God placed in power”

the ones...who oppose it will bring judgment on themselves (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “God will judge those who oppose government authority” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

² Therefore, the one [who resists](#) that [authority](#) opposes the [command of God](#), and the ones who oppose it will bring [judgment](#) on themselves.

Translation Words - ULT

- [who resists](#)
- [authority](#)
- [command](#)
- [of God](#)
- [judgment](#)

Romans 13:3

For (ULT)

Paul uses this word to begin his explanation of [Romans 13:2](#) and to tell about what will result if the government condemns a person.

rulers...rulers...are not a terror (ULT)

Rulers do not make good people afraid.

to good deeds...to good...to evil deeds (ULT)

People are identified with their **good deeds** or **evil deeds**.

Now do you desire not to be afraid of authority (ULT)

Paul uses this question to get people to think about what they need to do in order not to be afraid of rulers. Alternate translation: "Let me tell you how you can be unafraid of the ruler." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

you will receive approval from it (ULT)

The government will say good things about people who do what is good.

Translation Words - ULT

- [rulers](#)
- [a terror](#)
- [to good](#)
- [good](#)
- [deeds](#)
- [to evil deeds](#)
- [to be afraid](#)
- [of authority](#)
- [approval](#)

ULT

³ For [rulers](#) are not a terror to [good deeds](#), but to [evil deeds](#). Now do you desire not to be afraid of authority? Do [good](#), and you will receive [approval](#) from it,

Romans 13:4

not...he does...carry the sword in vain (ULT)

You can translate this in a positive form. Alternate translation: “he carries the sword for a very good reason” or “he has the power to punish people, and he will punish people” (See: [Litotes](#))

he does...carry the sword (ULT)

Roman governors carried a short **sword** as a symbol of their authority. (See: [Metonymy](#))

an avenger for wrath (ULT)

Here, **wrath** represents the punishment people receive when they do evil deeds. Alternate translation: “a person who punishes people as an expression of the government’s anger against evil” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [a servant](#)
- [a servant](#) (2)
- [of God](#)
- [of God](#) (2)
- [wrath](#)
- [good](#)
- [evil](#)
- [evil](#) (2)
- [be afraid](#)
- [sword](#)
- [in vain](#)
- [an avenger](#)

ULT

⁴ for he is [a servant of God](#) to you for [good](#). But if you do [evil](#), [be afraid](#); for he does not carry the [sword in vain](#), for he is [a servant of God](#), [an avenger](#) for [wrath](#) on the one who does [evil](#).

Romans 13:5

not only because of the wrath, but also because of conscience

“not only so the government will not punish you, but also so you will have a clear conscience before God”

Translation Words - ULT

- you...obey
- wrath
- conscience

ULT

⁵ Therefore, you must obey, not only because of the wrath, but also because of conscience.

Romans 13:6

because of this (ULT)

“because the government punishes evildoers”

you pay (ULT)

Paul is addressing the believers here, so this verb is plural.

For they are

“This is why you should pay taxes: authorities are”

Translation Words - ULT

- taxes
- servants
- of God

ULT

⁶ For because of this you pay taxes also; for they are servants of God, attending continually to this very thing.

Romans 13:7

Pay back to everyone (ULT)

Paul is addressing the believers here, so this verb is plural.

tax to whom tax, toll to whom toll, fear to whom fear, honor to whom honor (ULT)

The word “pay” is understood from the previous sentence. Alternate translation: “pay tax to whom tax is due and toll to whom toll is due. Pay fear to whom fear is due and honor to him to whom honor is due” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

fear to whom fear, honor to whom honor (ULT)

Here paying **fear** and **honor** is a metaphor for fearing and honoring those who deserve to be feared and honored. Alternate translation: “Fear those who deserve to be feared, and honor those who deserved to be honored” or “Respect those whom you ought to respect, and honor those whom you ought to honor” (See: [Metaphor](#))

toll (ULT)

This is a kind of tax.

Translation Words - ULT

- [tax](#)
- [tax \(2\)](#)
- [fear](#)
- [fear \(2\)](#)
- [honor](#)
- [honor](#)

ULT

⁷ Pay back to everyone what {is} owed to them: [tax](#) to whom [tax](#), toll to whom toll, [fear](#) to whom [fear](#), [honor](#) to whom [honor](#).

Romans 13:8

Connecting Statement:

Paul tells believers how to act toward neighbors.

Owe no one anything, except to love one another (ULT)

This is a double negative. You can translate it in a positive form. Alternate translation: "Pay all you owe to everyone, and fulfill your obligation to love one another" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

except to love one another (ULT)

This is the one debt that can remain.

Owe (ULT)

This verb is plural and applies to all the Christians in Rome.

to love (ULT)

This refers to the kind of **love** that comes from God and focuses on the good of others, even when it does not benefit oneself.

Translation Words - ULT

- to love
- who loves
- has fulfilled
- the law

ULT

⁸ Owe no one anything, except to love one another, for the one who loves {his} neighbor has fulfilled the law.

Romans 13:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Do...commit adultery
- do...covet
- commandment
- Love
- neighbor
- as

ULT

⁹ For this: “Do not **commit adultery**, do not kill, do not steal, do not **covet**,” and if any other **commandment**, it is summed up in this command: “**Love** your **neighbor as** yourself.”

Romans 13:10

Love does not cause harm to a neighbor (ULT)

This phrase portrays love as a person who is being kind to other people. Alternate translation: "People who love their neighbors do not harm them" (See: [Personification](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Love](#)
- [love \(2\)](#)
- [does...cause](#)
- [harm](#)
- [to a neighbor](#)
- [the fulfillment](#)
- [of the law](#)

ULT

¹⁰ Love does not [cause harm to a neighbor](#); therefore, [love {is} the fulfillment of the law](#).

Romans 13:11

knowing the time, that {it is} already the season for us to awake from sleep (ULT)

Paul speaks of the need for the Roman believers to change their behavior as if they needed to wake up from being asleep. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [knowing](#)
- [time](#)
- [already the season](#)
- [the season](#)
- [to awake](#)
- [sleep](#)
- [salvation](#)
- [we believed](#)

ULT

¹¹ And this, [knowing](#) the [time](#), that {it is} [already the season](#) for us [to awake](#) from [sleep](#). For now our [salvation](#) {is} nearer than when [we believed](#).

Romans 13:12

The night has advanced (ULT)

Paul speaks of the time when people do evil deeds as **night**. Alternate translation: "The sinful time is almost over" or "It is as though the night is almost finished" (See: [Metaphor](#))

the...day has come near (ULT)

Paul speaks of the time when people do what is right as the **day**. Alternate translation: "the time of righteousness will begin soon" or "it is as though it will soon be day" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Let us therefore put aside the works of darkness (ULT)

Paul speaks of **works of darkness** as if they are clothing that a person puts aside. Here to **put aside** means to stop doing something. Here, **darkness** is a metaphor for evil. Alternate translation: "Let us therefore stop doing the evil things that people do in the dark" (See: [Metaphor](#))

let us put on...the armor of light (ULT)

Here, **light** is a metaphor for what is good and right. Paul speaks of doing what is right as if it were putting on armor to protect one's self. Alternate translation: "let us start doing what is right. Doing this will protect us from what is evil like armor protects a soldier" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [day](#)
- [works](#)
- [of darkness](#)
- [let us put on](#)
- [armor](#)
- [of light](#)

ULT

¹² The night has advanced, and the [day](#) has come near. Let us therefore put aside the [works of darkness](#), and [let us put on](#) the [armor of light](#).

Romans 13:13

Let us walk (ULT)

Paul includes his readers and other believers with himself. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

Let us walk decently, as in the day (ULT)

Paul speaks of living as true believers as if one were walking while it is **day**. Alternate translation: "Let us walk in a visible way knowing that everyone can see us" (See: [Metaphor](#))

in sexual immorality and uncontrolled lust (ULT)

These concepts mean basically the same thing. You can combine them in your translation. Alternate translation: "in sexually immoral acts" (See: [Doublet](#))

in strife (ULT)

This refers to plotting against and arguing with other people.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Let us walk](#)
- [as](#)
- [the day](#)
- [drunkenness](#)
- [in sexual immorality](#)
- [in strife](#)
- [jealousy](#)

ULT

13 [Let us walk](#) decently, [as](#) in [the day](#), not in drunken celebrations or [drunkenness](#); let us not walk [in sexual immorality](#) and uncontrolled lust, not [in strife](#) and [jealousy](#).

Romans 13:14

put on the Lord Jesus Christ (ULT)

Paul speaks of accepting the moral nature of Christ as if he were our outer clothing that people can see. (See: [Metaphor](#))

put on (ULT)

If your language has a plural form for commands, use it here.

make no provision for the flesh (ULT)

Here the **flesh** refers to the self-directed nature of people who oppose God. This is the sinful nature of human beings. Alternate translation: “do not allow your old evil heart any opportunity at all for doing wicked things” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [put on](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [lusts](#)

ULT

14 But [put on](#) the [Lord Jesus Christ](#), and make no provision for the [flesh](#), for [lusts](#).

Romans 14

Romans 14 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with verse 11 of this chapter, which Paul quotes from the Old Testament.

Special concepts in this chapter

Weak in faith

Paul teaches that Christians can have real faith and at the same time be “weak in faith” in a given situation. This describes Christians whose faith is immature, not strong, or misunderstood. (See: [faith](#))

Dietary restrictions

Many religions in the ancient Near East restricted what was eaten. Christians have freedom to eat what they want. But they need to use this freedom wisely, in a way that honors the Lord and does not cause others to sin. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

The judgment seat of God

The judgment seat of God or Christ represents a time when all people, including Christians, will be held accountable for the way they lived their lives.

Romans 14:1

Connecting Statement:

Paul encourages believers to remember that they are answerable to God.

who is weak in faith (ULT)

This refers to those who felt guilty over eating and drinking certain things.

not for passing judgment on opinions (ULT)

“and do not condemn them for their opinions”

Translation Words - ULT

- receive
- in faith
- passing judgment

ULT

¹ But receive the one who is weak in faith, not for passing judgment on opinions.

Romans 14:2

One person believes to eat anything (ULT)

Some people believe God permits them to eat any kind of food.

the one...who is weak eats only vegetables (ULT)

This describes a person who believes God does not want him to eat meat.

Translation Words - ULT

- believes

ULT

² One person believes to eat anything, but the one who is weak eats only vegetables.

Romans 14:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- let...judge
- God
- has accepted

ULT

³ Let the one who eats not despise the one who does not eat, and let the one who does not eat not judge the one who eats. For God has accepted him.

Romans 14:4

Who are you who judges a servant belonging to another (ULT)

Paul is using a question to scold those who are judging others. You can translate this as a statement. Alternate translation: “You are not God, and you are not allowed to judge one of his servants!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

⁴ Who are you [who judges a servant belonging to another](#)? To his own [master](#) he stands or falls. But he will be made to stand, for the [Lord](#) is able to make him stand.

you...who judges (ULT)

The form of **you** here is singular. (See: [Forms of You](#))

To his own master he stands or falls (ULT)

Paul speaks of God as if he were a **master** who owned slaves. Alternate translation: “Only the master can decide if he will accept the slave or not” (See: [Metaphor](#))

But he will be made to stand, for the Lord is able to make him stand (ULT)

Paul speaks of the servant who is acceptable to God as if he were being **made to stand** instead of falling. (See: [Metaphor](#))

But he will be made to stand, for the Lord is able to make him stand (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “But the Lord will accept him because he is able to make the servant acceptable” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [who judges](#)
- [a servant](#)
- [To...master](#)
- [Lord](#)

Romans 14:5

One person values one day above another. Another values every day equally

“One person thinks one day is more important than all the others, but another person thinks that all days are the same”

ULT

⁵ One person [judges day](#) from [day](#), but another person [judges every day](#). Let each one be convinced in his own [mind](#).

Let each one be convinced in his own mind (ULT)

You can make the full meaning explicit. Alternate translation: “Let each person be convinced that he is honoring the Lord by what he does” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Let each one be convinced in his own mind (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “Let each person be sure what he is doing is to honor the Lord” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [judges](#)
- [judges \(2\)](#)
- [day](#)
- [day \(2\)](#)
- [day \(3\)](#)
- [mind](#)

Romans 14:6

The one who observes the day, observes it for the Lord (ULT)

Here, **observes** refers to worshiping. Alternate translation: “The person who worships on a certain day does it to honor the Lord” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the one who eats (ULT)

The word “everything” is understood from [Romans 14:3](#). It can be repeated here. Alternate translation: “the person who eats every kind of food” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

for the Lord...eats (ULT)

“eats to honor the Lord” or “eats that way in order to honor the Lord”

and the one who does not eat (ULT)

The word “everything” is understood from [Romans 14:3](#). It can be repeated here. Alternate translation: “and he who does not eat everything” or “and the person who does not eat certain kinds of food” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [day](#)
- [for the Lord](#)
- [for the Lord](#) (2)
- [for the Lord](#) (3)
- [to God](#)
- [to God](#) (2)

ULT

⁶ The one who observes the [day](#), observes it [for the Lord](#); and the one who eats, eats [for the Lord](#), for he gives thanks [to God](#), and the one who does not eat, does not eat [for the Lord](#); he also gives thanks [to God](#).

Romans 14:7

For none of us lives for himself (ULT)

Here, **lives for himself** means to live only to please oneself. Alternate translation: "None of us should live merely to please ourselves" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

⁷ For none of us **lives** for himself, and none **dies** for himself.

none...of us (ULT)

Paul is including his readers, so this is inclusive. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

none dies for himself (ULT)

This means anyone's death affects other people. Alternate translation: "none of us should think that when we die, it affects only us" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [lives](#)
- [dies](#)

Romans 14:8

General Information:

Paul is speaking of both himself and his readers, so all instances of “we” are inclusive. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [we live](#)
- [we live \(2\)](#)
- [we live \(3\)](#)
- [for...Lord](#)
- [for...Lord \(2\)](#)
- [of...Lord](#)
- [we die](#)
- [we die](#)
- [die, we \(2\)](#)

ULT

⁸ For if [we live](#), [we live](#) for the [Lord](#), and if [we die](#), [we die](#) for the [Lord](#). Therefore, whether [we live](#) or whether we [die](#), [we](#) are of the [Lord](#).

Romans 14:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Christ
- died
- of...the dead
- lived again
- of the living
- he might be Lord

ULT

⁹ For to this purpose Christ died and lived again, that he might be Lord of both the dead and of the living.

Romans 14:10

why do you judge your brother? And you also, why do you despise your brother (ULT)

By using these questions, Paul is demonstrating how he might need to scold individuals among his readers. Alternate translation: “it is wrong for you to judge your brother, and it is wrong for you to despise your brother!” or “stop judging and despising your brother!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

¹⁰ But you, why [do you judge](#) your [brother](#)? And you also, why do you despise your [brother](#)? For we will all stand before the judgment seat [of God](#).

brother (ULT)

Here, **brother** means a fellow Christian, male or female.

For we will all stand before the judgment seat of God (ULT)

The **judgment seat** refers to God’s authority to judge. Alternate translation: “For God will judge us all” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [do you judge](#)
- [brother](#)
- [brother \(2\)](#)
- [of God](#)

Romans 14:11

For it is written (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "For someone has written in the scriptures:" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

As I live (ULT)

This phrase is used to start an oath or solemn promise. Alternate translation: "You can be certain that this is true" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

to me every knee will bend, and every tongue will confess to God (ULT)

Paul uses the word **God** and **tongue** to refer to the whole person. Alternate translation: "every person will bow and give praise to God" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

to me every knee will bend, and every tongue will confess to God (ULT)

The Lord uses the word **God** to refer to himself. Alternate translation: "every person will bow and give praise to me" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [it is written](#)
- [live](#)
- [the Lord](#)
- [will bend](#)
- [tongue](#)
- [will confess](#)
- [to God](#)

ULT

11 For [it is written](#), "As I [live](#)," says [the Lord](#), "to me every knee [will bend](#), and every [tongue will confess to God](#)."

Romans 14:12

will give an account concerning himself to God (ULT)

“will have to explain our actions to God”

Translation Words - ULT

- to God

ULT

¹² So then, each one of us will give an account concerning himself to God.

Romans 14:13

but instead judge this: that no one will place a stumbling block or a snare for {his} brother (ULT)

Here, **stumbling block** and **snare** mean basically the same thing. Alternate translation: “but instead make it your goal not to do or say anything that might cause a fellow believer to sin” (See: [Doublet](#))

for {his} brother (ULT)

Here **brother** refers to a fellow Christian, male or female.

Translation Words - ULT

- [let us...judge](#)
- [judge](#)
- [a stumbling block](#)
- [a snare](#)
- [for...brother](#)

ULT

¹³ Therefore, [let us](#) no longer [judge](#) one another, but instead [judge](#) this: that no one will place [a stumbling block](#) or [a snare](#) for {his} [brother](#).

Romans 14:14

I know and am persuaded in the Lord Jesus (ULT)

Here the words **know** and **am persuaded** mean basically the same thing; Paul uses them to emphasize his certainty. Alternate translation: "I am certain because of my relationship with the Lord Jesus" (See: [Doublet](#))

ULT

¹⁴ I know and am persuaded in the Lord Jesus, that nothing {is} unclean by itself, except to the one who considers anything to be unclean, for him {it is} unclean.

nothing {is} unclean by itself (ULT)

You can translate this in a positive form. Alternate translation: "everything by itself is clean" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

by itself (ULT)

"by its nature" or "because of what it is"

except to the one who considers anything to be unclean, for him {it is} unclean (ULT)

Paul implies here that a person should stay away from anything that he thinks is unclean. You can make this explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: "but if a person thinks something is unclean, then for that person it is unclean and he should stay away from it" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- I know
- am persuaded
- in the Lord Jesus
- the Lord
- Jesus

Romans 14:15

if...for the sake of food your brother is hurt (ULT)

“If you hurt your fellow believer’s faith over the matter of food.” Here the word **your** refers to those who are strong in faith and **brother** refers to those who are weak in faith.

brother (ULT)

Here **brother** refers to a fellow Christian, male or female.

you are no longer walking according to love (ULT)

Paul speaks of the behavior of believers as if it were a walk. Alternate translation: “then you are no longer showing love” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [you are...walking](#)
- [love](#)
- [Do...destroy](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [died](#)

ULT

¹⁵ For if for the sake of food your [brother](#) is hurt, [you are](#) no longer [walking](#) according to [love](#). Do not [destroy](#) with your food that one for whom [Christ died](#).

Romans 14:16

So do not allow your good to be spoken of as evil (ULT)

“If someone else thinks that something is evil, do not do it, even if you consider it to be good”

Translation Words - ULT

- do...allow...to be spoken of as evil
- good

ULT

¹⁶ So do not allow your good to be spoken of as evil.

Romans 14:17

For the kingdom of God is not food and drink, but righteousness and peace and joy in the Holy Spirit (ULT)

Paul argues that God set up his **kingdom** so he could give us a right relationship with himself, and to provide peace and joy. Alternate translation: "For God did not set up his kingdom so that he could rule over what we eat and drink. He set up his kingdom so we could have a right relationship with him, and so he could give us peace and joy" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

¹⁷ For the [kingdom of God](#) is not food and drink, but [righteousness](#) and [peace](#) and [joy in the Holy Spirit](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [kingdom of God](#)
- [righteousness](#)
- [peace](#)
- [joy](#)
- [the Holy Spirit](#)

Romans 14:18

approved by men (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "people will approve of him" or "people will respect him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [who serves](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [to God](#)

ULT

18 For the one [who serves Christ](#) in this way {is} acceptable [to God](#) and approved by men.

Romans 14:19

let us pursue the things of peace and the things that build up one another (ULT)

Here, **build up one another** refers to helping each other grow in faith. Alternate translation: "let us seek to live peacefully together and help one another grow stronger in faith" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of peace

ULT

¹⁹ So then, let us pursue the things of peace and the things that build up one another.

Romans 14:20

Do not destroy the work of God on account of food (ULT)

You can make explicit the full meaning of this sentence. Alternate translation: “Do not undo what God has done for a fellow believer just because you want to eat a certain kind of food” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

²⁰ Do not destroy the [work of God](#) on account of food. All things {are} indeed [clean](#), but {it is} [evil](#) for the man who eats through [a stumbling block](#).

but {it is} evil for the man who eats through a stumbling block (ULT)

Here a **stumbling block** is a food that a weaker brother eats despite thinking it is wrong, and thereby goes against his conscience. Alternate translation: “but it would be a sin for someone to eat food, which another brother thinks is wrong to eat, if by eating this causes the weaker brother to do something that is against his conscience” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [work](#)
- [of God](#)
- [clean](#)
- [evil](#)
- [a stumbling block](#)

Romans 14:21

It is good not to eat meat, nor to drink wine, nor anything by which your brother takes offense

“It is better not to eat meat or drink wine or do anything else that might cause your brother to sin”

ULT

²¹ {It is} **good** not to eat meat, nor to drink **wine**—nothing by which your **brother stumbles** or is caused to stumble or becomes weak.

brother (ULT)

Here **brother** refers to a fellow Christian, male or female.

your (ULT)

Here, **you** is singular and stresses the responsibility of each individual believer for his fellow believer. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [good](#)
- [wine](#)
- [brother](#)
- [stumbles](#)

Romans 14:22

The faith that you have (ULT)

Here, **faith** refers back to the beliefs about food and drink.

you...yourself (ULT)

Here, **you** and **yourself** are singular. Because Paul is addressing the believers, you may have to translate this using plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Blessed {is} the one who does not condemn himself by what he approves (ULT)

“Blessed are those who do not feel guilty for what they decide to do”

Translation Words - ULT

- [The faith](#)
- [God](#)
- [Blessed](#)
- [who does...condemn](#)

ULT

²² [The faith](#) that you have, keep to yourself before [God](#). [Blessed](#) {is} the one [who does](#) not [condemn](#) himself by what he approves.

Romans 14:23

But the one who doubts is condemned if he eats (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “God will say that the person does wrong if he is not sure if it is right to eat a certain food, but he eats it anyway” or “The person who is not sure if it is right to eat a certain food, but then eats it anyway will have a troubled conscience” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

²³ But the one who doubts **is condemned** if he eats, because {it is} not from **faith**. And everything that {is} not from **faith** is **sin**.

because {it is} not from faith (ULT)

Anything that is **not from faith** is something that God does not want you to do. You can make explicit the full meaning here. Alternate translation: “God will say that he is wrong because he is eating something he believes God does not want him to eat” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

And everything that {is} not from faith is sin (ULT)

Anything that is **not from faith** is something that God does not want you to do. You can make explicit the full meaning here. Alternate translation: “you are sinning if you do something that you do not believe God wants you to do” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [is condemned](#)
- [faith](#)
- [faith \(2\)](#)
- [sin](#)

Romans 15

Romans 15 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with verses 9-11 and 21 of this chapter, which are words from the Old Testament.

Some translations set prose quotations from the Old Testament farther to the right on the page to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the quoted words in verse 12.

In Romans 15:14, Paul begins to speak more personally. He shifts from teaching to telling of his personal plans.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Strong/Weak

These terms are used to refer to people who are mature and immature in their faith. Paul teaches that those who are strong in faith need to help those who are weak in faith. (See: [faith](#))

Romans 15:1

Connecting Statement:

Paul concludes this section about believers' living for others with reminding them how Christ lived.

Now (ULT)

Translate this using the words your language uses to introduce a new idea into an argument.

we who {are} strong (ULT)

Here, **strong** refers to the people who are strong in their faith. They believe that God allows them to eat any kind of food. Alternate translation: "we who are strong in faith" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

we (ULT)

This refers to Paul, his readers, and other believers. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

of the weak (ULT)

Here, **the weak** refers to the people who are weak in their faith. They believe that God does not allow them to eat some kinds of food. Alternate translation: "those who are weak in faith" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [who...strong](#)
- [to bear](#)

ULT

¹ Now we who {are} [strong](#) ought [to bear](#) the weaknesses of the weak, and not to please ourselves.

Romans 15:2

for {his} building up (ULT)

By this, Paul means to strengthen someone's faith. Alternate translation: "to strengthen his faith" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

² Let each of us please {his} [neighbor](#) for {his} [good](#), for {his} building up.

Translation Words - ULT

- [neighbor](#)
- [good](#)

Romans 15:3

just as it is written (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “someone wrote in the scriptures” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

just as it is written (ULT)

Here Paul refers to a scripture where Christ (the Messiah) speaks to God. Alternate translation: “the Messiah said to God in the scriptures” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

The insults of those who insult you fell on me (ULT)

The insults of those who insulted God fell on Christ.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Christ](#)
- [just as](#)
- [it is written](#)
- [insults](#)
- [who insult](#)

ULT

³ For even [Christ](#) did not please himself. Instead, [just as it is written](#), “The [insults](#) of those [who insult](#) you fell on me.”

Romans 15:4

For whatever was previously written was written for our own instruction (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “For in times past, the prophets wrote everything in the Scriptures to teach us” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

our own...we would have (ULT)

Paul includes his readers and other believers. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

in order that through patience and through encouragement of the scriptures we would have hope (ULT)

Here, **have hope** means that the believers will know that God will fulfill his promises. You can make explicit the full meaning in your translation. Alternate translation: “In this way the scriptures will encourage us to expect that God will do for us everything that he has promised” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [was previously written](#)
- [was written](#)
- [instruction](#)
- [patience](#)
- [encouragement](#)
- [of...scriptures](#)
- [hope](#)

ULT

⁴ For whatever [was previously written](#) [was written](#) for our own [instruction](#), in order that through [patience](#) and through [encouragement](#) of the [scriptures](#) we would have [hope](#).

Romans 15:5

Connecting Statement:

Paul encourages the believers to remember that both Gentile believers and Jews that believe are made one in Christ.

God...may...grant (ULT)

"I pray that ... God ... will grant"

to think the same with each other (ULT)

"to be in agreement with each other" or "to be united"

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- of patience
- of encouragement
- to think
- Christ Jesus
- Christ

ULT

⁵ Now may the God of patience and of encouragement grant you to think the same with each other according to Christ Jesus,

Romans 15:6

you might glorify with one mouth (ULT)

This means to be united in praising God. Alternate translation: “praise God together in unity as if only one mouth were speaking” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [you might glorify](#)
- [God and Father](#)
- [of...Lord](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [Christ](#)

ULT

⁶ so that with one mind [you might glorify](#) with one mouth the [God and Father](#) of our [Lord Jesus Christ](#).

Romans 15:7

receive one another (ULT)

“accept one another”

Translation Words - ULT

- receive
- received
- just as
- Christ
- the glory
- of God

ULT

⁷ Therefore, **receive** one another, **just as** Christ also **received** you, to **the glory of** God.

Romans 15:8

For I say that (ULT)

The pronoun I refers to Paul.

Christ has been made a servant of the circumcision (ULT)

Here, **the circumcision** is a metonym that refers to the Jews. Alternate translation: "Jesus Christ has been made a servant of the Jews" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Christ has been made a servant of the circumcision (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "Jesus Christ has become a servant of the Jews" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

to confirm the promises (ULT)

This is one of the two purposes for which Christ became a servant of the circumcision.

the promises of the fathers (ULT)

Here, **the fathers** refers to the ancestors of the Jewish people. Alternate translation: "the promises to the ancestors of the Jews" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the promises of the fathers (ULT)

You can translate this in active form. Alternate translation: "the promises that God gave to the ancestors of the Jews" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Christ](#)
- [a servant](#)
- [of the circumcision](#)
- [the truth](#)
- [of God](#)
- [to confirm](#)
- [promises](#)
- [of...fathers](#)

ULT

⁸ For I say that [Christ](#) has been made [a servant of the circumcision](#) on behalf of [the truth of God](#), [to confirm](#) the [promises](#) of the [fathers](#),

Romans 15:9

and for the Gentiles to glorify God for {his} mercy (ULT)

This is the second reason for which Christ became a servant of the circumcision. Alternate translation: “and in order that the Gentiles might glorify God for his mercy”

just as it is written (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “as someone has written in the scriptures” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

sing praise to your name (ULT)

Here, **your name** is a metonym that refers to God. Alternate translation: “sing praise to you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [for...Gentiles](#)
- [the Gentiles](#)
- [to glorify](#)
- [God](#)
- [mercy](#)
- [just as](#)
- [it is written](#)
- [I will acknowledge](#)
- [to...name](#)

ULT

⁹ and for the [Gentiles to glorify God](#) for {his} [mercy, just as it is written](#), “For this reason, [I will acknowledge](#) you among [the Gentiles](#) and sing praise to your [name.](#)”

Romans 15:10

And again it says (ULT)

“And again the scripture says”

with his people (ULT)

This refers to God’s **people**. You can make this explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: “with the people of God” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

¹⁰ And again it says, “Rejoice, **you Gentiles**, with **his people**.”

Translation Words - ULT

- you Gentiles
- his...people
- people

Romans 15:11

let...praise him (ULT)

"let ... praise the Lord"

Translation Words - ULT

- Praise
- let...praise
- Lord
- you Gentiles
- peoples

ULT

11 And again, "Praise the Lord, all you Gentiles; and let all the peoples praise him."

Romans 15:12

The root of Jesse (ULT)

Jesse was the physical father of King David. Alternate translation: “descendant of Jesse” (See: [Metonymy](#))

in him the Gentiles will hope (ULT)

Here, **him** refers to the descendant of Jesse, the Messiah. Those who are not Jews will also trust him to fulfill his promises. Alternate translation: “the people who are not Jews can trust him to do what he has promised” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

12 And again, [Isaiah](#) says, “The root of [Jesse](#) will come, even the one [who rises to rule over the Gentiles](#); in him the [Gentiles will hope.](#)”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Isaiah](#)
- [of Jesse](#)
- [who rises](#)
- [to rule over](#)
- [the Gentiles](#)
- [the Gentiles](#)
- [will hope](#)

Romans 15:13

may...fill you with all joy and peace (ULT)

Paul exaggerates here to emphasize his point. Alternate translation: "may ... fill you with great joy and peace" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- of hope
- hope
- with...joy
- peace
- in believing
- to abound
- the power
- of the Holy Spirit

ULT

13 Now may the [God of hope](#) fill you with all [joy](#) and [peace in believing](#), for you [to abound](#) in [hope](#), by [the power of the Holy Spirit](#).

Romans 15:14

Connecting Statement:

Paul reminds the believers in Rome that God chose him to reach the Gentiles.

am...convinced...I myself...also...about you, my brothers (ULT)

Paul is quite sure that the believers in Rome are honoring each other in their behavior. Alternate translation: "I myself am completely sure that you yourselves have acted toward others in a completely good way" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

brothers (ULT)

Here **brothers** refers to fellow Christians, including both men and women.

having been filled with all knowledge (ULT)

Paul exaggerates here to emphasize his point. Alternate translation: "having been filled with sufficient knowledge to follow God" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

able to also exhort one another (ULT)

Here, to **exhort** means to teach. Alternate translation: "also able to teach each other" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- am...convinced
- brothers
- of goodness
- with...knowledge
- to...exhort

ULT

14 But I myself am also **convinced** about you, my **brothers**, that also you yourselves are full **of goodness**, having been filled with all **knowledge**, able to also **exhort** one another.

Romans 15:15

the grace having been given me by God (ULT)

Paul speaks of **grace** as if it were a physical gift that **God** had **given** him. God had appointed Paul and apostle even though he had persecuted believers before he decided to follow Jesus. You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “the grace that God gave me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

¹⁵ But I wrote **more boldly** to you about some things **as** reminding you, through the **grace** having been given me by **God**,

Translation Words - ULT

- [more boldly](#)
- [as](#)
- [grace](#)
- [God](#)

Romans 15:16

the offering of the Gentiles might become acceptable (ULT)

Paul speaks of his preaching the gospel as if he, as a priest, were making an **offering** to God. Alternate translation: “the Gentiles might please God when they obey him” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a minister
- of Christ Jesus
- of Christ
- Gentiles
- of...Gentiles
- gospel
- of God
- offering
- having been sanctified
- the Holy Spirit

ULT

¹⁶ for me to be a [minister of Christ](#) Jesus to the [Gentiles](#), offering as a priest the [gospel of God](#), so that the [offering](#) of the [Gentiles](#) might become acceptable, [having been sanctified](#) by the [Holy Spirit](#).

Romans 15:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- in Christ Jesus
- Christ
- Jesus
- reason to boast
- God

ULT

¹⁷ Therefore, in Christ Jesus I have reason to boast of things pertaining to God.

Romans 15:18

For I will not dare to speak anything which Christ has not accomplished through me for the obedience of the Gentiles—by word and deed (ULT)

You can translate this double negative in a positive form. Alternate translation: “For the sake of the obedience of the Gentiles, I will only speak of what Christ has accomplished through me in my words and actions and by the power of signs and wonders through the power of the Holy Spirit” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

ULT

¹⁸ For I will not dare to speak anything which [Christ](#) has not accomplished through me for [the obedience of the Gentiles](#)—by word and [deed](#),

for the obedience of the Gentiles (ULT)

“so that the Gentiles will obey God”

by word and deed (ULT)

Here, **word and deed** refers to what Christ has accomplished through Paul. Alternate translation: “through me in my words and actions” or “the things that Christ has accomplished through what I have said and done” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Christ](#)
- [the obedience](#)
- [of the Gentiles](#)
- [deed](#)

Romans 15:19

of signs and wonders (ULT)

These two words mean basically the same thing and refer to various kinds of miracles. (See: [Doublet](#))

so that...and...from Jerusalem...round about as far as Illyricum (ULT)

This is from the city of **Jerusalem** as far as the province of **Illyricum**, a region close to Italy.

ULT

19 in [the power of signs](#) and [wonders](#), in [the power of the Spirit of God](#)—so that from [Jerusalem](#), and round about as far as Illyricum, I have fully preached the [gospel of Christ](#);

Translation Words - ULT

- [the power](#)
- [the power \(2\)](#)
- [of signs](#)
- [wonders](#)
- [of the Spirit of God](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [gospel](#)
- [of Christ](#)

Romans 15:20

but in this way, strongly desiring to proclaim the gospel, not where Christ has been named (ULT)

Paul only wants to preach to people who have never heard of Christ. Alternate translation: “but because of this, I want to preach the good news in places where people have never heard of Christ” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

²⁰ but in this way, strongly desiring to [proclaim the gospel](#), not where [Christ has been named](#), in order that I might not build upon another man’s [foundation](#).

in order that I might not build upon another man’s foundation (ULT)

Paul speaks of his ministry work as if he were building a house on a **foundation**. Alternate translation: “in order that I might not be simply continuing the work that someone else already started. I do not want to be like a man who builds a house on someone else’s foundation” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [to proclaim the gospel](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [has been named](#)
- [foundation](#)

Romans 15:21

just as it is written (ULT)

Here Paul refers to what Isaiah wrote in the scriptures. You can make the meaning explicit. Alternate translation: “what is happening is like what was written by Isaiah in the scriptures” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

just as it is written (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form and make the meaning explicit. Alternate translation: “what is happening is like what Isaiah wrote in the scriptures” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Those to whom was not reported concerning him (ULT)

You can translate this in active form. Alternate translation: “Those whom no one had told the news about him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [just as](#)
- [it is written](#)
- [was...reported](#)
- [will understand](#)

ULT

²¹ But [just as it is written](#): “Those to whom was not [reported](#) concerning him will see him, and those who have not heard [will understand](#).”

Romans 15:22

Connecting Statement:

Paul tells the believers in Rome about his personal plans to visit them and asks the believers to pray.

I was also hindered (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “they also hindered me” or “people also hindered me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

²² Therefore, I was also hindered many times from coming to you.

Romans 15:23

no longer having any place in these regions (ULT)

Paul implies that there are no more places in these areas where people live who have not heard about Christ. Alternate translation: "there are no more places in these regions where people have not heard about Christ" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

²³ But now, no longer having any place in these regions, and having a longing for many [years](#) to come to you,

Translation Words - ULT

- [years](#)

Romans 15:24

Spain (ULT)

At that time, **Spain** was a Roman province west of Rome that Paul desired to visit. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

passing through (ULT)

“as I pass through Rome” or “while I am on my way”

and to be helped by you there (ULT)

Here Paul implies that he wants the Roman believers to provide some financial assistance to him for his journey to Spain. Alternate translation: “that you will provide for me on my journey” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

and to be helped by you there (ULT)

You can translate this in active form. Alternate translation: “and that you will help me on my journey” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

you...if I might first be satisfied for a while (ULT)

“after I have enjoyed spending some time with you”

Translation Words - ULT

- [I...hope](#)

ULT

²⁴ whenever I go to Spain, I indeed [hope](#), passing through, to see you, and to be helped by you there, if I might first be satisfied for a while by you.

Romans 15:25

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jerusalem
- ministering
- to...saints

ULT

²⁵ But now I am going to Jerusalem,
ministering to the saints.

Romans 15:26

were pleased...Macedonia and Achaia (ULT)

Here the words **Macedonia** and **Achaia** are synecdoches for the people who live in those areas. Alternate translation: "the believers in the provinces of Macedonia and Achaia were happy" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Macedonia](#)
- [of...saints](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

ULT

²⁶ For [Macedonia](#) and Achaia were pleased to make a certain contribution to the poor of the [saints](#) in [Jerusalem](#).

Romans 15:27

Indeed, they were pleased (ULT)

“Indeed, the believers in Macedonia and Achaia were pleased to do it”

they are their debtors (ULT)

“indeed the people of Macedonia and Achaia are in debt to the believers in Jerusalem”

if the Gentiles have shared in their spiritual things, they owe it to them also to serve them

“since the Gentiles have shared in the spiritual things of the Jerusalem believers, the Gentiles ought to share their physical things with the Jerusalem believers”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Gentiles](#)
- [spiritual things](#)
- [to minister](#)

ULT

²⁷ Indeed, they were pleased, and they are their debtors. For if the [Gentiles](#) have shared in their [spiritual things](#), they ought also [to minister](#) to them in material things.

Romans 15:28

have sealed this fruit to them (ULT)

Paul speaks of the money he is taking to Jerusalem as if it were a **fruit** that was collected and **sealed** for them. Alternate translation: "and have safely delivered this offering to them" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [have sealed](#)
- [fruit](#)

ULT

²⁸ Therefore, when I have completed this and [have sealed](#) this [fruit](#) to them, I will go through you to Spain.

Romans 15:29

I will come in the fullness of the blessing of Christ (ULT)

This phrase means that Christ will bless Paul and the Roman believers. Alternate translation: "Christ will abundantly bless us" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- I know
- of the blessing
- of Christ

ULT

²⁹ But I know that coming to you, I will come in the fullness of the blessing of Christ.

Romans 15:30

Now (ULT)

If your language has a way to show that Paul has stopped talking about the good things he is confident of ([Romans 15:29](#)) and is now starting to talk about the dangers he faces, use it here.

I urge...you (ULT)

“I encourage you”

brothers (ULT)

Here **brothers** refers to fellow Christians, including both men and women.

to strive together with (ULT)

“to work hard with” or “to struggle with”

Translation Words - ULT

- I urge
- brothers
- Lord
- Jesus
- Christ
- love
- of...Spirit
- prayers
- God

ULT

³⁰ Now I urge you, brothers, by our Lord Jesus Christ and by the love of the Spirit, to strive together with me in {your} prayers to God for me,

Romans 15:31

I might be rescued from those who are disobedient (ULT)

You can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “God may rescue me from those who are disobedient” or “God may keep those who are disobedient from harming me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

³¹ so that I might be rescued from those who are disobedient in [Judea](#), and that my [service](#) in [Jerusalem](#) might be acceptable to the [saints](#);

and that my service in Jerusalem might be acceptable to the saints (ULT)

Here Paul expresses his desire that the **saints** in **Jerusalem** will gladly accept the money from the believers in Macedonia and Achaia. Alternate translation: “and pray that the believers in Jerusalem will be glad to receive the money that I am bringing them” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [I might be rescued](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [service](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [to...saints](#)

Romans 15:32

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- joy
- the will of God
- of God

ULT

³² so that I might come to you in joy through the will of God, and might be refreshed together with you.

Romans 15:33

the...God of peace be with (ULT)

The **God of peace** means the God who causes believers to have inner peace. Alternate translation: "I pray that God who causes all of us to have inner peace may be with" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

³³ Now the **God of peace** be with you all.
Amen.

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [of peace](#)
- [Amen](#)

Romans 16

Romans 16 General Notes

Structure and formatting

In this chapter, Paul gives personal greetings to some of the Christians in Rome. It was common to end a letter in the ancient Near East with this type of personal greeting.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Because of the personal nature of this chapter, much of the context is unknown. This will make translation more difficult. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Romans 16:1

Connecting Statement:

Paul then greets many of the believers in Rome by name.

Now I commend to you Phoebe (ULT)

“I want you to respect Phoebe”

Phoebe (ULT)

Phoebe is a woman’s name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

our sister (ULT)

The word **our** refers to Paul and all believers. Alternate translation: “our sister in Christ” (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

Cenchrea (ULT)

Cenchrea was a seaport city in Greece. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sister](#)
- [a servant](#)
- [of...church](#)

ULT

¹ Now I commend to you Phoebe our [sister](#), also being [a servant](#) of the [church](#) in Cenchrea,

Romans 16:2

you might receive her in the Lord (ULT)

Paul encourages the Roman believers to welcome Phoebe as a fellow believer. Alternate translation: “you would welcome her because we all belong to the Lord” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

in a manner worthy of the saints (ULT)

“in the way that believers should welcome other believers”

stand by her (ULT)

Paul encourages the Roman believers to give to Phoebe anything she needs. Alternate translation: “help her” (See: [Euphemism](#))

has become a helper of many, and of myself as well

“has helped many people, and she has also helped me”

Translation Words - ULT

- [you might receive](#)
- [in the Lord](#)
- [the Lord](#)
- [in a manner worthy](#)
- [of...saints](#)

ULT

² in order that [you might receive](#) her [in the Lord, in a manner worthy](#) of the [saints](#), and stand by her in whatever matter she might have need of you. For she has also become a helper of many, and of myself as well.

Romans 16:3

Priscilla and Aquila (ULT)

Priscilla was the wife of Aquila. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

my fellow workers in Christ Jesus (ULT)

Paul's **fellow workers** are people who also tell others about Jesus. Alternate translation: "who work with me to tell people about Christ Jesus" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

³ Greet Priscilla and Aquila, my fellow workers in Christ Jesus,

Translation Words - ULT

- Priscilla
- Aquila
- fellow workers
- in Christ Jesus
- Christ
- Jesus

Romans 16:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [life](#)
- [churches](#)
- [of...Gentiles](#)

ULT

⁴ who for my [life](#) laid down their own neck. To them not only I give thanks, but also all the [churches](#) of the [Gentiles](#),

Romans 16:5

and the church in their house (ULT)

“and greet the believers who meet in their house to worship”

Epaenetus (ULT)

Epaenetus is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the firstfruits of Asia to Christ (ULT)

Paul speaks of Epaenetus as if he were a fruit that he harvested. Alternate translation: “first person in Asia to believe in Jesus” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- church
- house
- beloved
- the firstfruits
- of Asia
- Christ

ULT

⁵ and the church in their house. Greet Epaenetus my beloved, who is the firstfruits of Asia to Christ.

Romans 16:6

Mary (ULT)

Mary is a woman's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [worked](#)

ULT

⁶ Greet Mary, who [worked](#) much for you.

Romans 16:7

Andronicus (ULT)

Andronicus is a man's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Junias (ULT)

This could refer to: (1) Junia, a woman's name. (2) Junias, a man's name, although this is less likely. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

who are prominent among the apostles (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "whom the apostles know very well" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [kinsmen](#)
- [apostles](#)
- [in Christ](#)
- [Christ](#)

ULT

⁷ Greet Andronicus and Junias, my [kinsmen](#) and my fellow prisoners who are prominent among the [apostles](#), who also were [in Christ](#) before me.

Romans 16:8

Ampliatius (ULT)

Ampliatius is a man's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

my beloved in the Lord (ULT)

"my dear friend and fellow believer in the Lord"

Translation Words - ULT

- [beloved](#)
- [in the Lord](#)
- [the Lord](#)

ULT

⁸ Greet Ampliatius, my [beloved in the Lord](#).

Romans 16:9

Urbanus...Stachys (ULT)

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- fellow worker
- in Christ
- Christ
- beloved

ULT

⁹ Greet Urbanus, our fellow worker in Christ, and Stachys, my beloved.

Romans 16:10

Apelles...of Aristobulus (ULT)

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the approved in Christ (ULT)

The word **approved** refers to someone who has been tested and proved to be genuine. Alternate translation: “whom Christ has approved”

ULT

¹⁰ Greet Apelles, the approved [in Christ](#).
Greet those who {are} from the household of Aristobulus.

Translation Words - ULT

- [in Christ](#)
- [Christ](#)

Romans 16:11

Herodion...of Narcissus (ULT)

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

who are in the Lord (ULT)

This refers to those who trust in Jesus. Alternate translation: “who are believers” or “who belong to the Lord” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

¹¹ Greet Herodion, my [kinsman](#). Greet those from the household of Narcissus, who are [in the Lord](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [kinsman](#)
- [in the Lord](#)
- [the Lord](#)

Romans 16:12

Tryphaena...Tryphosa...Persis (ULT)

These are women's names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [who work hard](#)
- [has worked](#)
- [in the Lord](#)
- [in the Lord](#)
- [the Lord](#)
- [the Lord \(2\)](#)
- [beloved](#)

ULT

¹² Greet Tryphaena and Tryphosa, [who work hard in the Lord](#). Greet Persis the [beloved](#), who [has worked](#) much [in the Lord](#).

Romans 16:13

Rufus (ULT)

Rufus is a man's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

chosen in the Lord (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "whom the Lord has chosen" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

his mother and mine (ULT)

Paul speaks of the mother of Rufus as if she were his own **mother**. Alternate translation: "his mother, whom I also think of as my mother" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [chosen](#)
- [in the Lord](#)
- [the Lord](#)

ULT

¹³ Greet Rufus, [chosen in the Lord](#), and his mother and mine.

Romans 16:14

Asyncritus, Phlegon, Hermes, Patrobas, Hermas (ULT)

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

brothers (ULT)

Here **brothers** refers to fellow Christians, including both men and women.

Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)

ULT

¹⁴ Greet Asyncritus, Phlegon, Hermes, Patrobas, Hermas, and the [brothers](#) who {are} with them.

Romans 16:15

Philologus...Nereus...Olympas (ULT)

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Julia (ULT)

Julia is the name of a woman. She was probably the wife of Philologus. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sister](#)
- [saints](#)

ULT

¹⁵ Greet Philologus and Julia, Nereus and his [sister](#), and Olympas, and all the [saints](#) who {are} with them.

Romans 16:16

a holy kiss (ULT)

an expression of affection for fellow believers

All the churches of Christ greet you (ULT)

Here Paul speaks in a general manner concerning the **churches** of Christ. Alternate translation: “The believers in all the churches in this area send their greetings to you” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

ULT

¹⁶ Greet one another with a [holy kiss](#). All the [churches of Christ](#) greet you.

Translation Words - ULT

- [holy](#)
- [a...kiss](#)
- [churches](#)
- [of Christ](#)

Romans 16:17

Connecting Statement:

Paul gives one last warning to the believers about unity and living for God.

brothers (ULT)

Here **brothers** refers to fellow Christians, including both men and women.

to take note of (ULT)

“to watch out for”

divisions and obstacles...who are causing (ULT)

This refers to those who argue and cause others to stop trusting in Jesus. Alternate translation: “who are causing believers to argue with one another and to stop having faith in God” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

contrary to the teaching that you have learned (ULT)

“and teaching things that do not agree with the truth you have already learned”

turn away from them (ULT)

Here, **turn away** is a metaphor for “refuse to listen.” Alternate translation: “do not listen to them” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [I urge](#)
- [brothers](#)
- [obstacles](#)
- [teaching](#)
- [turn away](#)

ULT

17 Now [I urge](#) you, [brothers](#), to take note of those who are causing divisions and [obstacles](#), contrary to the [teaching](#) that you have learned, and [turn away](#) from them.

Romans 16:18

but their own stomach (ULT)

The words “they serve” are understood from the previous phrase. Alternate translation: “but they serve their own stomach” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

but their own stomach (ULT)

Here, **stomach** is a metonym that refers to physical desires. Alternate translation: “but they only care about their physical desires” (See: [Metonymy](#))

but their own stomach (ULT)

Serving there **stomach** represents satisfying their desires. Alternate translation: “but they only want to satisfy their own selfish desires” (See: [Metaphor](#))

and through {their} smooth and flattering speech (ULT)

The words **smooth** and **flattering** mean basically the same thing. Paul is emphasizing how these people are deceiving believers. Alternate translation: “and by saying things that seem to be good and true” (See: [Doublet](#))

they deceive the hearts of the innocent (ULT)

Here, **hearts** is a metonym for a person’s mind or inner being. Alternate translation: “they deceive the innocent believers” (See: [Metonymy](#))

of the innocent (ULT)

This refers to those who are simple, inexperienced, and naive. Alternate translation: “of those who innocently trust them” or “of those who do not know these teachers are fooling them”

Translation Words - ULT

- [do...serve](#)
- [our...Lord...Christ](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [they deceive](#)
- [hearts](#)
- [of...innocent](#)

ULT

18 For ones such as these do not [serve our Lord Christ](#), but their own stomach, and through {their} smooth and flattering speech [they deceive](#) the [hearts](#) of the [innocent](#).

Romans 16:19

For your obedience reaches to everyone (ULT)

Here Paul speaks of the Roman believers' **obedience** as if it were a person who could go to people. Alternate translation: "For everyone has heard how you obey Jesus" (See: [Personification](#))

innocent...to...the...evil (ULT)

"not involved in doing evil things"

Translation Words - ULT

- [obedience](#)
- [I rejoice](#)
- [wise](#)
- [good](#)
- [innocent](#)
- [evil](#)

ULT

¹⁹ For your [obedience](#) reaches to everyone. [I rejoice](#), therefore, over you, but I want you to be [wise](#) as to the [good](#), but [innocent](#) as to the [evil](#).

Romans 16:20

Now the God of peace will soon crush Satan under your feet (ULT)

The phrase **crush ... under your feet** refers to complete victory over an enemy. Here Paul speaks of the victory over **Satan** as if the Roman believers were trampling an enemy under their **feet**.

Alternate translation: "Soon God will give you peace and complete victory over Satan" (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

²⁰ Now the [God of peace](#) will soon crush [Satan](#) under your feet. The [grace](#) of our [Lord Jesus Christ](#) be with you.

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [of peace](#)
- [Satan](#)
- [grace](#)
- [of...Lord](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [Christ](#)

Romans 16:21

Connecting Statement:

Paul gives greetings from the believers who are with him.

Lucius...Jason...Sosipater (ULT)

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Timothy
- fellow worker
- kinsmen

ULT

²¹ Timothy, my fellow worker, and Lucius and Jason and Sosipater, my kinsmen, greet you.

Romans 16:22

I, Tertius, who wrote this epistle (ULT)

Tertius is the man who wrote down what Paul spoke. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

greet you...in the Lord (ULT)

“greet you as a fellow believer”

Translation Words - ULT

- [epistle](#)
- [in the Lord](#)
- [the Lord](#)

ULT

²² I, Tertius, who wrote this [epistle](#), greet you [in the Lord](#).

Romans 16:23

Gaius...Erastus...Quartus (ULT)

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the host (ULT)

This refers to Gaius, the person in whose house Paul and his fellow believers gathered for worship.

the...treasurer (ULT)

This is a person who takes care of the money for a group.

Translation Words - ULT

- [for...church](#)
- [treasurer](#)
- [brother](#)

ULT

²³ Gaius, the host for me and for the whole [church](#), greets you. Erastus, the [treasurer](#) of the city, greets you, and Quartus the [brother](#).

Romans 16:24

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

^{24[1]} [The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ
be with you all. Amen.]

Romans 16:25

Connecting Statement:

Paul closes with a prayer of blessing.

Now (ULT)

Here the word **Now** marks the closing section of the letter. If you have a way of doing this in your language, you can use it here.

ULT

²⁵ Now to the one who is able to **establish** you according to my **gospel** and the **preaching of Jesus Christ**, according to **the revelation of the mystery**, having been kept secret **for long ages**,

to establish you (ULT)

Paul speaks here of having strong faith as if a person were being set firmly in place. Alternate translation: “to make your faith strong” (See: [Metaphor](#))

according to my gospel and the preaching of Jesus Christ

“by the good news that I have preached about Jesus Christ”

according to the revelation of the mystery, having been kept secret for long ages (ULT)

Paul says that God has revealed previously hidden truths to the believers. He speaks of these truths as if they were a **secret**. Alternate translation: “because God has revealed to us believers what had been kept secret for a long time” (See: [Metaphor](#))

according to the revelation of the mystery, having been kept secret for long ages (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: “because God has revealed to us believers the secret that he was keeping for a long time” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- to establish
- gospel
- preaching
- of Jesus
- Christ
- the revelation
- of the mystery
- for long ages
- for long ages

Romans 16:26

but now having been revealed through the prophetic writings, according to the command of the eternal God, to the obedience of faith, having been made known to all the nations (ULT)

The verbs **revealed** and **made known** mean basically the same thing. Paul uses both of them to emphasize his point. Alternate translation: “but now the mystery has been made known to all the nations through the prophetic writings so people can believe” (See: [Doublet](#))

ULT

²⁶ but now [having been revealed](#) through the [prophetic writings](#), according to [the command](#) of the [eternal God](#), to [the obedience of faith](#), [having been made known](#) to all the [nations](#),

but now having been revealed through the prophetic writings, according to the command of the eternal God, to the obedience of faith, having been made known to all the nations (ULT)

You can combine the verbs **revealed** and **made known** in an active form. Alternate translation: “but now the eternal God has made it known to all the nations through the prophetic writings so that people would believe” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

to the obedience of faith (ULT)

Here, **obedience** and **faith** are abstract nouns. You can use the verbs “obey” and “trust” in your translation. Alternate translation: “so that all nations will believe and obey” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

to the obedience of faith (ULT)

You may need to make explicit who will obey and trust. Alternate translation: “so that all nations will obey God because they trust in him” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [having been revealed](#)
- [prophetic](#)
- [writings](#)
- [the command](#)
- [eternal](#)
- [of...God](#)
- [the obedience](#)
- [of faith](#)
- [having been made known](#)
- [nations](#)

Romans 16:27

to the only wise God, through Jesus Christ, to whom {be} the glory to eternity. Amen (ULT)

Here, **through Jesus Christ** refers to what Jesus did. To give **glory** means to praise God. Alternate translation: "Because of what Jesus Christ has done for us, we will praise forever the one who alone is God and who alone is wise. Amen!" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- to the...God
- wise
- Jesus
- Christ
- glory
- eternity
- Amen

ULT

²⁷ to the only wise God, through Jesus Christ, to whom {be} the glory to eternity. Amen.

16:24 ^[1]



unfoldingWord® Translation Academy

Version 24

Abstract Nouns

Description

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

This page answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. Abstract nouns are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships between those ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. They provide a way of giving names to actions or qualities. With names, people who speak these languages can talk about the concepts as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin."

But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, speakers may not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," but they would express the same meaning in other ways. For example, they would express, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," by using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas. Instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example, "What is its **weight**?" could be expressed as "How much does it **weigh**?" or "How **heavy** is it?"

Examples From the Bible

From **childhood** you have known the sacred writings ... (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone was a child.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns "godliness" and "contentment" refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun "gain" refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "salvation" here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

The abstract noun "slowness" refers to the lack of speed with which something is done.

He will both bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun. Alternative translations are indented below the Scripture example.

... from **childhood** you have known the sacred writings ... (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

Ever since **you were a child** you have known the sacred writings.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

But **being godly** and **content** is very **beneficial**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **are godly** and **content**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **honor and obey God** and when we are **happy with what we have**.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

Today the people in this house **have been saved** ... Today God **has saved** the people in this house ...

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be. (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **moving slowly** to be.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal **the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them**.

(Go back to: [Introduction to Romans](#); [Romans 1:18](#); [3:28](#); [4:15](#); [8:35](#); [11:22](#); [16:26](#))

Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects bolded:

- Active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- Passive: **The house** was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

This page answers the question: *What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the active form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the passive form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is not always mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have bolded the subject.

- active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built by my father in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

Purposes for the Passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples From the Bible

Then their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants **were killed**, and your servant Uriah the Hittite **was killed** too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

When the men of the city arose early in the morning, and see, the altar of Baal **was torn down**. (Judges 6:28a ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

- (1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
- (2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
- (3) Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21b ULT)

The king's servants gave Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

- (2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

It would be better for him if **they were to put** a millstone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

It would be better for him if **someone were to put** a heavy stone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

- (3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

He **received** a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about:

Abstract Nouns

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-order]]

(Go back to: [Romans 1 General Notes](#); 1:1; 1:4; 1:5; 1:7; 1:12; 1:13; 1:17; 1:18; 1:19; 1:20; 1:21; 1:29; 2:12; 2:13; 2:15; 2:18; 2:24; 2:26; 2:27; 3:4; 3:10; 3:19; 3:21; 3:24; 3:27; 3:28; 4:3; 4:4; 4:5; 4:7; 4:9; 4:11; 4:17; 4:18; 4:20; 4:22; 4:23; 4:24; 4:25; Notes; 5:5; 5:9; 5:10; 5:13; 5:19; 6:4; 6:5; 6:6; 6:7; 6:9; 6:17; 6:18; 6:22; 7:3; 7:4; 7:6; 8:4; 8:14; 8:17; 8:18; 8:19; 8:20; 8:21; 8:24; 8:28; 8:29; 8:36; 9:3; 9:9; 9:17; 9:25; 9:27; 9:33; 10:9; 10:11; 10:13; 10:20; 11:9; 11:15; 11:17; 11:19; 11:22; 11:23; 11:24; 11:26; 11:28; 12:2; 12:3; 12:5; 12:6; 12:9; 12:19; 12:21; 13:1; 13:2; 14:4; 14:5; 14:11; 14:18; 14:23; 15:3; 15:4; 15:8; 15:9; 15:15; 15:21; 15:22; 15:24; 15:31; 16:7; 16:13; 16:25; 16:26)

Apostrophe

Description

An apostrophe is a figure of speech in which a speaker turns his attention away from his listeners and speaks to someone or something that he knows cannot hear him. He does this to tell his listeners his message or feelings about that person or thing in a very strong way.

This page answers the question: *What is the figure of speech called an apostrophe?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Many languages do not use apostrophe, and readers could be confused by it. They may wonder who the speaker is talking to, or think that the speaker is crazy to talk to things or people who cannot hear.

Examples from the Bible

Mountains of Gilboa, let there not be dew or rain on you. (2 Samuel 1:21a ULT)

King Saul was killed on Mount Gilboa, and David sang a sad song about it. By telling these mountains that he wanted them to have no dew or rain, he showed how sad he was.

Jerusalem, Jerusalem, who kills the prophets and stones those sent to you. (Luke 13:34a ULT)

Jesus was expressing his feelings for the people of Jerusalem in front of his disciples and a group of Pharisees. By speaking directly to Jerusalem as though its people could hear him, Jesus showed how deeply he cared about them.

He cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh: “**Altar, altar!** This is what Yahweh says, ‘See, ... on you they will burn human bones.’” (1 Kings 13:2 ULT)

The man of God spoke as if the altar could hear him, but he really wanted the king, who was standing there, to hear him.

Translation Strategies

If apostrophe would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. But if this way of speaking would be confusing to your people, let the speaker continue speaking to the people that are listening to him as he tells **them** his message or feelings about the people or thing that cannot hear him. See the example below.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

He cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh: “**Altar, altar!** This is what Yahweh says, ‘See, ... on you they will burn human bones.’” (1 Kings 13:2 ULT)

He said this about the altar: “This is what Yahweh says **about this altar**. ‘See, ... they will burn people’s bones on **it**.’”

Mountains of Gilboa, let there not be dew or rain on **you**. (2 Samuel 1:21a ULT)

As for these mountains of Gilboa, let there not be dew or rain on **them**.

(**Go back to:** [Romans 2:1](#))

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

Assumed knowledge is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.

This page answers the question: *How can I be sure that my translation communicates the assumed knowledge and implicit information along with the explicit information of the original message?*

When the speaker does give the audience information, he can do so in two ways. The speaker gives explicit information in what he states directly. Implicit Information is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from other things he says.

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is explicit information.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called assumed knowledge.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Implicit information is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this implicit information by combining what they already know (assumed knowledge) with the explicit information that the speaker tells them directly.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different from the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the assumed knowledge or the implicit information is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

Examples From the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in **Tyre and Sidon** which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But

I say to you, it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the **day of judgment** than for you.
(Matthew 11:21-22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged **because** they did not repent.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands when they eat bread**. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes to live in**, and the birds of the sky **have nests to live in**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."

It will be more tolerable for **Tyre and Sidon** at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.

>

At the day of judgment, it will be more tolerable for **those cities of Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked**, than it will be for you. or At

the day of judgment, It will be more tolerable for those **wicked cities, Tyre and Sidon**, than for you.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands** when they eat bread. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness** when they eat bread.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, then, like Jesus, he would have to live without a house.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but **I, the Son of Man, have no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live.**"

It will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

At the day of judgment, God will **punish Tyre and Sidon**, cities whose people were very wicked, **less severely than he will punish you.**
or:

At the day of judgment, God will **punish you more severely** than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo\]\]](#)

(Go back to: Romans 1:1; 1:3; 1:11; 1:16; 1:17; 1:18; 1:19; 1:25; 1:28; 1:32; 2:1; 2:12; 2:13; 2:14; 2:20; 3:1; 3:2; 3:4; 3:11; 3:12; 3:22; 3:24; 4:11; 4:14; 4:17; 4:18; 5:9; 5:13; 5:15; 5:16; 5:18; 5:20; 5:21; 6:7; 6:8; 6:10; 6:13; 6:14; 7:6; 8:1; 8:2; 8:10; 8:23; 8:29; 8:30; 8:37; 9:23; 9:25; 9:29; 9:30; 9:31; 9:32; 9:33; Notes; 10:3; 10:4; 10:5; 10:11; 10:12; 10:18; 10:19; 11:6; 11:14; 11:25; 11:28; 11:29; 11:30; 11:36; 12:1; 12:3; 12:8; 14:5; 14:6; 14:7; 14:11; 14:14; 14:17; 14:19; 14:20; 14:23; 15:1; 15:2; 15:3; 15:4; 15:8; 15:10; 15:12; 15:14; 15:18; 15:20; 15:21; 15:23; 15:24; 15:29; 15:31; 15:33; Notes; 16:2; 16:3; 16:11; 16:17; 16:26; 16:27)

Double Negatives

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each express the meaning of “not.” Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

This page answers the question: *What are double negatives?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

Description

Negative words are words that have in them the meaning “not.” Examples in English are “no,” “not,” “none,” “no one,” “nothing,” “nowhere,” “never,” “nor,” “neither,” and “without.” Also, some words have prefixes or suffixes that mean “not,” such as the bolded parts of these words: “**un**happy,” “**im**possible,” and “**useless**.” Some other kinds of words also have a negative meaning, such as “lack” or “reject,” or even “fight” or “evil.”

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each have a negative meaning.

We did this **not** because we have **no** authority ... (2 Thessalonians 3:9a ULT)

And this was **not** done **without** an oath! (Hebrews 7:20a ULT)

Be sure of this—the wicked person will **not** go **un**punished. (Proverbs 11:21a ULT)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as Spanish, a double negative emphasizes the negative. The Spanish sentence, “No vi a nadie,” literally says “I did not see no one.” It has both the word ‘no’ next to the verb and ‘nadie,’ which means “no one.” The two negatives are seen as in agreement with each other, and the sentence means, “I did not see anyone.”
- In some languages, a second negative cancels the first one, creating a positive sentence. So, “He is not unintelligent” means “He is intelligent.”
- In some languages the double negative creates a positive sentence, but it is a weak statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” means, “He is somewhat intelligent.”
- In some languages, such as the languages of the Bible, the double negative can create a positive sentence, and often strengthens the statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” can mean “He is intelligent” or “He is very intelligent.”

To translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

Examples From the Bible

... in order **not** to be **un**fruitful. (Titus 3:14b ULT)

This means “so that they will be fruitful.”

All things were made through him and **without** him there was **not** one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULT)

By using a double negative, John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything. The double negative makes a stronger statement than the simple positive.

Translation Strategies

If double negatives are natural and are used to express the positive in your language, consider using them. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

- (1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.
- (2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely” or “absolutely.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

For we do **not** have a high priest who **cannot** feel sympathy for our weaknesses. (Hebrews 4:15a ULT)

“For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses.”

... in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14b ULT)

“... so that they may be fruitful.”

- (2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely” or “absolutely.”

Be sure of this—the wicked person will **not** go **unpunished**. (Proverbs 11:21a ULT)

“Be sure of this—wicked people will **certainly** be punished.”

All things were made through him and **without** him there was **not** one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULT)

“All things were made through him. He made **absolutely** everything that has been made.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](https://en.ta.man/translate/figs-verbs)

(Go back to: [Romans 1:13](#); [4:20](#); [11:23](#); [11:25](#); [13:1](#); [13:8](#); [14:14](#); [15:18](#))

Doublet

Description

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Unlike Hendiadys, in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

This page answers the question: *What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

Examples From the Bible

He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)

The bolded words mean the same thing. Together they mean the people were spread out.

He attacked two men **more righteous** and **better** than himself. (1 Kings 2:32b ULT)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.

... like of a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect—not even one.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

- (1) Translate only one of the words or phrases.
- (2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
- (3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate only one of the words.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

“You have decided to prepare **false** things to say.”

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)

“He has one people **very spread out**.”

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

... like a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)

• English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”

“... like a lamb **without any blemish at all**.”

(Go back to: [Romans 2:5](#); [2:8](#); [2:9](#); [8:35](#); [9:1](#); [9:2](#); [9:33](#); [11:12](#); [11:33](#); [12:1](#); [13:13](#); [14:13](#); [14:14](#); [15:19](#); [16:18](#); [16:26](#))

Ellipsis

Description

An ellipsis¹ occurs when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words that normally should be in the sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, **nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.**
(Psalm 1:5 ULT)

There is ellipsis in the second part because “nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would read:

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **will sinners stand** in the assembly of the righteous.

[¹] English has a punctuation symbol which is also called an ellipsis. It is a series of three dots (...) used to indicate an intentional omission of a word, phrase, sentence or more from text without altering its original meaning. This translationAcademy article is not about the punctuation mark, but about the concept of omission of words that normally should be in the sentence.

Two Types of Ellipsis

A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.

An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage or from the nature of the situation.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

Examples From the Bible

Relative Ellipsis

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

This page answers the question: *What is ellipsis ?* ([¹])

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**not as unwise but as wise**. (Ephesians 5:15b ULT)

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:

Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**walk** not as unwise but **walk** as wise,

Absolute Ellipsis

Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

“Lord, **I want you to heal me so** that I might receive my sight.”

To Titus, a true son in our common faith. Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior. (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

To Titus, a true son in our common faith. **May you receive** grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior.

Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **sinner in the assembly** of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5 ULT)

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and **sinner will not stand in the assembly** of the righteous.

Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

Then when the man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, **I want you to heal me** that I might receive my sight.”

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox**. (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

(Go back to: [Romans 3:27](#); [4:13](#); [8:12](#); [8:35](#); [9:32](#); [13:7](#); [14:6](#); [16:18](#))

Euphemism

Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private.

... they found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa.
(1 Chronicles 10:8b ULT)

This means that Saul and his sons “were dead.” It is a euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

This page answers the question: *What is a euphemism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages use different euphemisms. If the target language does not use the same euphemism as in the source language, readers may not understand what it means and they may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

Examples From the Bible

... where there was a cave. Saul went inside to **cover his feet**. (1 Samuel 24:3b ULT)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so **he did not say specifically** what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

But Mary said to the angel, “How will this be, since I have not **known a man?**” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

In order **to be polite**, Mary uses a euphemism to say that she has never had sexual intercourse with a man.

Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.
- (2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

... where there was a cave. Saul went inside to **cover his feet**. (1 Samuel 24:3b ULT) — Some languages might use euphemisms like these:

“... where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to **dig a hole**”

“... where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to **have some time alone**”

But Mary said to the angel, “How will this be, since I have not **known a man?**” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

But Mary said to the angel, “How will this be, since I have not **slept with a man?**”

(2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

They found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8b ULT)

“They found Saul and his sons **dead** on Mount Gilboa.”

(Go back to: [Romans 1:24](#); [1:26](#); [1:27](#); [16:2](#))

Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

Description

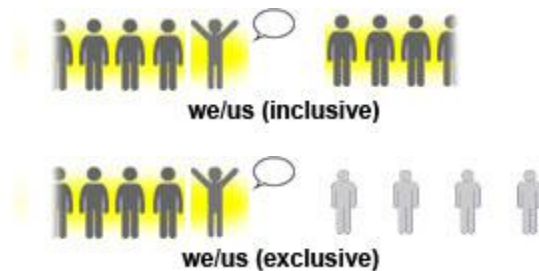
Some languages have more than one form of "we": an inclusive form that means "I and you" and an exclusive form that means "I and someone else but not you." The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for "us," "our," "ours," and "ourselves." Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

This page answers the question: *What are the exclusive and inclusive forms of "we"?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns\]\]](#)

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive "we" and the exclusive "we" refer to.



Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for "we." If your language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of "we," then you will need to understand what the speaker meant so that you can decide which form of "we" to use.

Examples From the Bible

Exclusive

They said, "There are not more than five loaves of bread and two fish with us—unless **we** go and buy food for all these people." (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food. They were speaking to Jesus, but Jesus was not going to buy food. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" would use the **exclusive** form there.

We have seen it, and **we** bear witness to it. **We** are announcing to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and which has been made known to **us**. (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **exclusive** forms in this verse.

Inclusive

The shepherds said one to each other, "Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**." (Luke 2:15b ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said "us," they were including the people they were speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

Now it happened that on one of those days, he indeed got into a boat with his disciples, and he said to them, "Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake." So they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said "us," he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-gendernotations]]

(Go back to: [Romans 2:2](#); [3:31](#); [4:16](#); [4:24](#); [5:1](#); [5:3](#); [5:5](#); [5:6](#); [5:8](#); [5:10](#); [5:21](#); [6:1](#); [7:6](#); [8:36](#); [9:10](#); [9:24](#); [9:29](#); [13:13](#); [14:7](#); [14:8](#); [15:1](#); [15:4](#); [16:1](#))

First, Second or Third Person

Normally a speaker refers to himself as “I” and the person he is speaking to as “you.” Sometimes in the Bible a speaker refers to himself or to the person he is speaking to with terms other than “I” or “you.”

Description

- First person — This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns “I” and “we.” (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- Second person — This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun “you.” (Also: your, yours)
- Third person — This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns “he,” “she,” “it,” and “they.” (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like “the man” or “the woman” are also third person.

This page answers the question: *What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns\]\]](#)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses the third person to refer to himself or to the people he is speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant “I” or “you.”

Examples From the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of “I” or “me” to refer to themselves.

But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34 ULT)

David referred to himself in the third person as “your servant” and used “his.” He was calling himself Saul’s servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,
“... Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?” (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words “God’s” and “his.” He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of “you” or “your” to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

Abraham answered and said, “Look, I have undertaken to speak to my Lord, even though I am only dust and ashes!” (Genesis 18:27 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you.” He did this to show his humility before God.

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your.”

Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

- (1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”
- (2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”

But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34)

But David said to Saul, “**I, your servant**, used to keep **my** father’s sheep.”

- (2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?” (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like **mine**? Can you thunder with a voice like **mine**?”

So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **your** brother from your heart.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Forms of You](#)

(Go back to: [Romans 14:11](#))

Forms of You

Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some languages have other forms that refer to three or four people.

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_younum.

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_youform.

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Forms of “You” — Formal or Informal

(Go back to: [Romans 2:1](#); [4:17](#); [8:36](#); [9:17](#); [9:19](#); [10:6](#); [10:19](#); [11:30](#); [12:20](#); [14:4](#); [14:21](#); [14:22](#))

This page answers the question: *What are the different forms of you?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-yousingular\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-yodual\]\]](#)

Generic Noun Phrases

Description

Generic noun phrases refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things. This happens frequently in proverbs, because proverbs tell about things that are true about people in general.

Can a **man** walk on hot coals without scorching his feet?
So is **the man who goes in to his neighbor's wife; the one who touches her** will not go unpunished. (Proverbs 6:28-29 ULT)

The phrases in bold above do not refer to a specific man. They refer to any man who does these things.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages have different ways of showing that noun phrases refer to something in general. You (the translator) should refer to these general ideas in ways that are natural in your language.

Examples From the Bible

The **righteous person** is kept away from trouble and it comes upon **the wicked** instead. (Proverbs 11:8 ULT)

The bold phrases above do not refer to a specific person but to anyone who does what is right or anyone who is wicked.

People curse **the man who refuses to sell grain**. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

This does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who refuses to sell grain.

Yahweh gives favor to a **good man**, but he condemns **a man who makes evil plans**. (Proverbs 12:2 ULT)

The phrase "a good man" does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who is good. The phrase "a man who makes evil plans" does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who makes evil plans.

Translation Strategies

If your language can use the same wording as in the ULT to refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things, consider using the same wording. If not, here are some strategies you might use.

- (1) Use the word "the" in the noun phrase.
- (2) Use the word "a" in the noun phrase.
- (3) Use the word "any," as in "any person" or "anyone."
- (4) Use the plural form, as in "people."

This page answers the question: *What are generic noun phrases and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]

(5) Use any other way that is natural in your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the word “the” in the noun phrase.

Yahweh gives favor to **a good man**, but he condemns **a man who makes evil plans**. (Proverbs 12:2 ULT)

“Yahweh gives favor to **the good man**, but he condemns **the man who makes evil plans**.” (Proverbs 12:2)

(2) Use the word “a” in the noun phrase.

People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse **a man** who refuses to sell grain.”

(3) Use the word “any,” as in “any person” or “anyone.”

People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse **any man** who refuses to sell grain.”

(4) Use the plural form, as in “people” (or in this sentence, “men”).

People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse **men** who refuse to sell grain”

(5) Use any other way that is natural in your language.

People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse **whoever** refuses to sell grain.”

Next we recommend you learn about:
 [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-gendernotations]]

(Go back to: [Romans 3:28](#))

How to Translate Names

Description

The Bible contains the names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to, but sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

For this **Melchizedek**, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, was the one who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name first indeed means “king of righteousness,” and then also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2b ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see Borrow Words.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples From the Bible

Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** ... fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beer Lahai Roi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me.”

And she called his name **Moses** and she said, “For out of the water I drew him.” (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out.”

Saul was in agreement with his execution. (Acts 8:1a ULT)

But when the apostles, Barnabas and **Paul**, heard of it, they tore their clothing. (Acts 14:14a ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

Translation Strategies

- (1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
- (2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
- (3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
- (4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
- (5) Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** ... fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

You went over the **Jordan River** and came to the **city of Jericho**. The men of Jericho fought against you, along with **the tribe of the Amorites**.

At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, “Leave and go away from here, because **Herod** wants to kill you.” (Luke 13:31 ULT)

At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, “Go and leave here, because **King Herod** wants to kill you.”

- (2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

And she called his name **Moses** and she said, “For out of the water I drew him.” (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

She called his name **Moses (which sounds like 'drawn out')**, and she said, "For out of the water I drew him."

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

She said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

She said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore, the well was called **Well of the Living One who sees me**.

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called "Saul" before Acts 13 and "Paul" after Acts 13. You could translate his name as "Paul" all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

... a young man named **Saul**. (Acts 7:58b ULT)

... a young man named **Paul** ¹

The footnote would look like:

^[1] Most versions say "Saul" here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called "Paul."

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write "Saul" where the source text has "Saul" and "Paul" where the source text has "Paul."

a young man named **Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULT)

a young man named **Saul**

The footnote would look like:

^[1] This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

It came about in Iconium that **Paul** and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that **Paul**¹ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:

[1] This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate]]

(Go back to: [Introduction to Romans](#); [Romans 9:25](#); [15:24](#); [16:1](#); [16:3](#); [16:5](#); [16:6](#); [16:7](#); [16:8](#); [16:9](#); [16:10](#); [16:11](#); [16:12](#); [16:13](#); [16:14](#); [16:15](#); [16:21](#); [16:22](#); [16:23](#))

Hyperbole

Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something that he means as completely true, or as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement. For example, the sentence below could mean three different things.

It rains here every night.

The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.

The speaker means this as a **generalization** if he means that it rains here most nights.

The speaker means this as a **hyperbole** if he wants to say that it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount or frequency of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy about it.

This page answers the question: *What are hyperboles? What are generalizations? How can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Hyperbole

In hyperbole, a figure of speech that uses exaggeration, a speaker deliberately describes something with an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

They will not leave **stone upon stone in you**. (Luke 19:44b ULT)

This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

Moses was educated in **all the wisdom of the Egyptians**. (Acts 7:22a ULT)

This hyperbole means that he had learned everything an Egyptian education could offer.

Generalization

This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

The one who ignores instruction **will have poverty and shame**, but **honor will come** to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction. There may be some exceptions to these statements, but they are generally true.

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as **the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words**. (Matthew 6:7)

This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles did this. It does not matter if a few did not. The point was that the hearers should not join in this well-known practice.

Even though a hyperbole or a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like "all," "always," "none," or "never," it does not necessarily mean **exactly** "all," "always," "none," or "never." It simply means "most," "most of the time," "hardly any," or "rarely."

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is literally true.

If readers realize that a statement is not literally true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

Examples From the Bible

Examples of Hyperbole

If your hand causes you to stumble, **cut it off**. It is better for you to enter into life maimed ... (Mark 9:43a ULT)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should **do whatever extreme things** we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel with 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)

The bolded phrase is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that the Philistine army was overwhelming in number. It means that there were **many, many** soldiers in the Philistine army.

But as his anointing teaches you **everything** and is true and is not a lie, and just as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27b ULT)

This is a hyperbole. It expresses the assurance that God's Spirit teaches us about **all things that we need to know**. God's Spirit does not teach us about everything that it is possible to know.

When they found him, they also said to him, "**Everyone** is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULT)

The disciples probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for Jesus, but that **many people** were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him. This is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that they and many others were worried about him.

Examples of Generalization

Can **any good thing** come out of Nazareth? (John 1:46b ULT)

This rhetorical question is meant to express the generalization that there is nothing good in Nazareth. The people there had a reputation for being uneducated and not strictly religious. Of course, there were exceptions.

One of them, of their own prophets, has said, "**Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy bellies**." (Titus 1:12 ULT)

This is a generalization that means that Cretans had a reputation to be like this because, in general, this is how Cretans behaved. It is possible that there were exceptions.

A lazy hand causes a person to be poor, but the hand of the diligent person gains riches. (Proverbs 10:4 ULT)

This is generally true, and it reflects the experience of most people. It is possible that there are exceptions in some circumstances.

Caution

- Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

They saw Jesus **walking on the sea** and coming near the boat. (John 6:19b ULT)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

- Do not assume that the word “all” is always a generalization that means “most.”
 - > Yahweh is righteous in **all** his ways
 - > and gracious in **all** he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULT)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

- (1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
- (2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
- (3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.
- (4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and **a great number of troops**.

- (2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”

The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame. (Proverbs 13:18a ULT)

In general, the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame

When you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the **Gentiles do**, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7 ULT)

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles **generally** do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.

- (3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.

The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)

Almost all the country of Judea and **almost all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

or:

Many of the country of Judea and **many** of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)

The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(Go back to: [Romans 3:4](#); [3:14](#); [7:15](#); [8:36](#); [9:13](#); [9:17](#); [15:13](#); [15:14](#); [16:16](#))

Hypothetical Situations

Consider these phrases: “If the sun stopped shining ...” “What if the sun stopped shining ...” “Suppose the sun stopped shining ...” and “If only the sun had not stopped shining.” We use such expressions to set up hypothetical situations, imagining what might have happened or what could happen in the future but probably will not. We also use them to express regret or wishes. Hypothetical expressions occur often in the Bible. You (the translator) need to translate them in a way that people will know that the event did not actually happen and so that they will understand why the event was imagined.

This page answers the question: *What is a hypothetical situation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

Description

Hypothetical situations are situations that are not real. They can be in the past, present, or future. Hypothetical situations in the past and present have not happened, are not happening now, and ones in the future are not expected to happen.

People sometimes tell about conditions and what would happen if those conditions were met, but they know that these things have not happened or probably will not happen. (The conditions comprise a phrase that starts with “if.”)

- If he had lived to be 100 years old, he would have seen his grandson’s grandson. (But he did not.)
- If he lived to be 100 years old, he would still be alive today. (But he is not.)
- If he lives to be 100 years old, he will see his grandson’s grandson. (But he probably will not.)

People sometimes express wishes about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- I wish he had come.
- I wish he were here.
- I wish he would come.

People sometimes express regrets about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- If only he had come.
- If only he were here.
- If only he would come.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Translators need to recognize the different kinds of hypothetical situations in the Bible and understand that they are unreal.
- Translators need to know their own language’s ways of talking about different kinds of hypothetical situations.

Examples From the Bible

Hypothetical Situations in the Past

“Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! **If the mighty deeds had been done** in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, **they would have repented** long ago in sackcloth and ashes.” (Matthew 11:21 ULT)

Here in Matthew 11:21, Jesus said that **if** the people living in the ancient cities of Tyre and Sidon had been able to see the miracles that he performed, they would have repented long ago. The people of Tyre and Sidon did not actually see his miracles, and they did not repent. He said this to rebuke the people of Chorazin and Bethsaida who had seen his miracles and yet did not repent.

Martha then said to Jesus, “Lord, **if you had been here, my brother would not have died.**” (John 11:21 ULT)

Martha said this to express her wish that Jesus would have come sooner so that her brother would not have died. But Jesus did not come sooner and her brother did die.

Hypothetical Situations in the Present

And no man puts new wine into old wineskins. **But if he did do that, the new wine would burst the wineskins, and it would be spilled out, and the wineskins would be destroyed.** (Luke 5:37 ULT)

Jesus told about what would happen if a person were to put new wine into old wineskins. But no one would do that. He used this imaginary situation as an example to show that there are times when it is unwise to mix new things with old things. He did this so that people could understand why his disciples were not fasting as people traditionally did.

Jesus said to them, “What man would there be among you, who, **if he had just one sheep, and if this sheep fell into a deep hole on the Sabbath, would not grasp hold of it and lift it out?**” (Matthew 12:11 ULT)

Jesus asked the religious leaders what they would do on the Sabbath if one of their sheep fell into a hole. He was not saying that their sheep would fall into a hole. He used this imaginary situation to show them that they were wrong to judge him for healing people on the Sabbath.

Hypothetical Situation in the Future

Unless those days are shortened, no flesh would be saved. But for the sake of the elect, those days will be shortened. (Matthew 24:22 ULT)

Jesus was talking about a future time when very bad things would happen. He told what would happen if those days of trouble were to last a long time. He did this to show how bad those days will be—so bad that if they lasted a long time, no one would be saved. But then he clarified that God will shorten those days of trouble so that the elect (those he has chosen) will be saved.

Expressing Emotion About a Hypothetical Situation

People sometimes talk about hypothetical situations in order to express regrets and wishes. Regrets are about the past and wishes are about the present and future.

The Israelites said to them, “**If only we had died by Yahweh’s hand in the land of Egypt when we were sitting by the pots of meat and were eating bread to the full.** For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill our whole community with hunger.” (Exodus 16:3 ULT)

Here the Israelites were afraid that they would have to suffer and die of hunger in the wilderness, and so they wished that they had stayed in Egypt and died there with full stomachs. They were complaining, expressing regret that this had not happened.

I know what you have done, and that you are neither cold nor hot. **I wish that you were either cold or hot!** (Revelation 3:15 ULT)

Jesus wished that the people were either hot or cold, but they are neither. He was rebuking them, expressing anger at this.

Translation Strategies

Find out how people speaking your language show:

- that something could have happened, but did not.
- that something could be true now, but is not.
- that something could happen in the future, but will not unless something changes.
- that they wish for something, but it does not happen.
- that they regret that something did not happen.

Use your language's ways of showing these kinds of things.

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_hypo.

(Go back to: [Romans 2 General Notes](#); [Notes](#))

Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, “You are teasing me by telling me something that is not true.”)
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme.”)
- This house is under water. (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.”)
- We are painting the town red. (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.”)

This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

He **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided.”

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you would **come under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

The phrase “come under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house.”

Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

Purpose: An idiom is probably created in a culture somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

Examples From the Bible

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your **flesh and bone**.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

▮ The children of Israel went out **with a high hand**. (Exodus 14:8b ASV)

This means, “The Israelites went out defiantly.”

▮ the one who **lifts up my head** (Psalm 3:3b ULT)

This means, “the one who helps me.”

Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

- (1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
- (2) Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

▮ Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your **flesh and bone**.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

▮ Look, we all **belong to the same nation**.

▮ Then he **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

▮ He started to travel to Jerusalem, **determined to reach it**.

▮ I am not worthy that you would come **under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

▮ I am not worthy that you should enter **my house**.

- (2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

▮ Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

▮ **Be all ears** when I say these words to you.

▮ My **eyes grow dim** from grief. (Psalm 6:7a ULT)

▮ I am crying my **eyes out**

(Go back to: [Romans 2:14](#); [2:15](#); [3:12](#); [4:12](#); [4:24](#); [6:4](#); [6:9](#); [7:4](#); [8:4](#); [8:10](#); [8:11](#); [9:2](#); [9:17](#); [10:9](#); [12:16](#))

Irony

Description

Irony is a figure of speech in which the sense that the speaker intends to communicate is actually the opposite of the literal meaning of the words. Sometimes a person does this by using someone else's words, but in a way that communicates that he does not agree with them. People do this to emphasize how different something is from what it should be, or how someone else's belief about something is wrong or foolish. It is often humorous.

This page answers the question: *What is irony and how can I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Then Jesus answered and said to them, "People who are well do not have need of a physician, but those who have sickness. I did not come to call the righteous, but sinners to repentance."
(Luke 5:31-32 ULT)

When Jesus spoke of "righteous people," he was not referring to people who were truly righteous, but to people who wrongly believed that they were righteous. By using irony, Jesus communicated that they were wrong to think that they were better than others and did not need to repent.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

If someone does not realize that a speaker is using irony, he will think that the speaker actually believes what he is saying. He will understand the passage to mean the opposite of what it was intended to mean.

Examples From the Bible

How well you reject the commandment of God so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9b ULT)

Here Jesus praises the Pharisees for doing something that is obviously wrong. Through irony, he communicates the opposite of praise: He communicates that the Pharisees, who take great pride in keeping the commandments, are so far from God that they do not even recognize that their traditions are breaking God's commandments. The use of irony makes the Pharisee's sin more obvious and startling.

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. **"Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled."** (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

People worshiped idols as if their idols had knowledge or power, and Yahweh was angry at them for doing that. So he used irony and challenged their idols to tell what would happen in the future. He knew that the idols could not do this, but by speaking as if they could, he mocked the idols, making their inability more obvious, and rebuked the people for worshiping them.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?
Can you find the way back to their houses for them?
Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then; "the number of your days is so large!" (Job 38:20-21 ULT)

Job thought that he was wise. Yahweh used irony to show Job that he was not so wise. The two phrases in bold above are irony. They emphasize the opposite of what they say, because they are so obviously false. They emphasize that Job could not possibly answer God's questions about the creation of light because Job was not born until many, many years later.

Already you are satisfied! Already you have become rich! **You began to reign** apart from us, and I wish you really did reign, so that we also might reign with you. (1 Corinthians 4:8 ULT)

The Corinthians considered themselves to be very wise, self-sufficient, and not in need of any instruction from the Apostle Paul. Paul used irony, speaking as if he agreed with them, to show how proudly they were acting and how far from being wise they really were.

Translation Strategies

If the irony would be understood correctly in your language, translate it as it is stated. If not, here are some other strategies.

- (1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.
- (2) The irony is **not** found in the literal words of the speaker, but instead the true meaning is found in the opposite of the literal meaning of the speaker's words.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

How well you reject the commandment of God so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9a ULT)

You think that you are doing well when you reject God's commandment so you may keep your tradition!
You act like it is good to reject God's commandment so you may keep your tradition!

I did not come to call **the righteous**, but sinners to repentance. (Luke 5:32 ULT)

I did not come to call **people who think that they are righteous** to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance.

- (2) Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony.

How well you reject the commandment of God so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9a ULT)

You are doing a terrible thing when you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition!

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. "**Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.**" (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

'Present your case,' says Yahweh; 'present your best arguments for your idols,' says the King of Jacob. Your idols **cannot bring us their own arguments or come forward to declare to us what will happen** so we may know these things well. We cannot hear them because **they cannot**

speak to tell us their earlier predictive declarations, so we cannot reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?
Can you find the way back to their houses for them?

**Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;
the number of your days is so large!** (Job 38:20-21 ULT)

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? **You act like you know how light and darkness were created, as if you were there; as if you are as old as creation, but you are not!**

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Litotes](#)

(Go back to: [Romans 6:20](#))

Litotes

Description

Litotes is a figure of speech in which the speaker expresses a strong positive meaning by using two negative words or a negative word with a word that means the opposite of the meaning he intends. A few examples of negative words are “no,” “not,” “none,” and “never.” The opposite of “good” is “bad.” Someone could say that something is “not bad” to mean that it is extremely good.

This page answers the question: *What is litotes?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use litotes. People who speak those languages might not understand that a statement using litotes actually strengthens the positive meaning. Instead, they might think that it weakens or even cancels the positive meaning.

Examples From the Bible

For you yourselves know, brothers, that our coming to you was **not useless**, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was **very** useful.

Now when it became day, there was **no small disturbance** among the soldiers over what therefore had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a **lot** of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very agitated.)

But you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,
are **not the least** among the leaders of Judah,
for from you will come a ruler
who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULT)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a **very important city**.

Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

For you yourselves know, brothers, that our coming to you was **not useless**. (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

“For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you **did much good**.”

Now when it became day, there was **no small disturbance** among the soldiers over what therefore had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

“Now when it became day, there was **great excitement** among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter.”

or:

“Now when it became day, the soldiers were **very concerned** because of what had happened to Peter.”

(Go back to: [Romans 1:16](#); [2:11](#); [4:19](#); [13:4](#))

Metaphor

Description

A metaphor is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say, “The girl I love is a red rose.”

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer’s task is to understand in what way they are alike.

This page answers the question: *What is a metaphor and how can I translate a Bible passage that has one?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[Simile](#)

The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about “the girl I love.” This is the **Topic**. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and “a red rose.” The red rose is the **Image** to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both beautiful. This is the **Idea** that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the **Point of Comparison**.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The **Topic**, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The **Image**, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The **Idea**, the abstract concept or quality that the physical **Image** brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the **Image** and the **Topic** are similar. Often, the **Idea** of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the **Idea** himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a metaphor is a figure of speech that uses a physical **Image** to apply an abstract **Idea** to the speaker’s **Topic**.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a **Topic**, with at least one **Point of Comparison (Idea)** between the **Topic** and the **Image**. Often in metaphors, the **Topic** and the **Image** are explicitly stated, but the **Idea** is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the **Topic** and the **Image** and to figure out for themselves the **Idea** that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a “passive” metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being “active.” Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these “dead metaphors.” Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms “table **leg**,” “family **tree**,” “book **leaf**” (meaning a page

in a book), or the word “crane” (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word “hand” to represent “power,” using the word “face” to represent “presence,” and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were “clothing.”

Patterned Pairs of Concepts Acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction “up” (the Image) often represents the concepts of “more” or “better” (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going **up**,” “A **highly** intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The temperature is going **down**,” and “I am feeling very **low**.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world’s languages because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat **up**.” More is spoken of as up.
- “Let us **go ahead** with our debate.” Doing what was planned is spoken of as walking or advancing.
- “You **defend** your theory well.” Argument is spoken of as war.
- “A **flow** of words.” Words are spoken of as liquids.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see [Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns](#) and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

Active Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. Metaphors make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

But for you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.
(Malachi 4:2a ULT)

Here, God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

And he said to them, “Go and tell that fox ...” (Luke 13:32a ULT)

Here, “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors require the translator's special care to make a correct translation. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.

Jesus said to them, "I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty." (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is "I" (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is "bread." Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is "life." In this case, Jesus stated the central Idea of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus, misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so, not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

Examples From the Bible

Listen to this word, **you cows of Bashan**, (Amos 4:1q ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria ("you," the Topic) as if they were cows (the Image). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshiped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; **we are the clay. You are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The Topic(s) are “we” and “you,” and the Image(s) are “clay” and “potter.” The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The Idea being expressed by the comparison between the potter’s clay and “us” is that **neither the clay nor God’s people have a right to complain about what they are becoming.**

Jesus said to them, “Take heed and beware of **the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.**”
The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we did not take bread.”
(Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the **Idea** in the simplest way preferred by your language.

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible.** If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.” See [Simile](#).

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the **Idea**) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.

(8) If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the **Idea** plainly without using a metaphor.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

Then, see, one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **fell at his feet**. (Mark 5:22 ULT)

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **immediately bowed down in front of him**.

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

But Jesus said to them, "He wrote this commandment to you because of your **hardness of heart**." (Mark 10:5 ULT)

It was because of your **hard hearts** that he wrote you this law.

We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as."

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we **are the clay**. You **are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are **like** clay. You are **like** a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14b ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to **kick against a pointed stick**.

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **clay**. You are our **potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

"And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **wood**. You are our **carver**; and we all are the work of your hand."

"And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **string**. You are the **weaver**; and we all are the work of your hand."

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; **He is my rock**. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock **under which I can hide from my enemies**. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You **fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick**.

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

I will make you to become **fishers of men**. (Mark 1:17b ULT)

I will make you to become **people who gather men**.
Now you gather fish. I will make you **gather people**.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns.

(Go back to: [Romans 1:13](#); [1:14](#); [1:20](#); [1:21](#); [2:5](#); [2:15](#); [2:17](#); [2:19](#); [2:20](#); [3:13](#); [3:15](#); [4:14](#); [5:5](#); [6:2](#); [6:4](#); [6:5](#); [6:6](#); [6:11](#); [6:17](#); [6:18](#); [6:20](#); [6:22](#); [Notes](#); [7:2](#); [7:4](#); [7:5](#); [7:10](#); [7:11](#); [7:22](#); [7:24](#); [7:25](#); [Notes](#); [8:2](#); [8:4](#); [8:12](#); [8:13](#); [8:17](#); [8:21](#); [8:22](#); [8:23](#); [8:27](#); [Notes](#); [9:4](#); [9:8](#); [9:15](#); [9:16](#); [9:20](#); [9:22](#); [9:23](#); [9:33](#); [11:8](#); [11:9](#); [11:10](#); [11:16](#); [11:17](#); [11:18](#); [11:19](#); [11:20](#); [11:21](#); [11:22](#); [11:23](#); [11:24](#); [11:25](#); [11:26](#); [11:27](#); [11:29](#); [11:32](#); [Notes](#); [12:1](#); [12:2](#); [12:4](#); [12:5](#); [12:6](#); [12:20](#); [13:7](#); [13:11](#); [13:12](#); [13:13](#); [13:14](#); [14:4](#); [14:15](#); [15:16](#); [15:20](#); [15:28](#); [16:5](#); [16:13](#); [16:17](#); [16:18](#); [16:20](#); [16:25](#))

Metonymy

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A metonym is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

... and **the blood** of Jesus his Son cleanses us from every sin. (1 John 1:7b ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

And he took **the cup** in the same way after supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you." (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not familiar with metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples From the Bible

The Lord God will give to him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship," or "reign." This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

Then immediately his **mouth** was opened (Luke 1:64a ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

- (1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
- (2) Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

And he took the cup in the same way after the supper, saying, “**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.” (Luke 22:20 ULT)

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “**The wine in this cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.”

This verse also contains a second metonym: The cup, (representing the wine it contains) also represents the new covenant made with the blood Christ shed for us.

- (2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

The Lord God will give him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

“The Lord God will give him **the kingly authority** of his father, David.”
or:
“The Lord God will **make him king** like his ancestor, King David.”

Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

“Who warned you to flee from God’s coming **punishment**?”

To learn about some common metonymies, see [Biblical Imagery — Common Metonymies](#).

(Go back to: [Romans 1:5](#); [1:18](#); [1:21](#); [2:5](#); [2:8](#); [2:15](#); [2:24](#); [2:29](#); [3:5](#); [3:6](#); [3:13](#); [3:14](#); [3:16](#); [3:23](#); [3:25](#); [3:30](#); [4:9](#); [5:5](#); [5:9](#); [6:6](#); [6:17](#); [6:19](#); [7:18](#); [8:27](#); [8:35](#); [9:8](#); [9:17](#); [9:33](#); [10:1](#); [10:6](#); [10:8](#); [10:9](#); [10:10](#); [10:13](#); [10:15](#); [10:19](#); [11:9](#); [11:10](#); [11:15](#); [11:26](#); [11:34](#); [12:2](#); [12:19](#); [13:4](#); [13:14](#); [14:10](#); [15:6](#); [15:8](#); [15:9](#); [15:12](#); [16:18](#))

Parallelism

Description

Parallelism is a poetic device in which two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. The following are some of the different kinds of parallelism.

- The second clause or phrase means the same as the first. This is called synonymous parallelism.
- The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
- The second completes what is said in the first.
- The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

This article will only discuss synonymous parallelism, the kind in which the two parallel phrases mean the same thing, because that is the kind that presents a problem for translation. Note that we use the term "synonymous parallelism" for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term "**doublet**" for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

In the poetry of the original languages, synonymous parallelism has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and raises it above the ordinary way of speaking.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or, since it is in the Bible, they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it would be confusing, rather than beautiful. They would not understand that the repetition of the idea in different words serves to emphasize the idea.

Examples From the Bible

Your word is a lamp to my feet
and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULT)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live. That is the single idea. The words "lamp" and "light" are similar in meaning because they refer to light. The words "my feet" and "my path" are related because they refer to a person walking. Walking is a metaphor for living.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything. "To rule over" is the same idea as putting things "under his feet," and "the works of your [God's] hands" is the same idea as "all things."

This page answers the question: *What is parallelism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Yahweh sees everything a person does
and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The first phrase and the second phrase mean the same thing. There are three ideas that are the same between these two phrases. "Sees" corresponds to "watches," "everything...does" corresponds to "all the paths...takes," and "a person" corresponds to "he."

Praise Yahweh, all you nations;
exalt him, all you peoples! (Psalm 117:1 ULT)

Both parts of this verse tell people everywhere to praise Yahweh. The words 'Praise' and 'exalt' mean the same thing. The words 'Yahweh' and 'him' refer to the same person. The terms 'all you nations' and 'all you peoples' refer to the same people.

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people,
and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2b ULT)

The two parts of this verse say that Yahweh has a serious disagreement with his people, Israel. These are not two different disagreements or two different groups of people.

Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

- (1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
- (2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as "truly" or "certainly."
- (3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like "very," "completely," or "all."

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)

Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.

Until now you have deceived me with your lies.
Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The phrase "all the paths he takes" is a metaphor for "all he does."

Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.
For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2 ULT)

This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.

(2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands; you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

You have certainly made him to rule over everything that you have created.

(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)

All you have done is lie to me.

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Personification](#)

(Go back to: [Romans 2:8](#); [2:19](#); [2:29](#); [3:4](#); [4:7](#); [10:18](#); [12:19](#))

Personification

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1a ULT)

Or sin:

Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT)

People also use personification because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things such as wealth as if they were relationships between people.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

In each case, the purpose of the personification is to highlight a certain characteristic of the non-human thing. As in metaphor, the reader needs to think of the way that the thing is like a certain kind of person.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples From the Bible

You cannot **serve** God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom **call** out? Does not Understanding **raise her voice**? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they were woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

- (1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.
- (2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.
- (3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

This page answers the question: *What is personification?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.

Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — God speaks of sin as if it were a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

Sin is at your door, **waiting to attack you**.

(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.

Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — This can be translated with the word “as.”

Sin is crouching at the door, **just as a wild animal does as it waits to attack a person..**

(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Even the **winds and the sea obey him**. (Matthew 8:27b ULT) — The men speak of the “wind and the sea” as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus, just as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

He even **controls the winds and the sea**.

NOTE: We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics) because the translation strategies for them are the same.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Apostrophe](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: [Romans 2:2](#); [3:19](#); [3:21](#); [4:3](#); [5:5](#); [5:12](#); [5:14](#); [5:17](#); [5:20](#); [5:21](#); [6:9](#); [6:12](#); [6:14](#); [6:16](#); [7:7](#); [7:8](#); [7:9](#); [7:11](#); [7:13](#); [7:17](#); [7:20](#); [7:21](#); [8:3](#); [8:6](#); [8:19](#); [8:20](#); [9:17](#); [10:6](#); [10:8](#); [10:11](#); [10:18](#); [11:2](#); [12:21](#); [13:10](#); [16:19](#))

Pronouns — When to Use Them

Description

When we talk or write, we use pronouns to refer to people or things without always having to repeat the noun or name. Usually, the first time we refer to someone in a story, we use a descriptive phrase or a name. The next time we might refer to that person with a simple noun or by name. After that we might refer to him simply with a pronoun as long as we think that our listeners will be able to understand easily to whom the pronoun refers.

This page answers the question: *How do I decide whether or not to use a pronoun?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

Now there was **a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**. **This man** came to Jesus at night. Jesus replied and said to **him** ... (John 3:1, 2a, 3a ULT)

In John 3, Nicodemus is first referred to with noun phrases and his name. Then he is referred to with the noun phrase “this man.” Then he is referred to with the pronoun “him.”

Each language has its rules and exceptions to this usual way of referring to people and things.

- In some languages, the first time something is referred to in a paragraph or chapter, it is referred to with a noun rather than a pronoun.
- The main character is the person whom a story is about. In some languages, after a main character is introduced in a story, he is usually referred to with a pronoun. Some languages have special pronouns that refer only to the main character.
- In some languages, marking on the verb helps people know who the subject is. (See Verbs.) In some of these languages, listeners rely on this marking to help them understand who the subject is. Speakers will use a pronoun, noun phrase, or proper name only when they want either to emphasize or to clarify who the subject is.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- If translators use a pronoun at the wrong time for their language, readers might not know about whom the writer is talking.
- If translators too frequently refer to a main character by name, listeners of some languages might not realize that the person is a main character, or they might think that there is a new character with the same name.
- If translators use pronouns, nouns, or names at the wrong time, people might think that there is some special emphasis on the person or thing to which it refers.

Examples From the Bible

The example below occurs at the beginning of a chapter. In some languages it might not be clear to whom the pronouns refer.

Then Jesus entered into the synagogue again, and there was a man who had a withered hand. Some people watched **him** closely to see if **he** would heal **him** on the Sabbath so that they might accuse **him**. (Mark 3:1-2 ULT)

In the example below, two men are named in the first sentence. It might not be clear whom “he” in the second sentence refers to.

Now after some days had passed, **King Agrippa** and Bernice came down to Caesarea to pay their respects to **Festus**. After **he** had been there for many days, Festus presented to the king the things concerning Paul. (Acts 25:13-14)

Jesus is the main character of the book of Matthew, but in the verses below he is referred to four times by name. This may lead speakers of some languages to think that Jesus is not the main character. Or it might lead them to think that there is more than one person named Jesus in this story. Or it might lead them to think that there is some kind of emphasis on him, even though there is no emphasis.

At that time **Jesus** went on the Sabbath day through the grainfields. **His** disciples were hungry and began to pluck heads of grain and eat them. But when the Pharisees saw that, they said to **Jesus**, “See, your disciples do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath.” But **Jesus** said to them, “Have you never read what David did, when he was hungry, and the men who were with him?” Then **Jesus** left from there and went into their synagogue. (Matthew 12:1-3,9 ULT)

Translation Strategies

- (1) If it would not be clear to your readers to whom or to what a pronoun refers, use a name or a noun.
- (2) If repeating a noun or name would lead people to think that a main character is not a main character, or that the writer is talking about more than one person with that name, or that there is some kind of emphasis on someone when there is no emphasis, use a pronoun instead.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If it would not be clear to your readers to whom or to what a pronoun refers, use a name or a noun.

Again **he** walked into the synagogue, and a man with a withered hand was there. Some Pharisees watched **him** to see if **he** would heal the man on the Sabbath. (Mark 3:1-2)

Again **Jesus** walked into the synagogue, and a man with a withered hand was there. Some Pharisees watched **Jesus** to see if **he** would heal the man on the Sabbath.

- (2) If repeating a noun or name would lead people to think that a main character is not a main character, or that the writer is talking about more than one person with that name, or that there is some kind of emphasis on someone when there is no emphasis, use a pronoun instead.

At that time **Jesus** went on the Sabbath day through the grainfields. **His** disciples were hungry and began to pluck heads of grain and eat them. But when the Pharisees saw that, they said to **Jesus**, “See, your disciples do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath.” But **Jesus** said to them, “Have you never read what David did, when he was hungry, and the men who were with him?” Then **Jesus** left from there and went into their synagogue. (Matthew 12:1-3,9 ULT)

This may be translated as:

At that time **Jesus** went on the Sabbath day through the grainfields. **His** disciples were hungry and began to pluck heads of grain and eat them. But when the Pharisees saw that, they said to **him**, “See, your disciples do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath.” But **he** said to them, “Have you never read what David did, when he was hungry, and the men who were with him?” Then **he** left from there and went into their synagogue.

(Go back to: [Romans 11:36](#))

Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

This page answers the question: *What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes\]\]](#)

Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

But those who stood by said, **“Are you insulting the high priest of God?”** (Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking if he was insulting God's high priest. Rather, they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purposes: of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

Examples From the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that, since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11a ULT)

Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord would come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father who is in heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULT)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden ... (Luke 13:18b-19a ULT)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was about to compare the kingdom of God to something. In this case, he compared the kingdom of God to a mustard seed.

Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Add the answer after the question.
- (2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
- (3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
- (4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Add the answer after the question.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? **Of course not!** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? **None of you would do that!**

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed. (Luke 13:18-19a ULT)

This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed ...

Are you insulting the high priest of God? (Acts 23:4b ULT) (Acts 23:4 ULT)

You should not insult God's high priest!

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11a ULT)

I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!

And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)

You still rule the kingdom of Israel, **do you not?**

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, **would you give him a stone?**

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number

(Go back to: [Romans 2 General Notes](#); 2:3; 2:4; 2:21; 2:22; 2:23; 2:26; Notes; 3:1; 3:3; 3:5; 3:6; 3:7; 3:8; 3:9; 3:27; 3:29; 3:31; Notes; 4:1; 4:3; 4:9; 4:10; Notes; 6:1; 6:2; 6:3; 6:15; 6:16; 6:21; 7:1; 7:7; 7:13; 7:24; 8:24; 8:31; 8:32; 8:33; 8:34; 8:35; 9:14; 9:19; 9:20; 9:21; 9:30; 9:32; Notes; 10:6; 10:7; 10:8; 10:14; 10:16; 10:18; 10:19; 11:1; 11:2; 11:4; 11:7; 11:11; 11:15; 11:34; 11:35; 13:3; 14:4; 14:10)

Simile

Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. The simile focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as,” or “than.”

This page answers the question: *What is a simile?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were troubled and discouraged, **like sheep not having a shepherd**. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, so be as wise **as the serpents** and harmless **as the doves**. (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep; Jesus' enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

God's word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person's flesh. God's word is very effective in showing what is in a person's heart and thoughts.

Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people's attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with both of the items being compared.

Examples From the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, **as a good soldier** of Christ Jesus. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULT)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

Just as the lightning flashing from a place under the sky shines to another place under the sky, so will the Son of Man be. (Luke 17:24b ULT)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But in context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

- (1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
- (2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.
- (3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**. (Matthew 10:16a ULT) — This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.

See, I send **you out among wicked people** and you will be in danger from them **as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves**.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

For the word of God is living and active and **more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword**.

- (2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, (Matthew 10:16a ULT) — If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

See, I send you out **as chickens in the midst of wild dogs**.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)

How often I wanted to gather your children together, **as a mother closely watches over her infants**, but you refused!

If you have faith **as a grain of mustard** ... (Matthew 17:20)

If you have faith even as small **as a tiny seed**,

- (3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**. (Matthew 10:16a ULT)

See, I send you out among **people who will want to harm you**.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)

How often I wanted to **protect you**, but you refused!

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metaphor](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: [Romans 6:4](#); [8:36](#); [9:27](#))

Symbolic Action

Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their heads up and down to mean “yes” or turn their heads from side to side to mean “no.” Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

This page answers the question: *What is a symbolic action and how do I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means “I am surprised” or “What did you say?” In other cultures it means “yes.”

In the Bible, people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible, we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture today.

You (the translator) need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in your own culture, then you need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

Examples From the Bible

And behold, a man came whose name was Jairus, and he was a ruler of the synagogue. And **falling at the feet of Jesus**, he begged him to come to his house. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

Look, I am standing at the door and am knocking. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come into him and will eat with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

- (1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.
- (2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.

(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Jairus showed Jesus great respect.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT) — Since Jairus actually did this, you should not substitute an action from your own culture.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT) — Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.

Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

(Go back to: [Romans 8:34](#); [10:21](#))

Synecdoche

Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

■ **My soul** magnifies the Lord. (Luke 1:46b ULT)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul,” which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

■ So **the Pharisees** said to him, “Look, why are they doing that which is not lawful?” (Mark 2:24a ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example From the Bible

■ Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person’s accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

■ **“My soul** magnifies the Lord.” (Luke 1:46b ULT)

■ **“I** magnify the Lord.”

So **the Pharisees** said to him ... (Mark 2:24a ULT)

■ **A representative of the Pharisees** said to him ...

Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

This page answers the question: *What is a synecdoche, and how can I translate such a thing into my language?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metonymy](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bit-part2]]

(Go back to: [Romans 1:24](#); [2:9](#); [2:28](#); [2:29](#); [3:15](#); [3:18](#); [3:19](#); [6:12](#); [6:13](#); [6:19](#); [10:10](#); [12:1](#); [13:1](#); [14:11](#); [15:26](#))

Textual Variants

Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However, people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, or some mistook one word for another that looked like it. Occasionally, they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles include some of these sentences that were added. In the ULT, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

This page answers the question: *Why does the ULT have missing or added verses, and should I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-source-text\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-manuscripts\]\]](#)

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULT based the ULT on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. Because people who use the ULT may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULT translators have sometimes included information about some of the differences between them, either in the ULT footnotes or in the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULT and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULT. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

Examples From the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULT has a footnote about verse 11.

¹⁰ See that you do not despise one of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. ¹¹ [1]

[1] Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11: **For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.**

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest manuscripts. It has been included in the ULT, but it is marked off with square brackets ([]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

53 [Then everyone went to his own house ... 11 She said, "No one, Lord." Jesus said, "Neither do I condemn you. Go and sin no more."] [2]

[2] Some ancient manuscripts include John 7:53-8:11

Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULT or another version that you have access to.

- (1) Translate the verses as they are in the ULT and include the footnote that the ULT provides.
- (2) Translate the verses as another version has them, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:14-16 ULT, which has a footnote about verse 16.

¹⁴ He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. ¹⁵ There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man.” ¹⁶ ^[1]

^[1] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 16: **If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.**

(1) Translate the verses as they are in the ULT and include the footnote that the ULT provides.

¹⁴ He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. ¹⁵ There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man.” ¹⁶ ^[1]

^[1] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 16: **If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.**

(2) Translate the verses as another version has them, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

¹⁴ He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. ¹⁵ There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man. ¹⁶ If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.” ^[1]

^[1] Some ancient manuscripts do not include verse 16.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-chapverse\]\]](#)
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-manuscripts\]\]](#)
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-terms\]\]](#)
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-original\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Introduction to Romans](#))

Translate Unknowns

While working to translate the Bible, you (the translator) might find yourself asking: “How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?”

This page answers the question: *How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The unfoldingWord® Translation Words pages and the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

They said to him, “We have nothing here except five loaves of **bread** and two fish.” (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread and do not know what it is.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God’s commands and historical facts accurately.

Examples From the Bible

So I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals**. (Jeremiah 9:11a ULT)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep’s clothing, but inwardly they are ravenous **wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

They offered him wine mixed with **myrrh**, but he did not drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

... to him who made **great lights** ... (Psalm 136:7a ULT)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

Your sins ... will be white like **snow**. (Isaiah 1:18b ULT)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

- (1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
- (2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
- (3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
- (4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.
- (5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but inwardly they are **ravenous wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but **inwardly they are very hungry and dangerous animals**.

"Ravenous wolves" is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See [Translating Metaphors](#).)

"We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish." (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

We have nothing here except five **loaves of baked grain seeds** and two fish.

(2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

Your sins ... will be white like **snow**. (Isaiah 1:18b ULT) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.

Your sins ... will be white like **milk**.

Your sins ... will be white like **the moon**.

(3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **myrrh**. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT) — People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word “medicine.”

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **a medicine called myrrh**. But he refused to drink it.

“We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish.” (Matthew 14:17 ULT) — People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).

We have nothing here except five loaves of **baked crushed seed bread** and two fish.

(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11a ULT)

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **wild dogs**

“We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish.” (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

We have nothing here except five **loaves of baked food** and two fish.

(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

... to him who made **great lights** ... (Psalm 136:7a ULT)

to him who made **the sun and the moon**

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate\]\]](#)

[How to Translate Names](#)

(Go back to: [Romans 8:15](#))

Translating Son and Father

Door43 supports Bible translations that represent these concepts when they refer to God.

Biblical Witness

“Father” and “Son” are names that God calls himself in the Bible.

The Bible shows that God called Jesus his Son:

After he was baptized, Jesus came up immediately from the water, and ... a voice came out of the heavens saying, **“This is my beloved Son.** I am very pleased with him.” (Matthew 3:16-17 ULT)

The Bible shows that Jesus called God his Father:

Jesus ... said, “I praise you **Father**, Lord of heaven and earth ... no one knows the **Son** except the **Father**, and no one knows the **Father** except the **Son.**” (Matthew 11:25a, 27b ULT) (See also: John 6:26-57)

Christians have found that “Father” and “Son” are the ideas that most essentially describe the eternal relationship of the First and Second Persons of the Trinity to each other. The Bible indeed refers to them in various ways, but no other terms reflect the eternal love and intimacy between these Persons, nor the interdependent eternal relationship between them.

Jesus referred to God in the following terms:

Baptize them into **the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit.** (Matthew 28:19b ULT)

The intimate, loving relationship between the Father and the Son is eternal, just as they are eternal. The Father **loves** the Son. (See John 3:35-36; 5:19-20 ULT)

I love the Father, and just as the Father commanded me, thus I do. (John 14:31 ULT)

No one knows who the Son is except the Father, and who the Father is except the Son. (Luke 10:22b ULT)

The terms “Father” and “Son” also communicate that the Father and the Son are of the same essence; they are both eternal God.

Jesus said, “Father, ... glorify your Son so that the Son will glorify you ... I glorified you on the earth ... Now Father, glorify me ... with the glory that **I had with you before the world was made.**” (John 17:1, 4a, 5 ULT)

But in these last days, he [God the Father] has spoken to us through a Son, whom he appointed to be the heir of all things. Through him, he also made the universe. He is the brightness of God’s glory and **the very exact representation of his being.** He holds everything together by the word of his power. (Hebrews 1:2-3a ULT)

Jesus said to him, “I have been with you for so long and you still do not know me, Philip? **Whoever has seen me has seen the Father.** How can you say, ‘Show us the Father?’” (John 14:9 ULT)

This page answers the question: *Why are these concepts important in referring to God?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/guidelines-faithful\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/guidelines-sonofgod\]\]](#)

Human Relationships

Human fathers and sons are not perfect, but the Bible still uses those terms for the Father and Son, who are perfect.

Just as today, human father-son relationships during Bible times were never as loving or perfect as the relationship between Jesus and his Father. But this does not mean that the translator should avoid the concepts of father and son. The Scriptures use these terms to refer to God, the perfect Father and Son, as well as to sinful human fathers and sons. In referring to God as Father and Son, choose words in your language that are widely used to refer to a human "father" and "son." In this way you will communicate that God the Father and God the Son are of the same divine essence (they are both God), just as a human father and son are of the same human essence (they are both human and share the same human characteristics).

Translation Strategies

(1) Think through all the possibilities within your language to translate the words "son" and "father." Determine which words in your language best represent the divine "Son" and "Father."

(2) If your language has more than one word for "son," use the word that has the closest meaning to "only son" (or "first son" if necessary).

(3) If your language has more than one word for "father," use the word that has the closest meaning to "birth father," rather than "adoptive father."

(See *God the Father and Son of God* pages in [unfoldingWord® Translation Words](#) for help translating "Father" and "Son.")

(Go back to: [Romans 1:3](#); [1:7](#); [1:9](#); [5:10](#); [8:3](#); [8:29](#); [8:32](#))



unfoldingWord® Translation Words

Version 27

Abraham, Abram

Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to "Abraham."

- The name "Abram" means "exalted father."
- "Abraham" means "father of many."
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Canaan, Chaldea, [Sarah](#), [Isaac](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 3:8
- Genesis 11:29-30
- Genesis 21:4
- Genesis 22:2
- James 2:23
- Matthew 1:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:6** When **Abram** arrived in Canaan, God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **5:4** Then God changed **Abram's** name to **Abraham**, which means "father of many."
- **5:5** About a year later, when **Abraham** was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's son.
- **5:6** When Isaac was a young man, God tested **Abraham's** faith by saying, "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."
- **6:1** When **Abraham** was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, **Abraham** sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **6:4** After a long time, **Abraham** died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- **21:2** God promised **Abraham** that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0087, H0085, G00110

(Go back to: [Romans 4:1](#); [4:2](#); [4:3](#); [4:9](#); [4:12](#); [4:13](#); [4:16](#); [9:7](#); [11:1](#))

abyss, bottomless pit

Definition:

The term “abyss” refers to a very large, deep hole or chasm that has no bottom.

- In the Bible, “the abyss” is a place of punishment.
- For example, when Jesus commanded evil spirits to come out of a man, they begged him not to send them to the abyss.
- The word “abyss” could also be translated as “bottomless pit” or “deep chasm.”
- This term should be translated differently from “hades,” “sheol,” or “hell.”

(See Also: Hades, hell, punish)

Bible References:

- Luke 8:30-31
- Romans 10:7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G00120, G54210

(Go back to: [Romans 10:7](#))

accuse, accused, accuser, accusation

Definition:

The terms “accuse” and “accusation” refer to blaming someone for doing something wrong. A person who accuses others is an “accuser.”

- A false accusation is when a charge against someone is not true, as when Jesus was falsely accused of wrongdoing by the leaders of the Jews.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Satan is called “the accuser.”

Bible References:

- Acts 19:40
- Hosea 4:4
- Jeremiah 2:9-11
- Luke 6:6-8
- Romans 8:33

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3198, H6818, G14580, G21470, G25960, G27240

(Go back to: [Romans 2:15](#); [8:33](#))

Adam

Facts:

Adam was the first person whom God created. He and his wife Eve were made in the image of God.

- God formed Adam from dirt and breathed life into him.
- Adam's name sounds similar to the Hebrew word for "red dirt" or "ground."
- The name "Adam" is the same as the Old Testament word for "mankind" or "human being."
- All people are descendants of Adam and Eve.
- Adam and Eve disobeyed God. This separated them from God and caused sin and death to come into the world.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [death](#), [descendant](#), Eve, image of God, [life](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 2:14
- Genesis 3:17
- Genesis 5:1
- Genesis 11:5
- Luke 3:38
- Romans 5:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:9** Then God said, "Let us make human beings in our image to be like us."
- **1:10** This man's name was **Adam**. God planted a garden where **Adam** could live, and put him there to care for it.
- **1:12** Then God said, "It is not good for man to be alone." But none of the animals could be **Adam's** helper.
- **2:11** And God clothed **Adam** and Eve with animal skins.
- **2:12** So God sent **Adam** and Eve away from the beautiful garden.
- **49:8** When **Adam** and Eve sinned, it affected all of their descendants.
- **50:16** Because **Adam** and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God cursed it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0120, G00760

(Go back to: [Romans 5:14](#))

admonish, warned, aware

Definition:

The term “admonish” means to firmly warn or advise someone.

- Usually “admonish” means to advise someone not to do something.
- In the body of Christ, believers are taught to admonish each other to avoid sin and to live holy lives.
- The word “admonish” could be translated as “encourage not to sin” or “urge someone to not sin.”

Bible References:

- Nehemiah 9:32-34

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2094, H5749, G35600, G38670, G55370

(Go back to: [Romans 15:14](#))

adoption, adopt, adopted

Definition:

The terms “adopt” and “adoption” refer to the process of someone legally becoming the child of people who are not his biological parents.

- The Bible uses “adoption” and “adopt” in a figurative way to describe how God causes people to be part of his family, making them his spiritual sons and daughters.
- As adopted children, God makes believers to be co-heirs with Jesus Christ, giving them all of the privileges of sons and daughters of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with a term that the language of translation uses to describe this special parent-child relationship. Make sure it is understood that this has a figurative or spiritual meaning.
- The phrase “experience adoption as sons” could be translated as “be adopted by God as his children” or “become God’s (spiritual) children.”
- To “wait for the adoption of sons” could be translated as “look forward to becoming God’s children” or “wait expectantly for God to receive as children.”
- The phrase “adopt them” could be translated as “receive them as his own children” or “make them his own (spiritual) children.”

(See also: [heir](#), [inherit](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Ephesians 1:5
- Galatians 4:3-5
- Romans 8:14-15
- Romans 8:23
- Romans 9:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G52060

(Go back to: [Romans 8 General Notes](#); [8:15](#); [8:23](#); [9:4](#))

adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress

Definition:

The term “adultery” refers to a sin that occurs when a married person has sexual relations with someone who is not that person’s spouse. Both of them are guilty of adultery. The term “adulterous” describes this kind of behavior or any person who commits this sin.

- The term “adulterer” refers generally to any person who commits adultery.
- Sometimes the term “adulteress” is used to specify that it was a woman who committed adultery.
- Adultery breaks the promises that a husband and wife made to each other in their covenant of marriage.
- God commanded the Israelites to not commit adultery.

Translation Suggestions:

- If the target language does not have one word that means “adultery,” this term could be translated with a phrase such as “having sexual relations with someone else’s wife” or “being intimate with another person’s spouse.”
- Some languages may have an indirect way of talking about adultery, such as “sleeping with someone else’s spouse” or “being unfaithful to one’s wife.” (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: [commit](#), [covenant](#), [sexual immorality](#), sleep with, [faithful](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 20:14
- Hosea 4:1-2
- Luke 16:18
- Matthew 5:28
- Matthew 12:39
- Revelation 2:22

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:6** “Do not commit **adultery**.”
- **28:2** Do not commit **adultery**.
- **34:7** “The religious leader prayed like this, ‘Thank you, God, that I am not a sinner like other men—such as robbers, unjust men, **adulterers**, or even like that tax collector.’”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5003, H5004, G34280, G34290, G34300, G34310, G34320

(Go back to: [Romans 2:22](#); [7:3](#); [13:9](#))

adversary, enemy

Definition:

An “adversary” is a person (or group of people) who is opposed to someone else. The term “enemy” has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose or harm another person.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an “adversary” of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an “adversary” and an “enemy.”
- The term “adversary” may be translated as “opponent” or “enemy,” but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See also: [Satan](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 5:14
- Isaiah 9:11
- Job 6:23
- Lamentations 4:12
- Luke 12:59
- Matthew 13:25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G04760, G04800, G21890, G21900, G52270

(Go back to: [Romans 5:10](#); [11:28](#); [12:20](#))

advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels

Definition:

The terms “counsel” and “advice” have the same meaning and refer to helping someone decide wisely about what to do in a certain situation. A wise “counselor” or “advisor” is someone who gives advice or counsel that will help a person make right choices.

- Kings often have official advisors or counselors to help them decide important matters that affect the people they are ruling.
- Sometimes the advice or counsel that is given is not good. Evil advisors may urge a king to take action or make a decree that will harm him or his people.
- Depending on the context, “advice” or “counsel” could also be translated as “help in deciding” or “warnings” or “exhortations” or “guidance.”
- The action, to “counsel” could be translated as to “advise” or to “make suggestions” or to “exhort.”
- Note that “counsel” is a different word than “council,” which refers to a group of people.

(See also: [exhort](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [wise](#))

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1697, H1847, H1875, H1884, H1907, H3272, H3289, H3982, H4156, H4431, H5475, H5779, H6440, H6963, H6098, H7592, H8458, G10110, G10120, G11060, G48230, G48250

(Go back to: [Romans 11:34](#))

age, aged

Definition:

The term “age” refers to the number of years a person has lived. It also used to refer generally to a time period.

- Other words used to express an extended period of time include “era” and “season.”
- Jesus refers to “this age” as the present time when evil, sin, and disobedience fill the earth.
- There will be a future age when righteousness will reign over a new heaven and a new earth.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “age” could also be translated as “era” or “number of years old” or “time period” or “time.”
- The phrase “at a very old age” could be translated as “at many years old” or “when he was very old” or “when he had lived a very long time.”
- The phrase “this present evil age” means “during this time right now when people are very evil.”

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:28
- 1 Corinthians 2:7
- Hebrews 6:5
- Job 5:26

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G01650, G10740

(Go back to: [Romans 1:25](#); [9:5](#); [11:36](#); [12:2](#); [16:25](#); [16:27](#))

altar

Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: altar of incense, [false god](#), grain offering, [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 8:20
- Genesis 22:9
- James 2:21
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 5:23
- Matthew 23:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **5:8** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- **13:9** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- **16:6** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G10410, G23790

(Go back to: [Romans 11:3](#))

amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, dumbfounded

Definition:

All these terms refer to being very surprised because of something extraordinary that happened.

- Some of these words are translations of Greek expressions that mean “struck with amazement” or “standing outside of (oneself).” These expressions show how very surprised or shocked the person was feeling. Other languages might also have ways to express this.
- Usually the event that caused the wonder and amazement was a miracle, something only God could do.
- The meaning of these terms can also include feelings of confusion because what happened was totally unexpected.
- Other ways to translate these words could be “extremely surprised” or “very shocked.”
- Related words include “marvelous” (amazing, wonderful), “amazement,” and “astonishment.”
- In general, these terms are positive and express that the people were happy about what had happened.

(See also: [miracle](#), [sign](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 8:9-11
- Acts 9:20-22
- Galatians 1:6
- Mark 2:10-12
- Matthew 7:28
- Matthew 15:29-31
- Matthew 19:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0926, H2865, H3820, H4159, H6313, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H8074, H8429, H8539, H8540, H8541, G06390, G15680, G15690, G16050, G16110, G18390, G22840, G22850, G22960, G22970, G22980, G40230, G45920, G50590

(**Go back to:** [Romans 15:19](#))

amen, truly

Definition:

The term “amen” is a word used to emphasize or call attention to what a person has said. It is often used at the end of a prayer. Sometimes it is translated as “truly.”

- When used at the end of a prayer, “amen” communicates agreement with the prayer or expresses a desire that the prayer be fulfilled.
- In his teaching, Jesus used “amen” to emphasize the truth of what he said. He often followed that by “and I say to you” to introduce another teaching that related to the previous teaching.
- When Jesus uses “amen” this way, some English versions (and the ULT) translate this as “verily” or “truly.”
- Another word meaning “truly” is sometimes translated as “surely” or “certainly” and is also used to emphasize what the speaker is saying.

Translation Suggestions:

- Consider whether the target language has a special word or phrase that is used to emphasize something that has been said.
- When used at the end of a prayer or to confirm something, “amen” could be translated as “let it be so” or “may this happen” or “that is true.”
- When Jesus says, “truly I tell you,” this could also be translated as “Yes, I tell you sincerely” or “That is true, and I also tell you.”
- The phrase “truly, truly I tell you” could be translated as “I tell you this very sincerely” or “I tell you this very earnestly” or “what I am telling you is true.”

(See also: [fulfill](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 27:15
- John 5:19
- Jude 1:24-25
- Matthew 26:33-35
- Philemon 1:23-25
- Revelation 22:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0543, G02810

(Go back to: [Romans 1:25](#); [9:5](#); [11:36](#); [15:33](#); [16:27](#))

ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Definition:

The term “father” refers to a person’s male parent.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to a male ancestor(s) of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated a “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestors” or “ancestral fathers.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: [God the Father, son, Son of God](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:2
- Acts 7:32
- Acts 7:45
- Acts 22:3
- Genesis 31:30
- Genesis 31:42
- Genesis 31:53
- Hebrews 7:4-6
- John 4:12
- Joshua 24:3-4
- Malachi 3:7
- Mark 10:7-9
- Matthew 1:7
- Matthew 3:9
- Matthew 10:21
- Matthew 18:14
- Romans 4:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0001, H0002, H0025, H0369, H0539, H1121, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G05400, G10800, G37370, G39620, G39640, G39660, G39670, G39700, G39710, G39950, G42450, G42690, G46130

(Go back to: [Romans 4:1](#); [4:11](#); [4:12](#); [4:16](#); [4:17](#); [4:18](#); [9:10](#))

angel, archangel

Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term “archangel” refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word “angel” literally means “messenger.”
- The term “archangel” literally means “chief messenger.” The only angel referred to in the Bible as an “archangel” is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God’s authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God are by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, “angel of Yahweh,” has more than one possible meaning: (1) It may mean “angel who represents Yahweh” or “messenger who serves Yahweh.” (2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel’s use of “I” as if Yahweh himself was talking.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “angel” could include “messenger from God” or “God’s heavenly servant” or “God’s spirit messenger.”
- The term “archangel” could be translated as “chief angel” or “head ruling angel” or “leader of the angels.”
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
- The phrase “angel of Yahweh” should be translated using the words for “angel” and “Yahweh.” This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include “angel from Yahweh” or “angel sent by Yahweh” or “Yahweh, who looked like an angel.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: chief, [head](#), messenger, Michael, [ruler](#), [servant](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 24:16
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 12:23
- Colossians 2:18-19
- Genesis 48:16
- Luke 2:13
- Mark 8:38
- Matthew 13:50
- Revelation 1:20
- Zechariah 1:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:12** God placed large, powerful **angels** at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.
- **22:3** The **angel** responded to Zechariah, "I was sent by God to bring you this good news."
- **23:6** Suddenly, a shining **angel** appeared to them (the shepherds), and they were terrified. The **angel** said, "Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you."
- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with **angels** praising God.
- **25:8** Then **angels** came and took care of Jesus.
- **38:12** Jesus was very troubled and his sweat was like drops of blood. God sent an **angel** to strengthen him.
- **38:15** "I could ask the Father for an army of **angels** to defend me."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H0430, H4397, H4398, H8136, G00320, G07430, G24650

(Go back to: [Romans 8:38](#))

apostle, apostleship

Definition:

The “apostles” were men sent by Jesus to preach about God and his kingdom. The term “apostleship” refers to the position and authority of those who were chosen as apostles.

- The word “apostle” means “someone who is sent out for a special purpose.” The apostle has the same authority as the one who sent him.
- Jesus’ twelve closest disciples became the first apostles. Other men, such as Paul and James, also became apostles.
- By God’s power, the apostles were able to boldly preach the gospel and heal people, and were able to force demons to come out of people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word “apostle” can also be translated with a word or phrase that means “someone who is sent out” or “sent-out one” or “person who is called to go out and preach God’s message to people.”
- It is important to translate the terms “apostle” and “disciple” in different ways.
- Also consider how this term was translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [authority](#), disciple, James (son of Zebedee), [Paul](#), the twelve)

Bible References:

- Jude 1:17-19
- Luke 9:12-14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **26:10** Then Jesus chose twelve men who were called his **apostles**. The **apostles** traveled with Jesus and learned from him.
- **30:1** Jesus sent his **apostles** to preach and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:2** Judas was one of Jesus’ **apostles**. He was in charge of the **apostles’** money bag, but he loved money and often stole from the bag.
- **43:13** The disciples devoted themselves to the **apostles’** teaching, fellowship, eating together, and prayer.
- **46:8** Then a believer named Barnabas took Saul to the **apostles** and told them how Saul had preached boldly in Damascus.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G06510, G06520, G24910, G53760, G55700

(Go back to: [Romans 1:1](#); [1:5](#); [11:13](#); [16:7](#))

appoint, appointed

Definition:

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in “appointed to eternal life.” That people were “appointed to eternal life” means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as “be chosen.”

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 8:11
- Acts 3:20
- Acts 6:2
- Acts 13:48
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 3:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0561, H0977, H2163, H2296, H2706, H2708, H2710, H3198, H3245, H3259, H3677, H3983, H4150, H4151, H4152, H4483, H4487, H4662, H5324, H5344, H5414, H5567, H5975, H6310, H6485, H6565, H6635, H6680, H6923, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7896, G03220, G06060, G12990, G13030, G19350, G25250, G27490, G42870, G42960, G43840, G49290, G50210, G50870

(Go back to: [Romans 4:17](#); [13:1](#))

Aquila

Facts:

Aquila was a Jewish Christian from the province of Pontus, a region along the southern coast of the Black Sea.

- Aquila and Priscilla lived in Rome, Italy, for a time, but then the Roman emperor, Claudius, forced all Jews to leave Rome.
- After that Aquila and Priscilla traveled to Corinth, where they met the apostle Paul.
- They worked as tentmakers with Paul and also helped him with his missionary work.
- Both Aquila and Priscilla taught believers the truth about Jesus; one of those believers was a gifted teacher named Apollos.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Apollos, Corinth, [Rome](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 16:19-20
- 2 Timothy 4:19-22
- Acts 18:2
- Acts 18:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: G02070

([Go back to: Romans 16:3](#))

armor, armory

Definition:

The term “armor” refers to the equipment a soldier uses to fight in a battle and protect himself from enemy attacks. It is also used in a figurative way to refer to spiritual armor.

- Parts of a soldier’s armor include a helmet, a shield, a breastplate, leg coverings, and a sword.
- Using the term figuratively, the apostle Paul compares physical armor to spiritual armor that God gives the believer to help him fight spiritual battles.
- The spiritual armor God gives his people to fight against sin and Satan includes truth, righteousness, the gospel of peace, faith, salvation, and the Holy Spirit.
- This could be translated with a term that means “soldier gear” or “protective battle clothing” or “protective covering” or “weapons.”

(See also: [faith](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [peace](#), [save](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 31:9-10
- 2 Samuel 20:8
- Ephesians 6:11
- Jeremiah 51:3-4
- Luke 11:22
- Nehemiah 4:15-16

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2290, H2488, H3627, H4055, H5402, G36960, G38330

(Go back to: [Romans 6:13](#); [13:12](#))

Asia

Facts:

In Bible times, "Asia" was the name of a province of the Roman Empire. It was located in the western part of what is now the country of Turkey.

- Paul traveled to Asia and shared the gospel in several cities there. Among these were the cities of Ephesus and Colossae.
- To avoid confusion with modern day Asia, it may be necessary to translate this as, "the ancient Roman province called Asia" or "Asia Province."
- All of the churches referenced in Revelation were in the Roman province of Asia.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Rome](#), [Paul](#), Ephesus)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 16:19-20
- 1 Peter 1:1-2
- 2 Timothy 1:15-18
- Acts 6:8-9
- Acts 16:7
- Acts 27:1-2
- Revelation 1:4-6
- Romans 16:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: G07730

(Go back to: [Romans 16:5](#))

asleep, fall asleep, sleep, sleeper, sleepless

Definition:

These terms can have figurative meanings relating to death.

- To “sleep” or “be asleep” can be a metaphor meaning to “be dead.” (See: Metaphor)
- The expression “fall asleep” means start sleeping, or, figuratively, die.
- To “sleep with one’s fathers” means to die, as one’s ancestors have, or to be dead, as one’s ancestors are.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “fall asleep” could be translated as to “suddenly become asleep” or to “start sleeping” or to “die,” depending on its meaning.
- Note: It is especially important to keep the figurative expression in contexts where the audience did not understand the meaning. For example, when Jesus told his disciples that Lazarus was “sleeping” they thought he meant that Lazarus was just sleeping naturally. In this context, it would not make sense to translate this as “he died.”
- Some project languages may have a different expression for death or dying which could be used if the expressions “sleep” and “asleep” do not make sense.

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:27-29
- 1 Thessalonians 4:14
- Acts 7:60
- Daniel 12:2
- Psalms 44:23
- Romans 13:11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1957, H3462, H3463, H7290, H7901, H8139, H8142, H8153, H8639, G08790, G18520, G18530, G25180, G28370, G52580

(Go back to: [Romans 13:11](#))

authority

Definition:

The term “authority” usually refers to a position of influence, responsibility, or rule over another person.

- Kings and other governing rulers have authority over the people they are ruling.
- The word “authorities” can refer to people, governments, or organizations that have authority over others.
- The word “authorities” can also refer to spirit beings who have power over people who have not submitted themselves to God’s authority.
- Masters have authority over their servants or slaves. Parents have authority over their children.
- Governments have the authority or right to make laws that govern their citizens.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “authority” can also be translated as “control” or “right” or “qualifications.”
- Sometimes “authority” is used with the meaning of “power.”
- When “authorities” is used to refer to people or organizations who rule people, it could also be translated as “leaders” or “rulers” or “powers.”
- The phrase “by his own authority” could also be translated as “with his own right to lead” or “based on his own qualifications.”
- The expression, “under authority” could be translated as “responsible to obey” or “having to obey others’ commands.”

(See also: dominion, king, [ruler](#), [power](#))

Bible References:

- Colossians 2:10
- Esther 9:29
- Genesis 41:35
- Jonah 3:6-7
- Luke 12:5
- Luke 20:1-2
- Mark 1:22
- Matthew 8:9
- Matthew 28:19
- Titus 3:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8633, G08310, G14130, G18490, G18500, G20030, G27150, G52470

(Go back to: [Romans 9:21](#); [13:1](#); [13:2](#); [13:3](#))

avenge, avenger, revenge, vengeance

Definition:

To “avenge” or “take revenge” or “execute vengeance” is to punish someone in order to pay him back for the harm he did. The act of avenging or taking revenge is “vengeance.”

- Usually “avenge” implies an intent to see justice done or to right a wrong,
- When referring to people, the expression “take revenge” or “get revenge” usually involves wanting to get back at the person who did the harm.
- When God “takes vengeance” or “executes vengeance,” he is acting in righteousness because he is punishing sin and rebellion.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression to “avenge” could also be translated as to “right a wrong” or to “get justice for.”
- When referring to human beings, to “take revenge” could be translated as “pay back” or “hurt in order to punish” or “get back at.”
- Depending on the context, “vengeance” could be translated as “punishment” or “punishment of sin” or “payment for wrongs done.” If a word meaning “retaliation” is used, this would apply to human beings only.
- When God says, “take my vengeance,” this could be translated by “punish them for wrongs done against me” or “cause bad things to happen because they have sinned against me.”
- When referring to God’s vengeance, make sure it is clear that God is right in his punishment of sin.

(See also: punish, [just](#), [righteous](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:12-13
- Ezekiel 25:15
- Isaiah 47:3-5
- Leviticus 19:17-18
- Psalms 18:47
- Romans 12:19

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H3467, H5358, H5359, H5360, H8199, G15560, G15570, G15580, G37090

(Go back to: [Romans 12:19](#); [13:4](#))

Baal

Facts:

“Baal” means “lord” or “master” and was the name of the primary false god that was worshiped by the Canaanites.

- There were also local false gods that had “Baal” as part of their names, such as “Baal of Peor.” Sometimes all these gods together are referred to as “the Baals.”
- Some people had names that included the word “Baal” in them.
- The worship of Baal included evil practices such as sacrificing children and using prostitutes.
- At different time periods throughout their history, the Israelites also became deeply involved in Baal worship, following the example of the pagan nations around them.
- During the reign of King Ahab, God’s prophet Elijah set up a test to prove to the people that Baal does not exist and that Yahweh is the only true God. As a result, the prophets of Baal were destroyed and the people started worshiping Yahweh again.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ahab, Asherah, [Elijah](#), [false god](#), prostitute, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:31
- 1 Samuel 7:3-4
- Jeremiah 2:7-8
- Judges 2:11
- Numbers 22:41

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:2** Ahab was an evil man who encouraged people to worship a false god named **Baal**.
- **19:6** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 prophets of **Baal**, came to Mount Carmel. Elijah said to the people, “How long will you keep changing your mind? If Yahweh is God, serve him! If **Baal** is God, serve him!”
- **19:7** Then Elijah said to the prophets of **Baal**, “Kill a bull and prepare it as a sacrifice, but do not light the fire.”
- **19:8** Then the prophets of **Baal** prayed to **Baal**, “Hear us, O **Baal**!”
- **19:12** So the people captured the prophets of **Baal**. Then Elijah took them away from there and killed them.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1120, G08960

(Go back to: [Romans 11:4](#))

baptize, baptized, baptism

Definition:

In the New Testament, the terms “baptize” and “baptism” usually refer to ritually bathing a Christian with water to show that he has been cleansed from sin and has been united with Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- Christians have different views about how a person should be baptized with water. It is probably best to translate this term in a general way that allows for different ways of applying the water.
- Depending on the context, the term “baptize” could be translated as “purify,” “pour out on,” “plunge (or dip) into,” “wash.” For example, “baptize you with water” could be translated as “plunge you into water.”
- The term “baptism” could be translated as “purification,” “a pouring out,” “a dipping,” “a cleansing.”
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: John (the Baptist), [repent](#), [Holy Spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 2:38
- Acts 8:36
- Acts 9:18
- Acts 10:48
- Luke 3:16
- Matthew 3:14
- Matthew 28:18-19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:3** When people heard John’s message, many of them repented from their sins, and John **baptized** them. Many religious leaders also came to be **baptized** by John, but they did not repent or confess their sins.
- **24:6** The next day, Jesus came to be **baptized** by John.
- **24:7** John said to Jesus, “I am not worthy to **baptize** you. You should **baptize** me instead.”
- **42:10** “So go, make disciples of all people groups by **baptizing** them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **43:11** Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be **baptized** in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins.”
- **43:12** About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were **baptized** and became part of the church at Jerusalem.
- **45:11** As Philip and the Ethiopian traveled, they came to some water. The Ethiopian said, “Look! There is some water! May I be **baptized**?”
- **46:5** Saul immediately was able to see again, and Ananias **baptized** him.
- **49:14** Jesus invites you to believe in him and be **baptized**.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G09070

(Go back to: [Romans 6:3; 6:4](#))

bear, bearer, carry

Facts:

The term “bear” literally means “carry” something. There are also many figurative uses of this term.

- When speaking of a woman who will bear a child, this means “give birth to” a child.
- To “bear a burden” means to “experience difficult things.” These difficult things could include physical or emotional suffering.
- A common expression in the Bible is “bear fruit,” which means “produce fruit” or “have fruit.”
- The expression “bear witness” means “testify” or “report what one has seen or experienced.”
- The statement that “a son will not bear the iniquity of his father” means that he “will not be held responsible for” or “will not be punished for” his father’s sins.
- In general, this term could be translated as “carry” or “be responsible for” or “produce” or “have” or “endure,” depending on the context.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: burden, Elisha, [endure](#), [fruit](#), iniquity, [report](#), [sheep](#), [strength](#), [testimony](#), [testimony](#))

Bible References:

- Lamentations 3:27

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2232, H3201, H3205, H5375, H5445, H5449, H6030, H6509, H6779, G01420, G04300, G09410, G10800, G16270, G25920, G31400, G41600, G47220, G48280, G50410, G50880, G53420, G54090, G55760

(Go back to: [Romans 11:18](#); [15:1](#))

believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief

Definition:

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

2. believe in

- To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
- To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

3. believer

In the Bible, the term “believer” refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

- The term “believer” literally means “person who believes.”
- The term “Christian” eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

4. unbelief

The term “unbelief” refers to not believing something or someone.

- In the Bible, “unbelief” refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one’s Savior.
- A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an “unbeliever.”

Translation Suggestions:

- To “believe” could be translated as to “know to be true” or “know to be right.”
- To “believe in” could be translated as “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”
- Some translations may prefer to say “believer in Jesus” or “believer in Christ.”
- This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means “person who trusts in Jesus” or “someone who knows Jesus and lives for him.”
- Other ways to translate “believer” could be “follower of Jesus” or “person who knows and obeys Jesus.”
- The term “believer” is a general term for any believer in Christ, while “disciple” and “apostle” were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.
- Other ways to translate “unbelief” could include “lack of faith” or “not believing.”

- The term “unbeliever” could be translated as “person who does not believe in Jesus” or “someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior.”

(See also: [believe](#), [apostle](#), Christian, disciple, [faith](#), [trust](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:6
- Genesis 45:26
- Job 9:16-18
- Habakkuk 1:5-7
- Mark 6:4-6
- Mark 1:14-15
- Luke 9:41
- John 1:12
- Acts 6:5
- Acts 9:42
- Acts 28:23-24
- Romans 3:3
- 1 Corinthians 6:1
- 1 Corinthians 9:5
- 2 Corinthians 6:15
- Hebrews 3:12
- 1 John 3:23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:4** Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- **4:8** Abram **believed** God’s promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God’s promise.
- **11:2** God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- **11:6** But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- **37:5** Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?”
- **43:1** After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The **believers** there constantly gathered together to pray.
- **43:3** While the **believers** were all together, suddenly the house where they were was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared over the heads of all the **believers**.
- **43:13** Every day, more people became **believers**.
- **46:6** That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the **believers** fled to other places. But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **46:1** Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the **believers**.
- **46:9** Some **believers** who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to the city of Antioch and preached about Jesus.
- **46:9** It was at Antioch that **believers** in Jesus were first called “Christians.”
- **47:14** They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the **believers** in the churches.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0539, H0540, G05430, G05440, G05690, G05700, G05710, G39820, G41000, G41020, G41030, G41350

(Go back to: [Romans 1 General Notes](#); [1:16](#); [Notes](#); [3:3](#); [3:22](#); [4:3](#); [4:5](#); [4:11](#); [4:18](#); [4:20](#); [4:24](#); [6:8](#); [9:33](#); [10:4](#); [10:9](#); [10:10](#); [10:11](#); [10:14](#); [10:16](#); [11:20](#); [11:23](#); [13:11](#); [14:2](#); [15:13](#))

beloved

Definition:

The term “beloved” is an expression of affection that describes someone who is loved and dear to someone else.

- The term “beloved” literally means “loved (one)” or “(who is) loved.”
- God refers to Jesus as his “beloved Son.”
- In their letters to Christian churches, the apostles frequently address their fellow believers as “beloved.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “loved” or “loved one” or “well-loved,” or “very dear.”
- In the context of talking about a close friend, this could be translated as “my dear friend” or “my close friend.” In English it is natural to say “my dear friend, Paul” or “Paul, who is my dear friend.” Other languages may find it more natural to order this in a different way.
- Note that the word “beloved” comes from the word for God’s love, which is unconditional, unselfish, and sacrificial.

(See also: [love](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 4:14
- 1 John 3:2
- 1 John 4:7
- Mark 1:11
- Mark 12:6
- Revelation 20:9
- Romans 16:8
- Song of Songs 1:14

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0157, H1730, H2532, H3033, H3039, H4261, G00250, G00270, G52070

(Go back to: [Romans 1:7](#); [11:28](#); [12:19](#); [16:5](#); [16:8](#); [16:9](#); [16:12](#))

Benjamin, Benjaminite

Facts:

Benjamin was Jacob's twelfth son. He was Rachel's second son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Benjamin" or "Benjamin" or the "Benjaminites."
- In Hebrew, the name Benjamin means "son of my right hand."
- The tribe of Benjamin settled just northwest of the Dead Sea, north of Jerusalem.
- King Saul was from the tribe of Benjamin.
- The apostle Paul was from the tribe of Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, [Jacob](#), Rachel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 2:8
- Acts 13:21-22
- Genesis 35:18
- Genesis 42:4
- Genesis 42:35-36
- Philippians 3:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1144, G09580

(Go back to: [Romans 11:1](#))

bind, bond, bound

Definition:

The term “bind” means to tie something or fasten it securely. Something that is tied or joined together is called a “bond.” The term “bound” is the past tense of this term.

- To be “bound” means to have something tied or wrapped around something else.
- In a figurative sense, a person can be “bound” to a vow, which means he is “required to fulfill” what he promised to do.
- The term “bonds” refers to anything that binds, confines, or imprisons someone. It usually refers to physical chains, fetters or ropes that keep a person from being free to move.
- In Bible times, bonds such as ropes or chains were used to attach prisoners to the wall or floor of a stone prison.
- The term “bind” can also be used to talk about wrapping cloth around a wound to help it heal.
- A dead person would be “bound” with cloth in preparation for burial.
- The term “bond” is used figuratively to refer to something, such as sin, that controls or enslaves someone.
- A bond can also be a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually and physically. This applies to the bond of marriage.
- For example, a husband and wife are “bound” or tied to each other. It is a bond that God does not want broken.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “bind” could also be translated as “tie” or “tie up” or “wrap (around).”
- Figuratively, it could be translated as to “restrain” or to “prevent” or to “keep from (something).”
- A special use of “bind” in Matthew 16 and 18 means “forbid” or “not permit.”
- The term “bonds” could be translated as “chains” or “ropes” or “shackles.”
- Figuratively the term “bond” could be translated as “knot” or “connection” or “close relationship.”
- The phrase “bond of peace” means “being in harmony, which brings people in closer relationship to each other” or “the tying together that peace brings.”
- To “bind up” could be translated as “wrap around” or “put a bandage on.”
- To “bind” oneself with a vow could be translated as “promise to fulfill a vow” or “commit to fulfill a vow.”
- Depending on the context, the term “bound” could also be translated as “tied” or “tied up” or “chained” or “obligated (to fulfill)” or “required to do.”

(See also: [fulfill](#), [peace](#), [prison](#), [servant](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

- Leviticus 8:7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0247, H0481, H0519, H0615, H0631, H0632, H0640, H1366, H1367, H1379, H2280, H2706, H3256, H3533, H3729, H4147, H4148, H4205, H4562, H5650, H5656, H5659, H6029, H6123, H6616, H6696, H6872, H6887, H7194, H7405, H7573, H7576, H8198, H8244, H8379, G02540, G03310, G03320, G11950, G11960, G11980, G11990, G12100, G13970, G13980, G14010, G14020, G26110, G26150, G37340, G37840, G38140, G40190, G40290, G43850, G48860, G48870, G52650

(Go back to: [Romans 7:2](#); [7:6](#); [11:32](#))

blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “blasphemy” refers to speaking in a way that shows a deep disrespect for God or people. To “blaspheme” someone is to speak against that person so that others think something false or bad about him.

- Most often, to blaspheme God means to slander or insult him by saying things that are not true about him or by behaving in an immoral way that dishonors him.
- It is blasphemy for a human being to claim to be God or to claim that there is a God other than the one true God.
- Some English versions translate this term as “slander” when it refers to blaspheming people.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “blaspheme” can be translated as to “say evil things against” or to “dishonor God” or to “slander.”
- Ways to translate “blasphemy” could include “speaking wrongly about others” or “slander” or “spreading false rumors.”

(See also: [dishonor](#), [slander](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 1:12-14
- Acts 6:11
- Acts 26:9-11
- James 2:5-7
- John 10:32-33
- Luke 12:10
- Mark 14:64
- Matthew 12:31
- Matthew 26:65
- Psalms 74:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1288, H1442, H2778, H5006, H5007, H5344, G09870, G09880, G09890

(Go back to: [Romans 2:24](#))

bless, blessed, blessing

Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as to “provide abundantly for” or to “be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: [praise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34
- Ephesians 1:3
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:3
- James 1:25
- Luke 6:20
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 9:5
- Romans 4:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:7** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **1:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **1:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **4:4** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”

- **4:7** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, "May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram."
- **7:3** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
- **8:5** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0833, H0835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G17570, G21270, G21280, G21290, G31060, G31070, G31080, G60500

(Go back to: [Romans 1:25](#); [4:6](#); [4:7](#); [4:8](#); [4:9](#); [9:5](#); [12:14](#); [14:22](#); [15:29](#))

blood

Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body. In the Bible, the term “blood” is often used figuratively to mean “life” and/or several other concepts.

- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See also: bloodshed; [flesh](#); [life](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Samuel 14:32
- Acts 2:20
- Acts 5:28
- Colossians 1:20
- Galatians 1:16
- Genesis 4:11
- Psalms 16:4
- Psalms 105:28-30

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:3** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **10:3** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
- **11:5** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb’s **blood**.
- **13:9** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person’s sin and made that person clean in God’s sight.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.”
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s punishment passes over him.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1818, H5332, G01290, G01300, G01310

(Go back to: [Romans 3:15](#); [3:25](#); [5:9](#))

boast, boastful

Definition:

The term “boast” means to talk proudly about something or someone. Often it means to brag about oneself.

- Someone who is “boastful” talks about himself in a proud way.
- God rebuked the Israelites for “boasting in” their idols. They arrogantly worshiped false gods instead of the true God.
- The Bible also talks about people boasting in such things as their wealth, their strength, their fruitful fields, and their laws. This means that they were proud about these things and did not acknowledge that God is the one who provided these things.
- God urged the Israelites to instead “boast” or be proud about the fact that they know him.
- The apostle Paul also talks about boasting in the Lord, which means being glad and thankful to God for all he has done for them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “boast” could include “brag” or “talk proudly” or “be proud.”
- The term “boastful” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “full of prideful talk” or “prideful” or “talking proudly about oneself.”
- In the context of boasting in or about knowing God, this could be translated as “take pride in” or “exalt in” or “be very glad about” or “give thanks to God about.”
- Some languages have two words for “pride”: one that is negative, with the meaning of being arrogant, and the other that is positive, with the meaning of taking pride in one’s work, family, or country.

Translation Suggestions:

(See also: [proud](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 20:11
- 2 Timothy 3:1-4
- James 3:14
- James 4:15-17
- Psalms 44:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1984, H3235, H6286, G02120, G02130, G17400, G26200, G27440, G27450, G27460, G31660

(Go back to: [Romans 1:30](#); [2:17](#); [2:23](#); [3:27](#); [4:2](#); [5:2](#); [5:3](#); [11:18](#); [15:17](#))

body

Definition:

The term “body” refers to the physical body of a person or animal. This term is also used figuratively to refer to an object or to a group consisting of individual members.

- Often the term “body” refers to a dead person or animal. Sometimes this is referred to as a “dead body” or a “corpse.”
- When Jesus said to the disciples at his last Passover meal, “This (bread) is my body,” he was referring to his physical body that would be “broken” (killed) to pay for their sins.
- In the Bible, Christians as a group are referred to as the “body of Christ.”
- Just as a physical body has many parts, the “body of Christ” has many individual members.
- Each individual believer has a special function in the body of Christ to help the whole group work together to serve God and bring him glory.
- Jesus is also referred to as the “head” (leader) of the “body” of his believers. Just as a person’s head tells his body what to do, so Jesus is the one who guides and directs Christians as members of his “body.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The best way to translate this term would be with the word that is most commonly used to refer to a physical body in the project language. Make sure that the word used is not an offensive term.
- When referring collectively to believers, for some languages it may be more natural and accurate to say “spiritual body of Christ.”
- When Jesus says, “This is my body,” it is best to translate this literally, with a note to explain it if needed.
- Some languages may have a separate word when referring to a dead body, such as “corpse” for a person or “carcass” for an animal. Make sure the word used to translate this makes sense in the context and is acceptable.

(See also: [head](#), [hand](#); face; loins; [righthand](#); [tongue](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:12
- 1 Corinthians 5:5
- Ephesians 4:4
- Judges 14:8
- Numbers 6:6-8
- Psalm 31:9
- Romans 12:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0990, H1320, H1460, H1465, H1472, H1480, H1655, H3409, H4191, H5038, H5085, H5315, H6106, H6297, H7607, G44300, G49540, G49830, G55590

(Go back to: [Romans 1:24](#); [4:19](#); [6:6](#); [6:12](#); [7:4](#); [7:24](#); [8:10](#); [8:11](#); [8:13](#); [8:23](#); [Notes](#); [12:1](#); [12:4](#); [12:5](#))

bold, boldness, emboldened

Definition:

These terms all refer to having courage and confidence to speak the truth and do the right thing even when it is difficult or dangerous.

- A “bold” person is not afraid to say and do what is good and right, including defending people who are being mistreated. This could be translated as “courageous” or “fearless.”
- In the New Testament, the disciples continued to “boldly” preach about Christ in public places, in spite of the danger of being put in jail or killed. This could be translated as “confidently” or “with strong courage” or “courageously.”
- The “boldness” of these early disciples in speaking the good news of Christ’s redeeming death on the cross resulted in the gospel being spread throughout Israel and nearby countries and finally, to the rest of the world. “Boldness” could also be translated as “confident courage.”

(See also: [confidence](#), [good news](#), [redeem](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:28
- 1 Thessalonians 2:1-2
- 2 Corinthians 3:12-13
- Acts 4:13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0982, H5797, G06620, G22920, G36180, G39540, G39550, G51110, G51120

(**Go back to:** [Romans 10:20](#); [15:15](#))

bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee

Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To “bow down” means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include “bow the knee” (meaning to kneel) and “bow the head” (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is “bowed down” has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “bend forward” or “bend the head” or “kneel.”
- The term “bow down” could be translated as “kneel down” or “prostrate oneself.”
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: [humble](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 5:18
- Exodus 20:5
- Genesis 24:26
- Genesis 44:14
- Isaiah 44:19
- Luke 24:5
- Matthew 2:11
- Revelation 3:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0086, H3721, H3766, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G11200, G25780, G28270, G40980

(Go back to: [Romans 11:4](#); [11:10](#); [14:11](#))

brother

Definition:

The term “brother” refers to a male sibling who shares at least one biological parent.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives or associates, such as members of the same tribe, clan, occupation, or people group. When used in this way, the term can refer to both men and women.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often use the term “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [God the Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:26
- Genesis 29:10
- Leviticus 19:17
- Nehemiah 3:1
- Philippians 4:21
- Revelation 1:9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0251, H0252, H0264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G00800, G00810, G23850, G24550, G25000, G46130, G53600, G55690

(Go back to: [Romans 1:13](#); [7:1](#); [7:4](#); [8:12](#); [8:29](#); [9:3](#); [10:1](#); [11:25](#); [12:1](#); [14:10](#); [14:13](#); [14:15](#); [14:21](#); [15:14](#); [15:30](#); [16:14](#); [16:17](#); [16:23](#))

bury, buried, burial

Definition:

The term “bury” refers to putting an object (usually a dead body) into a hole or other burial place and then covering it with dirt or stones, etc. The term “burial” is the act of burying something, or it can be used to describe a place where something has been buried.

- Often people bury a dead body by placing it into a deep hole in the ground and then covering it with dirt.
- Sometimes the dead body is placed in a box-like structure, such as a coffin, before burying it.
- In Bible times, dead people were often buried in a cave or similar place. After Jesus died, his body was wrapped in cloths and placed in a stone tomb that was sealed with a large boulder.
- The terms “burial place” or “burial room” or “burial chamber” or “burial cave” always refer to a place where a dead body is buried.
- Other things can also be buried, such as when Achan buried silver and other things that he had stolen from Jericho.
- The phrase “buried his face” usually means “covered his face with his hands.”
- Sometimes the word “hide” can mean “bury” as when Achan hid things in the ground that he had stolen from Jericho. This meant he buried them in the ground.

(See also: Jericho, [tomb](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 9:9-10
- Genesis 35:4-5
- Jeremiah 25:33
- Luke 16:22
- Matthew 27:7
- Psalm 79:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6900, H6912, H6913, G17790, G17800, G22900, G49160, G50270

([Go back to: Romans 6:4](#))

call, call out

Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” usually mean to speak loudly, but the term “call” can also mean to name or summon a person. There are also some other meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout, to announce, or to proclaim. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- When God “calls” people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, “His name is called John,” means “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God has specifically chosen that person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as “I know you and have chosen you.”

(See also: [pray](#), [cry](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:24
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- 2 Timothy 1:9
- Ephesians 4:1
- Galatians 1:15
- Matthew 2:15
- Philippians 3:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G01540, G03630, G14580, G15280, G19410, G19510, G20280, G20460, G25640, G28210, G28220, G28400, G29190, G30040, G31060, G33330, G33430, G36030, G36860, G36870, G43160, G43410, G43770, G47790, G48670, G54550, G55370, G55810

(Go back to: [Romans 1:1](#); [1:6](#); [1:7](#); [4:17](#); [7:3](#); [8:28](#); [8:30](#); [9:7](#); [9:12](#); [9:24](#); [9:25](#); [9:26](#); [10:12](#); [10:13](#); [10:14](#); [11:29](#))

captive, captivate, captivity, catch

Definition:

The terms “captive” and “captivity” refer to people who have been captured and forced to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression to “take captive” is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, “carry you away captive” could also be translated as “force you to live as captives” or “take you away to another country as prisoners.”
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to “take captive” every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be “taken captive” by sin, which means he is “controlled by” sin.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, to be “held captive” could also be translated by, “not allowed to be free” or “kept in prison” or “forced to live in a foreign country.”
- The expression, “led captive” or “taken captive” could be translated as “captured” or “imprisoned” or “forced to go to a foreign land.”
- The term “captives” could also be translated as “people who were captured” or “enslaved people.”
- Depending on the context, “captivity” could also be translated as “imprisonment” or “exile” or “forced stay in a foreign country.”

(See also: Babylon, exile, prison, seize)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:5
- Isaiah 20:4
- Jeremiah 43:3
- Luke 4:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1546, H1547, H7617, H7622, H7628, H7633, H7686, G01610, G01620, G01630, G01640, G22210

(Go back to: [Romans 7:23](#))

children, child, offspring

Definition:

The term “child” (plural “children”) refers to the offspring of a man and woman. The term is often used more generally to refer to anyone who is young in age and is not yet a fully grown adult. The term “offspring” is a general reference to the biological descendants of people or animals.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called “children.”
- Often the term “children” is used to refer to a person’s descendants.
- Often in the Bible, “offspring” has the same meaning as “children” or “descendants.”
- The term “seed” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to offspring.
- The phrase “children of” can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
 - children of the light
 - children of obedience
 - children of the devil
- This term can also refer to the Church. For example, sometimes the New Testament refers to people who believe in Jesus as “children of God.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “children” could be translated as “descendants” when it is referring to a person’s great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, “children of” could be translated as “people who have the characteristics of” or “people who behave like.”
- If possible, the phrase, “children of God” should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, “people who belong to God” or “God’s spiritual children.”
- When Jesus calls his disciples “children,” this could also be translated as “dear friends” or “my beloved disciples.”
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as “children,” this could also be translated as “dear fellow believers.”
- The phrase, “children of the promise” could be translated as “people who have received what God promised them.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [seed](#), [promise](#), [son](#), [spirit](#), [believe](#), [beloved](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:28
- 3 John 1:4
- Galatians 4:19
- Genesis 45:11
- Joshua 8:34-35
- Nehemiah 5:5
- Acts 17:29
- Exodus 13:11-13
- Genesis 24:7
- Isaiah 41:8-9
- Job 5:25
- Luke 3:7
- Matthew 12:34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1069, H1121, H1123, H1129, H1323, H1397, H1580, H2029, H2030, H2056, H2138, H2145, H2233, H2945, H3173, H3205, H3206, H3208, H3211, H3243, H3490, H4392, H5209, H5271, H5288, H5290, H5759, H5764, H5768, H5953, H6185, H6363, H6529, H6631, H7908, H7909, H7921, G07300, G08150, G10250, G10640, G10810, G10850, G14710, G34390, G35150, G35160, G38080, G38120, G38130, G38160, G50400, G50410, G50420, G50430, G50440, G52060, G52070, G53880

(Go back to: [Romans 2:20](#); [8:16](#); [8:17](#); [8:21](#); [9:7](#); [9:8](#))

chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect

Definition:

The term “the elect” literally means “chosen ones” or “chosen people” and refers to those whom God has appointed or selected to be his people. “Chosen One” or “Chosen One of God” is a title that refers to Jesus, who is the chosen Messiah.

- The term “choose” means to select something or someone or to decide something. It is often used to refer to God appointing people to belong to him and to serve him.
- To be “chosen” means to be “selected” or “appointed” to be or do something.
- God chose people to be holy, to be set apart by him for the purpose of bearing good spiritual fruit. That is why they are called “the chosen (ones)” or “the elect.”
- The term “chosen one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to certain people such as Moses and King David whom God had appointed as leaders over his people. It is also used to refer to the nation of Israel as God’s chosen people.
- The phrase “the elect” is an older term that literally means “the chosen ones” or “the chosen people.” This phrase in the original language is plural when referring to believers in Christ.
- In older English Bible versions, the term “elect” is used in both the Old and New Testaments to translate the word for “chosen one(s).” More modern versions use “elect” only in the New Testament, to refer to people who have been saved by God through faith in Jesus. Elsewhere in the Bible text, they translate this word more literally as “chosen ones.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “elect” with a word or phrase that means “chosen ones” or “chosen people.” This could also be translated as “people whom God chose” or “the ones God appointed to be his people.”
- The phrase “who were chosen” could also be translated as “who were appointed” or “who were selected” or “whom God chose.”
- “I chose you” could be translated as “I appointed you” or “I selected you.”
- In reference to Jesus, “Chosen One” could also be translated as “God’s chosen One” or “God’s specially appointed Messiah” or “the One God appointed (to save people).”

(See also: [appoint](#), [Christ](#))

Bible References:

- 2 John 1:1
- Colossians 3:12
- Ephesians 1:3-4
- Isaiah 65:22-23
- Luke 18:7
- Matthew 24:19-22
- Romans 8:33

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0970, H0972, H0977, H1262, H1305, H4005, H6901, G01380, G01400, G15860, G15880, G15890, G19510, G37240, G44000, G44010, G47580, G48990, G55000

(Go back to: [Romans 8:33](#); [9:11](#); [11:5](#); [11:7](#); [11:28](#); [16:13](#))

Christ, Messiah

Facts:

The terms “Messiah” and “Christ” mean “Anointed One” and refer to Jesus, God’s Son.

- Both “Messiah” and “Christ” are used in the New Testament to refer to God’s Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning “anointed (one)” is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proves he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word “Christ” is often used as a title, as in “the Christ” and “Christ Jesus.”
- “Christ” also came to be used as part of his name, as in “Jesus Christ.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using its meaning, “the Anointed One” or “God’s Anointed Savior.”
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like “Christ” or “Messiah.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term as in, “Christ, the Anointed One.”
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of “Messiah” and “Christ” work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See also: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Son of God](#), [David](#), [Jesus](#), anoint)

Bible References:

- 1 John 5:1-3
- Acts 2:35
- Acts 5:40-42
- John 1:40-42
- John 3:27-28
- John 4:25
- Luke 2:10-12
- Matthew 1:16

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:7** The **Messiah** was God’s Chosen One who would save the people of the world from sin.
- **17:8** As it happened, the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the **Messiah** came, almost 1,000 years.
- **21:1** From the very beginning, God planned to send the **Messiah**.
- **21:4** God promised King David that the **Messiah** would be one of David’s own descendants.
- **21:5** The **Messiah** would start the New Covenant.
- **21:6** God’s prophets also said that the **Messiah** would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.

- **21:9** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the **Messiah** would be born from a virgin.
- **43:7** "But God raised him to life again to fulfill the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your **Holy One** rot in the grave.'"
- **43:9** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and **Messiah!**"
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus **Christ** so that God will forgive your sins."
- **46:6** Saul reasoned with the Jews, proving that Jesus was the **Messiah**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4899, G33230, G55470

(Go back to: [Romans 1:1](#); [1:4](#); [1:6](#); [1:7](#); [1:8](#); [2:16](#); [3:22](#); [3:24](#); [5:1](#); [5:6](#); [5:8](#); [5:11](#); [5:15](#); [5:17](#); [5:21](#); [6:3](#); [6:4](#); [6:8](#); [6:9](#); [6:11](#); [6:23](#); [7:4](#); [7:25](#); [8:1](#); [8:2](#); [8:9](#); [8:10](#); [8:11](#); [8:17](#); [8:34](#); [8:35](#); [8:39](#); [9:1](#); [9:3](#); [9:5](#); [10:4](#); [10:6](#); [10:7](#); [10:17](#); [Notes](#); [12:5](#); [13:14](#); [14:9](#); [14:15](#); [14:18](#); [15:3](#); [15:5](#); [15:6](#); [15:7](#); [15:8](#); [15:16](#); [15:17](#); [15:18](#); [15:19](#); [15:20](#); [15:29](#); [15:30](#); [16:3](#); [16:5](#); [16:7](#); [16:9](#); [16:10](#); [16:16](#); [16:18](#); [16:20](#); [16:25](#); [16:27](#))

church, Church

Definition:

In the New Testament, the term “church” refers to a local group of believers in Jesus who regularly met together to pray and hear God’s word preached. The term “the Church” often refers to all Christians.

- This term literally refers to a “called out” assembly or congregation of people who meet together for a special purpose.
- When this term is used to refer to all believers everywhere in the whole body of Christ, some Bible translations capitalize the first letter (“Church”) to distinguish it from the local church.
- Often the believers in a particular city would meet together in someone’s home. These local churches were given the name of the city such as the “church at Ephesus.”
- In the Bible, “church” does not refer to a building.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “church” could be translated as a “gathering together” or “assembly” or “congregation” or “ones who meet together.”
- The word or phrase that is used to translate this term should also be able to refer to all believers, not just one small group.
- Make sure that the translation of “church” does not just refer to a building.
- The term used to translate “assembly” in the Old Testament could also be used to translate this term.
- Also consider how it is translated in a local or national Bible translation. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#).)

(See also: assembly, [believe](#), Christian)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:12
- 1 Thessalonians 2:14
- 1 Timothy 3:5
- Acts 9:31
- Acts 14:23
- Acts 15:41
- Colossians 4:15
- Ephesians 5:23
- Matthew 16:18
- Philippians 4:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **43:12** About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were baptized and became part of the **church** at Jerusalem.
- **46:9** Most of the people in Antioch were not Jews, but for the first time, very many of them also became believers. Barnabas and Saul went there to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the **church**.
- **46:10** So the **church** in Antioch prayed for Barnabas and Saul and placed their hands on them. Then they sent them off to preach the good news of Jesus in many other places.
- **47:13** The good news of Jesus kept spreading, and the **Church** kept growing.
- **50:1** For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the good news about Jesus the Messiah. The **Church** has been growing.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G15770

(Go back to: [Romans 16:1](#); [16:4](#); [16:5](#); [16:16](#); [16:23](#))

circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision

Definition:

The term “circumcise” means to cut off the foreskin of a man or male child. A circumcision ceremony may be performed in connection with this.

- God commanded Abraham to circumcise every male among his family and servants as a sign of God’s covenant with them.
- God also commanded Abraham’s descendants to continue to do this for every baby boy born into their households.
- The phrase, “circumcision of the heart” refers figuratively to the “cutting away” or removal of sin from a person.
- In a spiritual sense, “the circumcised” refers to people whom God has purified from sin through the blood of Jesus and who are his people.
- The term “uncircumcised” refers to those who have not been circumcised physically. It can also refer figuratively to those who have not been circumcised spiritually, who do not have a relationship with God.

The terms “uncircumcised” and “uncircumcision” refer to a male who has not been physically circumcised. These terms are also used figuratively.

- Egypt was a nation that also required circumcision. So when God talks about Egypt being defeated by the “uncircumcised,” he is referring to people whom the Egyptians despised for not being circumcised.
- The Bible refers to people who have an “uncircumcised heart” or who are “uncircumcised in heart.” This a figurative way of saying that these people are not God’s people, and are stubbornly disobedient to him.
- If a word for circumcision is used or known in the language, “uncircumcised” could be translated as “not circumcised.”
- The expression “the uncircumcision” could be translated as “people who are not circumcised” or “people who do not belong to God,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate figurative senses of this term could include “not God’s people” or “rebellious like those who don’t belong to God” or “people who have no sign of belonging to God.”
- The expression “uncircumcised in heart” could be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to believe.” However, if possible it is best to keep the expression or a similar one since spiritual circumcision is an important concept.

Translation Suggestions:

- If the culture of the target language performs circumcisions on males, the word used to refer to this should be used for this term.
- Other ways to translate this term would be, “cut around” or “cut in a circle” or “cut off the foreskin.”
- In cultures where circumcision is not known, it may be necessary to explain it in a footnote or glossary.
- Make sure the term used to translate this does not refer to females. It may be necessary to translate this with a word or phrase that includes the meaning of “male.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Abraham, covenant](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:11
- Genesis 17:14
- Exodus 12:48

- Leviticus 26:41
- Joshua 5:3
- Judges 15:18
- 2 Samuel 1:20
- Jeremiah 9:26
- Ezekiel 32:25
- Acts 10:44-45
- Acts 11:3
- Acts 15:1
- Acts 11:3
- Romans 2:27
- Galatians 5:3
- Ephesians 2:11
- Philippians 3:3
- Colossians 2:11
- Colossians 2:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:3** "You must **circumcise** every male in your family."
- **5:5** That day Abraham **circumcised** all the males in his household.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4135, H4139, H5243, H6188, H6189, H6190, G02030, G05640, G19860, G40590, G40610

(Go back to: [Romans 2:25](#); [2:26](#); [2:27](#); [2:28](#); [2:29](#); [3:1](#); [3:30](#); [Notes](#); [4:9](#); [4:10](#); [4:11](#); [4:12](#); [15:8](#))

clean, wash

Definition:

The term “clean” generally refers either to removing dirt or stains from someone/something or to not having any dirt or stain in the first place. The term “wash” refers specifically to action of removing dirt or stains from someone/something.

- “Cleanse” is the process of making something “clean.” It could also be translated as “wash” or “purify.”
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term “clean” means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared “clean” again.
- Sometimes “clean” is used figuratively to refer to moral purity, meaning to be “clean” from sin.

In the Bible, the term “unclean” is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be “unclean” until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something “unclean,” they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God’s commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God’s service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an “unclean spirit” refers to an evil spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with the common word for “clean” or “pure” (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, “ritually clean” or “acceptable to God.”
- “Cleanse” could be translated by “wash” or “purify.”
- Make sure that the words used for “clean” and “cleanse” can also be understood in a figurative sense.
- The term “unclean” could also be translated as “not clean” or “unfit in God’s eyes” or “physically unclean” or “defiled.”
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, “unclean” could be translated as “evil” or “defiled.”
- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: defile, demon, [holy](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 7:2
- Genesis 7:8
- Deuteronomy 12:15
- Psalms 51:7
- Proverbs 20:30
- Ezekiel 24:13
- Matthew 23:27

- Luke 5:13
- Acts 8:7
- Acts 10:27-29
- Colossians 3:5
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- James 4:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1305, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2398, H2548, H2834, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2893, H2930, H2931, H2932, H3001, H3722, H5079, H5352, H5355, H5356, H6172, H6565, H6663, H6945, H7137, H8552, H8562, G01670, G01690, G25110, G25120, G25130, G28390, G28400, G33940, G36890

(Go back to: [Romans 14:20](#))

clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments

Definition:

When used figuratively in the Bible, “clothed with” means to be endowed or equipped with something. To “clothe” oneself with something means to seek to have a certain character quality.

- In the same way that clothing is external to your body and is visible to all, when you are “clothed” with a certain character quality, others can readily see it. To “clothe yourself with kindness” means to let your actions be so characterized by kindness that it is easily seen by everyone.
- To be “clothed with power from on high” means to have power given to you.
- This term is also used to express negative experiences, such as “clothed with shame” or “clothed with terror.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the literal figure of speech, “clothe yourselves with.” Another way to translate this could be “put on” if this refers to putting on clothes.
- If that does not give the correct meaning, other ways to translate “clothed with” could be “showing” or “manifesting” or “filled with” or “having the quality of.”
- The term “clothe yourself with” could also be translated as “cover yourself with” or “behave in a way that shows.”

Bible References:

- Luke 24:49

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0899, H3680, H3736, H3830, H3847, H3848, H4055, H4374, H5497, H8008, H8071, H8516, G02940, G14630, G15620, G17370, G17420, G17460, G19020, G20660, G22240, G24390, G24400, G40160, G47490, G55090

(Go back to: [Romans 13:12](#); [13:14](#))

command, commandment

Definition:

The term “command” means to order someone to do something. The term “commandment” refers to the thing that a person is commanded to do.

- The term “commandment” sometimes refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the “Ten Commandments.”
- A command can be positive (“Honor your parents”) or negative (“Do not steal”).
- To “take command” means to “take control” or “take charge” of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, “law.” Also compare with the definitions of “decree” and “statute.”
- Some translators may prefer to translate “command” and “commandment” with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See decree, statute, [law](#), Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Luke 1:6
- Matthew 1:24
- Matthew 22:38
- Matthew 28:20
- Numbers 1:17-19
- Romans 7:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H0560, H0565, H1296, H1696, H1697, H1881, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2941, H2942, H2951, H3027, H3982, H3983, H4406, H4662, H4687, H4929, H4931, H4941, H5057, H5713, H5749, H6213, H6310, H6346, H6490, H6673, H6680, H7101, H7218, H7227, H7262, H7761, H7970, H8269, G12630, G12910, G12960, G12970, G12990, G16900, G17780, G17810, G17850, G20030, G20040, G20080, G20360, G27530, G30560, G37260, G38520, G38530, G43670, G44830, G44870, G55060

(Go back to: [Romans 7:8](#); [7:9](#); [7:10](#); [7:11](#); [7:12](#); [7:13](#); [13:2](#); [13:9](#); [16:26](#))

commit, committed, commitment

Definition:

The terms “commit” and “commitment” refers to making a decision or promising to do something.

- A person who promises to do something is also described as being “committed” to doing it.
- To “commit” to someone a certain task means to assign that task to that person. For example, in 2 Corinthians Paul says that God has “committed” (or “given”) to us the ministry of helping people be reconciled to God.
- The terms “commit” and “committed” also often refer to doing a certain wrong action such as “commit a sin” or “commit adultery” or “commit murder.”
- The expression “committed to him the task” could also be translated as “gave him the task” or “entrusted to him the task” or “assigned the task to him.”
- The term “commitment” could be translated by, “task that was given” or “promise that was made.”

(See also: [adultery](#), [faithful](#), [promise](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 28:7
- 1 Peter 2:21-23
- Jeremiah 2:12-13
- Matthew 13:41
- Psalm 58:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0539, H0817, H1361, H1497, H1500, H1540, H1556, H2181, H2388, H2398, H2399, H2403, H4560, H4603, H5003, H5753, H5766, H5771, H6213, H6466, H7683, H7760, H7847, G02640, G20380, G27160, G34290, G34310, G38600, G38720, G39080, G41020, G41600, G42030

(Go back to: [Romans 1:27](#))

companion, fellow worker, friend

Facts:

The term “companion” refers to a person who goes with someone else or who is associated with someone else, such as in a friendship or marriage. The term “fellow worker” refers to someone who works with another person.

- Companions go through experiences together, share meals together, and support and encourage each other.
- Depending on the context, this term could also be translated with a word or phrase that means, “friend” or “fellow traveler” or “supporting-person who goes with” or “person who works with.”

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 37:16
- Hebrews 1:9
- Proverbs 2:17
- Psalms 38:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0251, H0441, H2269, H2270, H2273, H2278, H3674, H3675, H4828, H7453, H7462, H7464, G28440, G33530, G48980, G49040

(Go back to: [Romans 16:3](#); [16:9](#); [16:21](#))

compassion, compassionate

Definition:

The term “compassion” refers to a feeling of concern for people, especially for those who are suffering. A “compassionate” person cares about other people and helps them.

- The word “compassion” refers to caring about people in need, as well as taking action to help them.
- The Bible says that God is compassionate, that is, he is full of love and mercy.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways of translating “compassion” could include, “deep caring” or “pity” or “helpful mercy.”
- The term “compassionate” could also be translated as “caring and helpful” or “deeply loving and merciful.”

Bible References:

- Daniel 1:8-10
- Hosea 13:14
- James 5:9-11
- Jonah 4:1-3
- Mark 1:41
- Romans 9:14-16

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2550, H7349, H7355, H7356, G16530, G33560, G36270, G46970, G48340, G48350

(Go back to: [Romans 9:15](#))

conceive, conception

Definition:

The terms “conceive” and “conception” usually refer to becoming pregnant with a child. It can also be used for animals that become pregnant.

- The phrase “conceive a child” could be translated as “become pregnant” or some other term that is an acceptable way of referring to this.
- The related term “conception” could be translated as “beginning of a pregnancy” or “moment of becoming pregnant.”
- These terms can also refer to creating something or thinking of something, such as an idea, a plan, or a task. Ways to translate this could include, “think of” or “plan” or “create,” depending on the context.
- Sometimes this term can be used figuratively as in, “when sin is conceived” which means “when sin is first thought of” or “at the very start of a sin” or “when a sin first begins.”

(See also: [create](#), [womb](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:1-4
- Hosea 2:4-5
- Job 15:35
- Luke 1:24-25
- Luke 2:21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2029, H2030, H2032, H2232, H2254, H2803, H3179, G10800, G17220, G28450, G48150

(Go back to: [Romans 9:10](#))

condemn, condemned, condemnation

Definition:

The terms “condemn” and “condemnation” refer to judging someone for doing something wrong.

- Often the word “condemn” includes punishing that person for what they did wrong.
- Sometimes “condemn” means to falsely accuse someone or to judge someone harshly.
- The term “condemnation” refers to the act of condemning or accusing someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “harshly judge” or “criticize falsely.”
- The phrase “condemn him” could be translated as “judge that he is guilty” or “state that he must be punished for his sin.”
- The term “condemnation” could be translated as “harsh judging” or “declaring to be guilty” or “punishment of guilt.”

(See also: [judge](#), punish)

Bible References:

- 1 John 3:20
- Job 9:29
- John 5:24
- Luke 6:37
- Matthew 12:7
- Proverbs 17:15-16
- Psalms 34:22
- Romans 5:16

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6064, H7034, H7561, H8199, G01760, G08430, G26070, G26130, G26310, G26320, G26330, G29170, G29190, G29200, G52720, G60480

(Go back to: [Romans 2:1](#); [Notes](#); [3:8](#); [5:16](#); [5:18](#); [Notes](#); [8:1](#); [8:3](#); [8:34](#); [14:22](#); [14:23](#))

confess, confession

Definition:

To confess means to admit or assert that something is true. A “confession” is a statement or admission that something is true.

- The term “confess” can refer to boldly stating the truth about God. It can also refer to admitting that we have sinned.
- The Bible says that if people confess their sins to God, he will forgive them.
- James the apostle wrote in his letter that when believers confess their sins to each other, this brings spiritual healing.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Philippians that someday everyone will confess or declare that Jesus is Lord.
- Paul also said that if people confess that Jesus is Lord and believe that God raised him from the dead, they will be saved.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “confess” could include, “admit” or “testify” or “declare” or “acknowledge” or “affirm.”
- Different ways to translate “confession” could be, “declaration” or “testimony” or “statement about what we believe” or “admitting sin.”

(See also: [faith](#), [testimony](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:8-10
- 2 John 1:7-8
- James 5:16
- Leviticus 5:5-6
- Matthew 3:4-6
- Nehemiah 1:6-7
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Psalms 38:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3034, H8426, G18430, G36700, G36710

(Go back to: [Romans 10:9](#); [10:10](#); [14:11](#))

confidence, confident

Definition:

The term “confidence” refers to being sure that something is true or certain to happen.

- In the Bible, the term “hope” often means to wait expectantly for something that is sure to happen. The ULT often translates this as “confidence” or “confidence for the future” or “future confidence” especially when it means to be assured of receiving what God has promised to believers in Jesus.
- Often the term “confidence” refers especially to the certainty that believers in Jesus have that they will someday be with God forever in heaven.
- The phrase, “have confidence in God” means to fully expect to receive and experience what God has promised.
- Being “confident” means believing in God’s promises and acting with the assurance that God will do what he has said. This term can also have the meaning of acting boldly and courageously.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “confident” could be translated as “assured” or “very sure.”
- The phrase “be confident” could also be translated as “trust completely” or “be completely sure about” or “know for certain.”
- The term “confidently” could also be translated as “boldly” or “with certainty.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “confidence” could include, “complete assurance” or “sure expectation” or “certainty.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe](#), [bold](#), [faithful](#), [hope](#), [trust](#))

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0982, H0983, H0986, H3689, H3690, H4009, G22920, G39540, G39820, G40060, G52870

(Go back to: [Romans 2:19](#); [8:38](#); [14:14](#); [15:14](#))

confirm, confirmation, legal

Definition:

The term “confirm” refers to verifying that something is true or legally certifying that a transaction has occurred.

- When a king is “confirmed” it means that the decision to make him king has been agreed upon and supported by the people.
- To confirm what someone wrote means to verify that what was written is true.
- The “confirmation” of the gospel means teaching people about the good news of Jesus in such a way that it shows that it is true.
- To give an oath “as confirmation” means to solemnly state or swear that something is true or trustworthy.
- Ways to translate “confirm” could include, “state as true” or “prove to be trustworthy” or “agree with” or “assure” or “promise,” depending on the context.

(See also: [covenant](#), oath, [trust](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:15-18
- 2 Corinthians 1:21
- 2 Kings 23:3
- Hebrews 6:16-18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H1396, H3045, H3559, H4390, H4672, H5414, H5975, H6213, H6965, G09500, G09510, G33150, G49720

(Go back to: [Romans 15:8](#))

conscience

Definition:

The conscience is the part of a person's thinking through which God makes him aware that he is doing something sinful.

- God gave people a conscience to help them know the difference between what is right and what is wrong.
- A person who obeys God is said to have a "pure" or "clear" or "clean" conscience.
- If a person has a "clear conscience" it means that he is not hiding any sin.
- If someone ignores their conscience and no longer feels guilty when he sins, this means his conscience is no longer sensitive to what is wrong. The Bible calls this a "seared" conscience, one that is "branded" as if with a hot iron. Such a conscience is also called "insensitive" and "polluted."
- Possible ways to translate this term could include, "inner moral guide" or "moral thinking."

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 1:19
- 1 Timothy 3:9
- 2 Corinthians 5:11
- 2 Timothy 1:3
- Romans 9:1
- Titus 1:15-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: G48930

(Go back to: [Romans 2:15](#); [9:1](#); [13:5](#))

courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, discourage, discouragement

Facts:

The term “courage” refers to boldly facing or doing something that is difficult, frightening, or dangerous.

- The term, “courageous” describes someone who shows courage, who does the right thing even when feeling afraid or pressured to give up.
- A person shows courage when he faces emotional or physical pain with strength and perseverance.
- The expression “take courage” means “don’t be afraid” or “be assured that things will turn out well.”
- When Joshua was preparing to go into the dangerous land of Canaan, Moses exhorted him to be “strong and courageous.”
- The term “courageous” could also be translated as “brave” or “unafraid” or “bold.”
- Depending on the context, to “have courage” could also be translated as “be emotionally strong” or “be confident” or “stand firm.”
- To “speak with courage” could be translated as “speak boldly” or “speak without being afraid” or “speak confidently.”

The terms “encourage” and “encouragement” refer to saying and doing things to cause someone to have comfort, hope, confidence, and courage.

- A similar term is “exhort,” which means to urge someone to reject an activity that is wrong and to instead do things that are good and right.
- The apostle Paul and other New Testament writers taught Christians to encourage one another to love and serve others.

The term “discourage” refers to saying and doing things that cause people to lose hope, confidence, and courage and so to have less desire to keep working hard to do what they know they should do.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “encourage” could include “urge” or “comfort” or “say kind things” or “help and support.”
- The phrase “give words of encouragement” means “say things that cause other people to feel loved, accepted, and empowered.”

(See also: [confidence](#), [exhort](#), [fear](#), [strength](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 1:37-38
- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 1 Chronicles 17:25
- Matthew 9:20-22
- 1 Corinthians 14:1-4
- 2 Corinthians 7:13
- Acts 5:12-13
- Acts 16:40
- Hebrews 3:12-13
- Hebrews 13:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0533, H0553, H1368, H2388, H2388, H2428, H3820, H3824, H7307, G21140, G21150, G21740, G22920, G22930, G22940, G38700, G38740, G39540, G43890, G48370, G51110

(Go back to: [Romans 15:4](#); [15:5](#))

covenant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “covenant” refers to a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term “new covenant” refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God’s “new covenant” was explained in the part of the Bible called the “New Testament.”
- This new covenant is in contrast to the “old” or “former” covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people’s sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “binding agreement” or “formal commitment” or “pledge” or “contract.”
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as “promise” or “pledge.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term “new covenant” could be translated as “new formal agreement” or “new pact” or “new contract.”
- The word “new” in these expressions has the meaning of “fresh” or “new kind of” or “another.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [promise](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 9:12
- Genesis 17:7
- Genesis 31:44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26

- 2 Samuel 23:5
- 2 Kings 18:11-12
- Mark 14:24
- Luke 1:73
- Luke 22:20
- Acts 7:8
- 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
- 2 Corinthians 3:6
- Galatians 3:17-18
- Hebrews 12:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:9** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **5:4** "I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac."
- **6:4** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
- **7:10** "The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob."
- **13:2** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation."
- **13:4** Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.
- **21:5** Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New Covenant**, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.
- **21:14** Through the Messiah's death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it."
- **48:11** But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1285, H2319, H3772, G08020, G12420, G49340

(Go back to: [Romans 4 General Notes](#); [9:4](#); [11:27](#))

create, created, creation, creator

Definition:

The term “create” means to make something or to cause something to be. Whatever is created is called a “creation.” God is called the “Creator” because he caused everything in the entire universe to come into existence.

- When this term is used to refer to God creating the world, it means he made it out of nothing.
- When human beings “create” something, it means they made it out of things that already existed.
- Sometimes “create” is used in a figurative way to describe something abstract, such as creating peace, or creating a pure heart in someone.
- The term “creation” can refer to the very beginning of the world when God first created everything. It can also be used to refer generally to everything that God created. Sometimes the word “creation” refers more specifically to just the people in the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages may have to directly say that God created the world “out of nothing” to make sure this meaning is clear.
- The phrase, “since the creation of the world” means “since the time when God created the world.”
- A similar phrase, “at the beginning of creation” could be translated as “when God created the world at the beginning of time,” or “when the world was first created.”
- To preach the good news to “all creation” means to preach the good news to “all people everywhere on earth.”
- The phrase “Let all creation rejoice” means “Let everything that God created rejoice.”
- Depending on the context, “create” could be translated as “make” or “cause to be” or “make out of nothing.”
- The term “the Creator” could be translated as “the One who created everything” or “God, who made the whole world.”
- Phrases like “your Creator” could be translated as “God, who created you.”

(See also: [God](#), [good news](#), [world](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 11:9-10
- 1 Peter 4:17-19
- Colossians 1:15
- Galatians 6:15
- Genesis 1:1
- Genesis 14:19-20

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3335, H4639, H6213, H6385, H7069, G20410, G26020, G26750, G29360, G29370, G29390, G41600, G54800

(Go back to: [Romans 1:20](#); [1:25](#); [8:19](#); [8:20](#); [8:21](#); [8:22](#); [8:39](#))

crucify, crucified

Definition:

The term “crucify” means to execute someone by attaching him to a cross and leaving him there to suffer and die in great pain.

- The victim was either tied to the cross or nailed to it. Crucified people died from blood loss or from suffocation.
- The ancient Roman Empire frequently used this method of execution to punish and kill people who were terrible criminals or who had rebelled against the authority of their government.
- The Jewish religious leaders asked the Roman governor to order his soldiers to crucify Jesus. The soldiers nailed Jesus to a cross. He suffered there for six hours, and then died.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “crucify” could be translated as “kill on a cross” or “execute by nailing to a cross.”

(See also: [cross](#), [Rome](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 2:23
- Galatians 2:20-21
- Luke 23:20-22
- Luke 23:34
- Matthew 20:17-19
- Matthew 27:23-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:11** But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, “**Crucify** him (Jesus)!”
- **39:12** Pilate became afraid that the crowd would begin to riot, so he ordered his soldiers to **crucify** Jesus. played a major role in the crucifixion of Jesus Christ.
- **40:1** After the soldiers mocked Jesus, they led him away to **crucify** him. They made him carry the cross on which he would die.
- **40:4** Jesus was **crucified** between two robbers.
- **43:6** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know. But you **crucified** him!”
- **43:9** “You **crucified** this man, Jesus.”
- **44:8** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You **crucified** Jesus, but God raised him to life again!”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G03880, G43620, G47170, G49570

(Go back to: [Romans 6:6](#))

cry, cry out, outcry

Definition:

The terms “cry” or “cry out” usually mean to say something loudly or urgently. Someone can “cry out” in pain, distress, anger, or fear, often with the intent of asking for help.

- The phrase “cry out” can also mean to shout or to call out with the intent of asking for help.
- It can also mean to pray.
- This term could also be translated as “exclaim loudly” or “urgently ask for help,” depending on the context.
- An expression such as, “I cry out to you” could be translated as “I call to you for help” or “I urgently ask you for help.”

(See also: [call](#), [plead](#), [pray](#))

Bible References:

- Job 27:9
- Mark 5:5-6
- Mark 6:48-50
- Psalm 22:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1058, H2199, H2201, H6030, H6463, H6670, H6682, H6817, H6818, H6873, H6963, H7121, H7123, H7321, H7440, H7442, H7723, H7737, H7768, H7771, H7775, H8663, G03100, G03490, G08630, G09940, G09950, G19160, G20190, G27990, G28050, G28960, G29050, G29060, G29290, G43770, G54550

(Go back to: [Romans 8:15](#); [9:27](#); [12:15](#))

curse, cursed, cursing

Definition:

The term “curse” means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “cause bad things to happen to” or “declare that something bad will happen to” or “swear to cause evil things to happen to.”
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as “punish by allowing bad things to happen.”
- The term “cursed” when used to describe people could be translated as “(this person) will experience much trouble.”
- The phrase “cursed be” could be translated as “May (this person) experience great difficulties.”
- The phrase, “Cursed is the ground” could be translated as “The soil will not be very fertile.”
- However, if the target language has the phrase “cursed be” and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: [bless](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 2 Peter 2:12-14
- Galatians 3:10
- Galatians 3:14
- Genesis 3:14
- Genesis 3:17
- James 3:10
- Numbers 22:6
- Psalms 109:28

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:9** God said to the snake, “You are **cursed!**”
- **2:11** “Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food.”
- **4:4** “I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you.”
- **39:7** Then Peter vowed, saying, “May God **curse** me if I know this man!”
- **50:16** Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0422, H0423, H0779, H1288, H2763, H2764, H3994, H5344, H6895, H7043, H7045, H7621, H8381, G03310, G03320, G06850, G19440, G25510, G26520, G26530, G26710, G26720, G60350

(Go back to: [Romans 9:3](#); [12:14](#))

cut off, cut down

Definition:

The expression “be cut off” is an expression that means to be excluded, banished or isolated from the main group. It can also refer to being killed as an act of divine judgment for sin.

- In the Old Testament, disobeying God’s commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God’s people and from his presence.
- God also said he would “cut off” or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.
- The expression “cut off” is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression “be cut off” could be translated as “be banished” or “be sent away” or “be separated from” or “be killed” or “be destroyed.”
- Depending on the context, to “cut off” could be translated as to “destroy” or to “send away” or to “separate from” or to “destroy.”
- In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as “were stopped” or “were caused to stop flowing” or “were divided.”
- The literal meaning of cutting something with a knife should be distinguished from the figurative uses of this term.

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:14
- Judges 21:6
- Proverbs 23:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H1219, H1438, H1494, H1504, H1629, H1820, H2686, H3582, H3772, H5243, H5352, H6789, H7088, H7096, H7112, H7113, G06090, G08510, G15810

(Go back to: [Romans 11:22](#); [11:24](#))

darkness

Definition:

The term “darkness” literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of this term:

- As a metaphor, “darkness” means “impurity” or “evil” or “spiritual blindness.”
- It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
- The expression “dominion of darkness” refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
- The term “darkness” can also be used as a metaphor for death. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- People who do not know God are said to be “living in darkness,” which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
- God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
- The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as “outer darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
- For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, “darkness of night” (as opposed to “light of day”) or “not seeing anything, like at night” or “evil, like a dark place”.

(See also: [corrupt](#), [dominion](#), [kingdom](#), [light](#), [redeem](#), [righteous](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:6
- 1 John 2:8
- 1 Thessalonians 5:5
- 2 Samuel 22:12
- Colossians 1:13
- Isaiah 5:30
- Jeremiah 13:16
- Joshua 24:7
- Matthew 8:12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0652, H0653, H2816, H2821, H2822, H2825, H3990, H3991, H4285, H5890, H6205, G22170, G46520, G46530, G46550, G46560

([Go back to: Romans 1:21; 2:19; 11:10; 13:12](#))

David

Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Goliath, Philistines, Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 17:12-13
- 1 Samuel 20:34
- 2 Samuel 5:2
- 2 Timothy 2:8
- Acts 2:25
- Acts 13:22
- Luke 1:32
- Mark 2:26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:2** God chose a young Israelite named **David** to be king after Saul. **David** was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. ... **David** was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **17:3** **David** was also a great soldier and leader. When **David** was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath.
- **17:4** Saul became jealous of the people's love for **David**. Saul tried many times to kill him, so **David** hid from Saul.
- **17:5** God blessed **David** and made him successful. **David** fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.
- **17:6** **David** wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **17:9** **David** ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what **David** had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell **David** how evil his sin was. **David** repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, **David** followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1732, G11380

(Go back to: [Romans 1:3](#); [4:6](#); [11:9](#))

day

Definition:

The term “day” generally refers to the time it takes for the alternating periods of light and darkness in the sky to complete one cycle (that is, 24 hours). However, in the Bible the same term is often used to refer to a shorter period of time (such as the time between sunrise and sunset) or a longer period of time that is often not specified.

- “Day” is sometimes used in contrast to “night.” In these cases, the term refers to the period of time when the sky is light.
- The term may also refer to a specific point in time, such as “today.”
- Sometimes the term “day” is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the “day of Yahweh” or “last days.” Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate “day” non-figuratively.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally as “day” or “daytime” using the word in your language that refers to the part of the day when there is light.
- Other translations of “day” could include “daytime,” “time,” “season,” “occasion” or “event,” depending on the context.

(See also: [time](#), judgment day, last day)

Bible References:

- Acts 20:6
- Daniel 10:4
- Ezra 6:15
- Ezra 6:19
- Matthew 9:15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H3118, H6242, G22500

(Go back to: [Romans 2:5](#); [2:16](#); [8:36](#); [10:21](#); [11:8](#); [13:12](#); [13:13](#); [14:5](#); [14:6](#))

deceive, lie, deception, illusions

Definition:

The term “deceive” means to cause someone to believe something that is not true, often by telling a “lie.” The act of deceiving someone is called “lying,” “deceit,” or “deception.”

- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a “deceiver.” For example, Satan is called a “deceiver.” The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- To “lie” is to say something that is not true.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as “deceptive.”
- The terms “deceit” and “deception” have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms “deceitful” and “deceptive” have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “deceive” could include “lie to” or “cause to have a false belief” or “cause someone to think something that is not true.”
- The term “deceived” could also be translated as “caused to think something false” or “lied to” or “tricked” or “fooled” or “misled.”
- “Deceiver” could be translated as “liar” or “one who misleads” or “someone who deceives.”
- Depending on the context, the terms “deception” or “deceit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “falsehood” or “lying” or “trickery” or “dishonesty.”
- The terms “deceptive” or “deceitful” could be translated as “untruthful” or “misleading” or “lying” to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: [true](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:8
- 1 Timothy 2:14
- 2 Thessalonians 2:3-4
- Genesis 3:12-13
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Leviticus 19:11-12
- Matthew 27:64
- Micah 6:11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0898, H2048, H3577, H3584, H3868, H4123, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H5558, H6121, H6231, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8582, H8591, H8649, G05380, G05390, G13860, G13870, G13880, G18180, G38840, G41050, G41060, G41080, G54220, G54230

(Go back to: [Romans 1:27](#); [1:29](#); [3:13](#); [7:11](#); [16:18](#))

declare, proclaim, announce

Definition:

The terms “declare” and “declaration” refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something. Other terms with similar meaning include “proclaim,” “proclamation,” “announce,” and “announcement.”

- A “declaration” not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by “the declaration of Yahweh” or “this is what Yahweh declares.” This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “declare” could also be translated as “proclaim” or “publicly state” or “strongly say” or “emphatically state.”
- The term “declaration” could also be translated as “statement” or “proclamation.”
- The phrase “this is Yahweh’s declaration” could be translated as “this is what Yahweh declares” or “this is what Yahweh says.”

(See also: [preach](#), decree)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:24
- 1 Corinthians 15:31-32
- 1 Samuel 24:17-18
- Amos 2:16
- Ezekiel 5:11-12
- Matthew 7:21-23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0262, H0559, H0816, H0874, H1696, H3045, H4853, H5002, H5042, H5046, H5608, H6567, H7121, H7561, H7878, H8085, G03120, G05180, G06690, G12290, G13440, G15550, G17180, G18340, G20970, G25110, G26050, G26070, G31400, G36700, G37240, G38220, G38700, G39550, G42960

(Go back to: [Romans 1:4](#); [4:6](#); [9:17](#); [15:21](#))

deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue

Definition:

To “deliver” someone means to rescue that person. The term “deliverer” refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term “deliverance” refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

- In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
- These deliverers were also called “judges” and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
- God is also called a “deliverer.” Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.
- The term “deliver over to” or “deliver up to” has a very different meaning of handing or turning someone over to an enemy, such as when Judas delivered Jesus over to the Jewish leaders.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term “deliver” can be translated as “rescue” or “liberate” or “save.”
- When it means to deliver someone over to the enemy, “deliver over” can be translated as “betray to” or “hand over” or “give over.”
- The word “deliverer” can also be translated as “rescuer” or “liberator.”
- When the term “deliverer” refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as “governor” or “judge” or “leader.”

(See also: [judge](#), [save](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 1:10
- Acts 7:35
- Galatians 1:4
- Judges 10:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:3** Then God provided a **deliverer** who rescued them from their enemies and brought peace to the land.
- **16:16** They (Israel) finally asked God for help again, and God sent them another **deliverer**.
- **16:17** Over many years, God sent many **deliverers** who saved the Israelites from their enemies.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H2020, H2502, H3205, H3444, H3467, H4042, H4422, H4672, H5337, H5414, H5462, H6299, H6403, H6413, H6475, H6561, H7725, H7804, H8199, G03250, G05250, G06290, G10800, G13250, G15600, G16590, G18070, G19290, G26730, G30860, G38600, G45060, G49910, G50880, G54830

(Go back to: [Romans 7:24](#); [11:26](#); [15:31](#))

descend, descendant

Definition:

A “descendant” is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

- For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
- A person’s descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob’s descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The phrase “descended from” is another way of saying “a descendant of” as in “Abraham was descended from Noah.” This could also be translated as “from the family line of.”

(See also: [Abraham](#), [ancestor](#), [Jacob](#), Noah, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 9:4-5
- Acts 13:23
- Deuteronomy 2:20-22
- Genesis 10:1
- Genesis 28:12-13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:9** “The woman’s **descendant** will crush your head, and you will wound his heel.”
- **4:9** “I give the land of Canaan to your **descendants**.”
- **5:10** “Your **descendants** will be more than the stars in the sky.”
- **17:7** “Someone from your family will always rule as king over Israel, and the Messiah will be one of your **descendants!**”
- **18:13** The kings of Judah were **descendants** of David.
- **21:4** God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David’s own **descendants**.
- **48:13** God promised David that the Messiah would be one of his **descendants**. Jesus, the Messiah, was that special **descendant** of David.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0319, H1004, H1121, H1323, H1755, H2232, H2233, H3205, H3211, H3318, H3409, H4294, H5220, H6849, H7611, H8435, G10740, G10850, G46900

(Go back to: [Romans 1:3](#); [4:13](#); [4:16](#); [4:18](#); [9:7](#); [11:1](#))

die, dead, deadly, death

Definition:

The term “death” refers to being physically dead instead of alive.

1. Physical death

- To “die” means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- The expression “put to death” refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

2. Eternal death

- Eternal death is the separation of a person from God.
- This is the kind of death that happened to Adam when he sinned and disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- This same kind of death happens to every person, because we sin. But God gives us eternal life when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
- In some languages, to “die” may be expressed as to “not live.” The term “dead” may be translated as “not alive” or “not having any life” or “not living.”
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as to “pass away” in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, eternal life and eternal death are often compared to physical life and physical death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and eternal death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say “eternal death” when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say “physical death” in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression “the dead” is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as “dead people” or “people who have died.” (See: nominal adjective)
- The expression “put to death” could also be translated as “kill” or “murder” or “execute.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faith](#), [life](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:21
- 1 Thessalonians 4:17
- Acts 10:42
- Acts 14:19
- Colossians 2:15
- Colossians 2:20
- Genesis 2:15-17
- Genesis 34:27
- Matthew 16:28
- Romans 5:10

- Romans 5:12
- Romans 6:10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **2:11** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **7:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:5** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **40:8** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:7** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **48:2** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0006, H1478, H1826, H1934, H2491, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H8045, H8546, H8552, G03360, G03370, G05200, G05990, G06150, G06220, G16340, G19350, G20790, G22530, G22860, G22870, G22880, G22890, G23480, G28370, G29660, G34980, G34990, G35000, G44300, G48800, G48810, G50530, G50540

(Go back to: [Romans 1:4](#); [1:32](#); [4:17](#); [4:19](#); [4:24](#); [Notes](#); [5:6](#); [5:7](#); [5:8](#); [5:10](#); [5:12](#); [5:14](#); [5:15](#); [5:17](#); [5:21](#); [Notes](#); [6:2](#); [6:3](#); [6:4](#); [6:5](#); [6:7](#); [6:8](#); [6:9](#); [6:10](#); [6:11](#); [6:13](#); [6:16](#); [6:21](#); [6:23](#); [7:2](#); [7:3](#); [7:4](#); [7:5](#); [7:6](#); [7:8](#); [7:10](#); [7:13](#); [7:24](#); [8:2](#); [8:6](#); [8:10](#); [8:11](#); [8:13](#); [8:34](#); [8:36](#); [8:38](#); [10:7](#); [10:9](#); [11:15](#); [14:7](#); [14:8](#); [14:9](#); [14:15](#))

dishonor, dishonorable

Definition:

The term “dishonor” means to do something that is disrespectful to someone. This can also cause that person shame or disgrace.

- The term “dishonorable” describes an action that is shameful or that causes someone to be dishonored.
- Sometimes “dishonorable” is used to refer to objects that are not useful for anything important.
- Children are commanded to honor and obey their parents. When children disobey, they dishonor their parents. They are treating their parents in a way that does not honor them.
- The Israelites dishonored Yahweh when they worshiped false gods and practiced immoral behavior.
- The Jews dishonored Jesus by saying that he was possessed by a demon.
- This could be translated as to “not honor” or to “treat with no respect.”
- The noun “dishonor” could be translated as “disrespect” or “loss of honor.”
- Depending on the context, “dishonorable” could also be translated as “not honorable” or “shameful” or “not worthwhile” or “not valuable.”

(See also: [honor](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 4:10
- 1 Samuel 20:34
- 2 Corinthians 6:8-10
- Ezekiel 22:7
- John 8:48
- Leviticus 18:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1540, H2490, H2781, H3637, H3639, H5006, H5034, H6172, H6173, H7034, H7043, G08180, G08190, G08200, G26170

(Go back to: [Romans 1:26; 9:21](#))

disobey, disobeyed, disobedience, rebellious

Definition:

The term “disobey” means to not obey what someone in authority has commanded or instructed. A person who does this is being “disobedient.”

- A person who does something he was told not to do is disobeying.
- To disobey also means to refuse to do something that was commanded.
- The term “disobedient” is also used to describe the character of someone who habitually disobeys or rebels. It means that they are sinful or wicked.
- The term “disobedience” means “the act of not obeying” or “behavior that is against what God wants.”
- A “disobedient people” could be translated by “people who keep on disobeying” or “people who do not do what God commands.”

(See also: [authority](#), [evil](#), [sin](#), [obey](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 13:21
- Acts 26:19
- Colossians 3:7
- Luke 1:17
- Luke 6:49
- Psalms 89:30-32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:11** God said to the man, “You listened to your wife and **disobeyed** me.”
- **13:7** If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they **disobeyed** them, God would punish them.
- **16:2** Because the Israelites kept **disobeying** God, he punished them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **35:12** “The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked faithfully for you! I never **disobeyed** you, and still you did not give me one small goat so I could celebrate with my friends.’”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4784, H5674, G05060, G05430, G05440, G05450, G38470, G38760

(Go back to: [Romans 1:30](#); [2:8](#); [5:19](#); [10:21](#); [11:30](#); [11:31](#); [11:32](#))

divine

Definition:

The term “divine” refers to anything pertaining to God.

- Some ways this term is used include “divine authority,” “divine judgment,” “divine nature,” “divine power,” and “divine glory.”
- In one passage in the Bible, the term “divine” is used to describe something about a false deity.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the term “divine” could include “God’s” or “from God” or “pertaining to God” or “characterized by God.”
- For example, “divine authority” could be translated as “God’s authority” or “authority that comes from God.”
- The phrase “divine glory” could be translated as “God’s glory” or “the glory that God has” or “glory that comes from God.”
- Some translations may prefer to use a different word when describing something that pertains to a false god.

(See also: [authority](#), [false god](#), [glory](#), [God](#), [judge](#), [power](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:3-4
- 2 Peter 1:4
- Romans 1:20

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G23040, G29990

(Go back to: [Romans 1:20](#); [11:4](#))

drunk, drunkard

Facts:

The term “drunk” means to be intoxicated from drinking too much of an alcoholic beverage.

- A “drunkard” is a person who is often drunk. This kind of person could also be referred to as an “alcoholic.”
- The Bible tells believers not to be drunk with alcoholic drinks, but to be controlled by God’s Holy Spirit.
- The Bible teaches that drunkenness is unwise and influences a person to sin in other ways.
- Other ways to translate “drunk” could include “inebriated” or “intoxicated” or “having too much alcohol” or “filled with fermented drink.”

(See also: [wine](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:11-13
- 1 Samuel 25:36
- Jeremiah 13:13
- Luke 7:34
- Luke 21:34
- Proverbs 23:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5433, H7301, H7910, H7937, H7941, H7943, H8354, H8358, G31780, G31820, G31830, G31840, G36300, G36320

(Go back to: [Romans 13:13](#))

earth, land

Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world on which human beings and other living things live. In the Bible, this term is sometimes translated as “land” when used in a general way to refer to the ground or the soil, or when used in a specific way to refer to a particular geographical area, usually a country or nation.

- In the Bible, the term “earth” is often paired with the term “heaven” as a way of indicating the abode of humankind on the earth in contrast with the abode of God in heaven.
- This term is usually translated “land” when paired with the name of people group to denote the territory belonging to those people, such as “the land of Canaan.”
- The term “earthly” is sometimes used to refer to things that are physical and/or visible in contrast to things that are non-physical and/or invisible.
- This term can be used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth or what the earth contains, such as in “let the earth be glad” and “he will judge the earth.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: [world](#), [heaven](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 1:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 2:11-12
- Daniel 4:35
- Luke 12:51
- Matthew 6:10
- Matthew 11:25
- Zechariah 6:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0127, H0772, H0776, H0778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G10930, G19190, G27090, G28860, G36250, G45780, G55170

(Go back to: [Romans 9:17](#); [9:28](#); [10:18](#))

Elijah

Facts:

Elijah was one of the most important prophets of Yahweh. Elijah prophesied during the reigns of several kings of Israel and Judah, including King Ahab.

- God did many miracles through Elijah, including raising a dead boy back to life.
- Elijah rebuked King Ahab for worshiping the false god Baal.
- He challenged the prophets of Baal to a test that proved that Yahweh is the only true God.
- At the end of Elijah's life, God miraculously took him up to heaven while he was still alive.
- Hundreds of years later, Elijah, along with Moses, appeared with Jesus on a mountain, and they talked together about Jesus' coming suffering and death in Jerusalem.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: miracle, [prophet](#), Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 17:1
- 2 Kings 1:3-4
- James 5:16-18
- John 1:19-21
- John 1:24-25
- Mark 9:5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:2 Elijah** was a prophet when Ahab was king over the kingdom of Israel.
- **19:2 Elijah** said to Ahab, "There will be no rain or dew in the kingdom of Israel until I say so."
- **19:3** God told **Elijah** to go to a stream in the wilderness to hide from Ahab who wanted to kill him. Every morning and every evening, birds would bring him bread and meat.
- **19:4** But they took care of **Elijah**, and God provided for them so that their flour jar and their bottle of oil never became empty.
- **19:5** After three and a half years, God told **Elijah** to return to the kingdom of Israel and speak with Ahab because he was going to send rain again.
- **19:7** Then **Elijah** said to the prophets of Baal, "Kill a bull and prepare it as a sacrifice, but do not light the fire."
- **19:12** Then **Elijah** said, "Do not let any of the prophets of Baal escape!"
- **36:3** Then Moses and the prophet **Elijah** appeared. These men had lived hundreds of years before this. They talked with Jesus about his death that would soon happen in Jerusalem.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0452, G22430

(Go back to: [Romans 11:2](#))

endure, endurance

Definition:

The term “endure” means to last a long time or to bear something difficult with patience.

- It also means to stand firm when times of testing come, without giving up.
- The term “endurance” can mean “patience” or “bearing up under a trial” or “persevering when being persecuted.”
- The encouragement to Christians to “endure to the end” is telling them to obey Jesus, even if this causes them to suffer.
- To “endure suffering” can also mean to “experience suffering.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the term “endure” could include “persevere” or “keep believing” or “continue to do what God wants you to do” or “stand firm.”
- In some contexts, to “endure” could be translated as to “experience” or to “go through.”
- With the meaning of lasting for a long time, the term “endure” could also be translated as “last” or “continue.” The phrase “will not endure” could be translated as “will not last” or “will not continue to survive.”
- Ways to translate “endurance” could include “perseverance” or “continuing to believe” or “remaining faithful.”

(See also: [persevere](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 2:11-13
- James 1:3
- James 1:12
- Luke 21:19
- Matthew 13:21
- Revelation 1:9
- Romans 5:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0386, H3201, H3557, H5331, H5375, H5975, G04300, G09070, G15260, G20050, G20760, G25940, G33060, G47220, G52780, G52810, G52970, G53420

(Go back to: [Romans 2:7](#); [9:22](#); [12:12](#); [15:4](#); [15:5](#))

enslave, slave, bondservant, bound

Definition:

To “enslave” someone means to force that person to serve a master or a ruling country. To be “enslaved” or “in bondage” means to be under the control of something or someone.

- A person who is enslaved or in bondage must serve others without payment; he is not free to do what he wants. Another word for “bondage” is “slavery.”
- The New Testament speaks of human beings as “enslaved” to sin until Jesus frees them from its control and power. When a person receives new life in Christ, he stops being a slave to sin and becomes a slave to righteousness.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “enslave” could be translated as “cause to not be free” or “force to serve others” or “put under the control of others.”
- The phrase “enslaved to” or “in bondage to” could be translated as “forced to be a slave of” or “forced to serve” or “under the control of.”

(See also: [free](#), [righteous](#), [servant](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 4:3
- Galatians 4:24-25
- Genesis 15:13
- Jeremiah 30:8-9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3533, H5647, G13980, G14020, G26150

(Go back to: [Romans 6:6](#))

envy, covet

Definition:

The term “envy” refers to being jealous of someone because of what that person possesses or because of that person’s admirable qualities. The term “covet” means to strongly desire to have something.

- Envy is normally a negative feeling of resentment because of another person’s success, good fortune, or possessions.
- Coveting is a strong desire to have someone else’s property, or even someone else’s spouse.

(See also: [jealous](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:4-7
- 1 Peter 2:1
- Exodus 20:17
- Mark 7:20-23
- Proverbs 3:31-32
- Romans 1:29

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0183, H1214, H1215, H2530, H3415, H5869, H7065, H7068, G08660, G19370, G22050, G22060, G37130, G37880, G41230, G41240, G41900, G53540, G53550, G53660

(Go back to: [Romans 1:29](#); [7:7](#); [7:8](#))

epistle, letter

Definition:

A letter is a written message sent to a person or group of persons who are usually a distance away from the writer. An epistle is a special type of letter, often written in a more formal style, for a special purpose, such as teaching.

- In New Testament times, epistles and other types of letters were written on parchment made from animal skins or on papyrus made from plant fibers.
- The New Testament epistles from Paul, John, James, Jude, and Peter were letters of instruction that they wrote to encourage, exhort, and teach the early Christians in various cities throughout the Roman Empire.
- Ways to translate this term could include “written message” or “written down words” or “writing.”

(See also: [encourage](#), [exhort](#), [teach](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:27
- 2 Thessalonians 2:15
- Acts 9:1-2
- Acts 28:21-22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0104, H0107, H3791, H4385, H5406, H5407, H5612, G11210, G19920

(Go back to: [Romans 16:22](#))

Esau

Facts:

Esau was one of the twin sons of Isaac and Rebekah. He was the first baby born to them. His twin brother was Jacob.

- Esau sold his birthright to his brother Jacob in exchange for a bowl of food.
- Since Esau was born first, his father Isaac was supposed to give him a special blessing. But Jacob tricked Isaac into giving him that blessing instead. At first Esau was so angry that he wanted to kill Jacob, but later he forgave him.
- Esau had many children and grandchildren, and these descendants formed a large people group living in the land of Canaan.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Edom, [Isaac](#), [Jacob](#), [Rebekah](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 25:26
- Genesis 25:29-30
- Genesis 26:34
- Genesis 27:11-12
- Genesis 32:5
- Hebrews 12:17
- Romans 9:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:7** When Rebekah's babies were born, the older son came out red and hairy, and they named him **Esau**.
- **7:2** So *Esau* gave Jacob his rights as the oldest son.
- **7:4** When Isaac felt the goat hair and smelled the clothes, he thought it was **Esau** and blessed him.
- **7:5** **Esau** hated Jacob because Jacob had stolen his rights as oldest son and also his blessing.
- **7:10** But *Esau* had already forgiven Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6215, G22690

(Go back to: [Romans 9:13](#))

eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever

Definition:

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.

The term “forever” refers to never-ending time.

- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like. It emphasizes that something will always happen or exist. It refers to time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referred to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- “Forever” could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase “forever and ever” could also be translated as “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of David will always be reigning.”

(See also: [David](#), [reign](#), [life](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:8
- Genesis 48:4
- Exodus 15:17
- 2 Samuel 3:28-30
- 1 Kings 2:32-33
- Job 4:20-21
- Psalms 21:4
- Isaiah 9:6-7
- Isaiah 40:27-28
- Daniel 7:18

- Luke 18:18
- Acts 13:46
- Romans 5:21
- Hebrews 6:19-20
- Hebrews 10:11-14
- 1 John 1:2
- 1 John 5:12
- Revelation 1:4-6
- Revelation 22:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?”
- **28:1** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God’s laws.”
- **28:10** Jesus answered, “Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name’s sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H4481, H5331, H5703, H5705, H5769, H5865, H5957, H6924, G01260, G01650, G01660, G13360

(Go back to: [Romans 1:20](#); [2:7](#); [5:21](#); [6:22](#); [6:23](#); [Notes](#); [16:26](#))

evil, wicked, unpleasant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “evil” can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: [disobey](#), [sin](#), [good](#), [righteous](#), demon)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 6:10
- 3 John 1:10
- Genesis 2:17
- Genesis 6:5-6
- Job 1:1
- Job 8:20
- Judges 9:57
- Luke 6:22-23
- Matthew 7:11-12
- Proverbs 3:7
- Psalms 22:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:4** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- **3:1** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **3:2** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **4:2** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **8:12** “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- **14:2** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:1** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:8** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.

- **45:2** They said, “We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!”
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0205, H0605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2254, H2617, H3399, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G00920, G01130, G04590, G09320, G09870, G09880, G14260, G25490, G25510, G25540, G25550, G25560, G25570, G25590, G25600, G26350, G26360, G41510, G41890, G41900, G41910, G53370

(Go back to: [Romans 1:29](#); [1:30](#); [2:9](#); [3:8](#); [7:19](#); [7:21](#); [9:11](#); [12:9](#); [12:17](#); [12:21](#); [13:3](#); [13:4](#); [13:10](#); [16:19](#))

ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a “ram.” A female sheep is called a “ewe.” The plural of “sheep” is also “sheep.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [lamb](#), [sacrifice](#), [shepherd](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 8:32
- Genesis 30:32
- John 2:14
- Luke 15:5
- Mark 6:34
- Matthew 9:36
- Matthew 10:6
- Matthew 12:12
- Matthew 25:33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:12** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **17:2** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **30:3** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **38:8** Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0352, H1494, H1798, H2169, H3104, H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H5739, H5763, H6260, H6629, H6792, H7353, H7462, H7716, G41650, G42620, G42630

(Go back to: [Romans 8:36](#))

exhort, exhortation

Definition:

The term “exhort” means to strongly encourage and urge someone to do what is right. Such encouragement is called “exhortation.”

- The purpose of exhortation is to persuade other people to avoid sin and follow God’s will.
- The New Testament teaches Christians to exhort each other in love, not harshly or abruptly.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “exhort” could also be translated as “strongly urge” or “persuade” or “advise.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not imply that the exhorter is angry. The term should convey strength and seriousness, but should not refer to angry speech.
- In most contexts, the term “exhort” should be translated differently than “encourage,” which means to inspire, reassure, or comfort someone.
- Usually this term will also be translated differently from “admonish,” which means to warn or correct someone for his wrong behavior.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:3-4
- 1 Thessalonians 2:12
- 1 Timothy 5:2
- Luke 3:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G38670, G38700, G38740, G43890

(Go back to: [Romans 12:1](#); [12:8](#); [15:30](#); [16:17](#))

faith

Definition:

In general, the term “faith” refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To “have faith” in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To “have faith in Jesus” means to believe all of God’s teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes “faith” refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression “the truths of the faith.”
- In contexts such as “keep the faith” or “abandon the faith,” the term “faith” refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, “faith” can be translated as “belief” or “conviction” or “confidence” or “trust.”
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb “believe.” (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- The expression “keep the faith” could be translated by “keep believing in Jesus” or “continue to believe in Jesus.”
- The sentence “they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith” could be translated by “they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught.”
- The expression “my true son in the faith” could be translated by something like “who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus” or “my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:7
- Acts 6:7
- Galatians 2:20-21
- James 2:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:6** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham’s **faith** by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **31:7** Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, “You man of little **faith**, why did you doubt?”
- **32:16** Jesus said to her, “Your **faith** has healed you. Go in peace.”
- **38:9** Then Jesus said to Peter, “Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your **faith** will not fail.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0529, H0530, G16800, G36400, G41020, G60660

(Go back to: Romans 1 General Notes; 1:5; 1:8; 1:12; 1:17; Notes; Notes; 3:22; 3:25; 3:26; 3:27; 3:28; 3:30; 3:31; Notes; 4:5; 4:9; 4:11; 4:12; 4:13; 4:14; 4:16; 4:19; 4:20; 5:1; 5:2; Notes; Notes; 9:30; 9:32; Notes; 10:6; 10:8; 10:17; 11:20; Notes; 12:3; 12:6; Notes; 14:1; 14:22; 14:23; Notes; 16:26)

faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy

Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faith](#), [believe](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40
- Numbers 12:7
- Joshua 2:14
- Judges 2:16-17
- 1 Samuel 2:9
- Psalm 12:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 1:26
- Jeremiah 9:7-9
- Hosea 5:7
- Luke 12:46
- Luke 16:10
- Colossians 1:7
- 1 Thessalonians 5:24
- 3 John 1:5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:5** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:9** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **35:12** “The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!’”
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:4** “If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0529, H0530, H0539, H0540, H0571, H0898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G05690, G05710, G41030

(Go back to: [Romans 3:3](#))

faithless, unfaithful, unfaithfulness

Definition:

The term “faithless” means to not have faith or to not believe.

- This word is used to describe people who do not believe in God. Their lack of belief is seen by the immoral way they act.
- The prophet Jeremiah accused Israel of being faithless and disobedient to God.
- They worshiped idols and followed other ungodly customs of people groups who did not worship or obey God.

The term “unfaithful” describes people who do not do what God has commanded them to do. The condition or practice of being unfaithful is “unfaithfulness.”

- The people of Israel were called “unfaithful” when they began to worship idols and when they disobeyed God in other ways.
- In marriage, someone who commits adultery is “unfaithful” to his or her spouse.
- God used the term “unfaithfulness” to describe Israel’s disobedient behavior. They were not obeying God or honoring him.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “faithless” could be translated as “unfaithful” or “unbelieving” or “disobedient to God” or “not believing.”
- The term “faithlessness” could be translated as “unbelief” or “unfaithfulness” or “rebellion against God.”
- The phrase “the unfaithful” could be translated as “people who are not faithful (to God)” or “unfaithful people” or “those who disobey God” or “people who rebel against God.”
- In some languages, the term “unfaithful” is related to the word for “unbelief.”

(See also: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#), [disobey](#), [adultery](#))

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 43:6-8
- Ezra 9:1-2
- Jeremiah 2:19
- Proverbs 2:22
- Revelation 21:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G05710

(**Go back to:** [Romans 3:3](#))

famine

Definition:

The term “famine” refers to an extreme lack of food throughout a country or region, usually due to not enough rain.

- Food crops can fail from natural causes such as lack of rain, crop disease, or insects.
- Food shortages can also be caused by people, such as enemies who destroy crops.
- In the Bible, God sometimes caused famine as a way to punish nations when they sinned against him.
- In Amos 8:11 the term “famine” is used figuratively to refer to a time when God punished his people by not speaking to them. This could be translated with the word for “famine” in your language, or with a phrase such as “extreme lack” or “severe deprivation.”

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:11-12
- Acts 7:11
- Genesis 12:10
- Genesis 45:6
- Jeremiah 11:21-23
- Luke 4:25
- Matthew 24:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3720, H7458, H7459, G30420

(Go back to: [Romans 8:35](#))

fear, afraid, frighten

Definition:

The terms “fear” refers to the unpleasant emotion a person feels when experiencing a potential threat to their safety or well-being. In the Bible, however, the term “fear” can also mean an attitude of worship, respect, awe, or obedience toward another person, usually someone powerful such as God or a king.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “fear” can be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: “be afraid;” “deeply respect;” or “deep respect;” “revere;” or “reverence;” or perhaps “be in awe of.”
- The phrase “fear not” could also be translated as “do not be afraid” or “stop being afraid.”
- The sentence “The fear of God fell on all of them” might be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: “Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God;” or “Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply;” or “Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power).”

(See also: awe, Yahweh, [Lord](#), [marvel](#), [power](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:18
- Acts 2:43
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 6:14
- Jonah 1:9
- Luke 12:5
- Matthew 10:28
- Proverbs 10:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0367, H0926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032, H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G08700, G11670, G11680, G11690, G16300, G17190, G21240, G21250, G29620, G53980, G53990, G54000, G54010

(Go back to: [Romans 3:18](#); [8:15](#); [11:20](#); [13:3](#); [13:4](#); [13:7](#))

fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- Fire could also refer to lightning in the context of a storm or it being from heaven.
- The term “fire” is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase “baptize with fire” could also be translated as “cause to experience suffering in order to be purified.”

(See also: pure)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:18-20
- 2 Kings 1:10
- 2 Thessalonians 1:8
- Acts 7:29-30
- John 15:6
- Luke 3:16
- Matthew 3:12
- Nehemiah 1:3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0215, H0217, H0398, H0784, H0800, H0801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H2734, H3341, H3857, H4071, H4168, H5135, H6315, H8316, G04390, G04400, G10670, G27410, G44420, G44430, G44470, G44480, G44510, G53940, G54570

(Go back to: [Romans 12:20](#))

firstborn

Definition:

The term “firstborn” refers to an offspring of people or animals that is born first, before the other offspring are born.

- In the Bible, “firstborn” usually refers to the first male offspring that is born.
- In Bible times, the firstborn son was given a place of prominence and twice as much of his family inheritance as the other sons.
- Often it was the firstborn male of an animal that was sacrificed to God.
- This concept can also be used figuratively. For example, the nation of Israel is called God’s firstborn son because God gave it special privileges over other nations.
- Jesus, the Son of God is called God’s firstborn because of his importance and authority over everyone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “first-born” occurs in the text alone, it could also be translated as “firstborn male” or “firstborn son,” since that is what is implied. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- Other ways to translate this term could include “the son who was born first” or “the eldest son” or “the number one son.”
- When used figuratively to refer to Jesus, this could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the son who has authority over everything” or “the Son who is first in honor.”
- Caution: Make sure the translation of this term in reference to Jesus does not imply that he was created.

(See also: inherit, [sacrifice](#), [son](#))

Bible References:

- Colossians 1:15
- Genesis 4:3-5
- Genesis 29:26-27
- Genesis 43:33
- Luke 2:6-7
- Revelation 1:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1060, H1062, H1067, H1069, G44160, G52070

(Go back to: [Romans 8:29](#))

firstfruits

Definition:

The term “firstfruits” refers to a portion of the first crop of fruits and vegetables that was reaped during each harvest season.

- The Israelites offered these first fruits to God as a sacrificial offering.
- This term is also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to a firstborn son as being the first fruits of the family. That is, because he was the first son to be born into that family, he was the one who carried on the family name and honor.
- Because Jesus rose from the dead, he is called the “firstfruits” of all believers in him, believers who have died but who will some day come back to life.
- Believers in Jesus are also called the “firstfruits” of all creation, indicating the special privilege and position of those whom Jesus redeemed and called to be his people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal use of this term could be translated as “first portion (of crops)” or “first part of the harvest.”
- If possible, the figurative uses should be translated literally, to allow for different meanings in different contexts. This will also show the correlation between the literal meaning and the figurative uses.

(See also: [firstborn](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:4-5
- 2 Thessalonians 2:13
- Exodus 23:16-17
- James 1:18
- Jeremiah 2:3
- Psalms 105:36

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1061, H6529, H7225, G05360

(Go back to: [Romans 8:23](#); [11:16](#); [16:5](#))

flesh

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kinfolk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression “become one flesh” could be translated as “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: [euphemism](#)). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who “become one flesh” literally become one person.

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:16
- 2 John 1:7
- Ephesians 6:12
- Galatians 1:16
- Genesis 2:24
- John 1:14
- Matthew 16:17
- Romans 8:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H3894, H4207, H7607, H7683, G29070, G45590, G45600, G45610

(Go back to: [Romans 1:3](#); [2:28](#); [3:20](#); [4:1](#); [6:19](#); [Notes](#); [7:5](#); [7:14](#); [7:18](#); [7:25](#); [Notes](#); [8:3](#); [8:4](#); [8:5](#); [8:6](#); [8:7](#); [8:8](#); [8:9](#); [8:12](#); [8:13](#); [Notes](#); [9:3](#); [9:5](#); [9:8](#); [11:14](#); [Notes](#); [13:14](#))

fool, foolish, folly

Definition:

The term “fool” refers to a person who often makes wrong choices, especially choosing to disobey. The term “foolish” describes a person or behavior that is not wise.

- In the Bible, the term “fool” usually refers to a person who does not believe or obey God. This is often contrasted to the wise person, who trusts in God and obeys God.
- In the Psalms, David describes a fool as a person who does not believe in God, one who ignores all the evidence of God in his creation.
- The Old Testament book of Proverbs also gives many descriptions of what a fool, or foolish person, is like.
- The term “folly” refers to an action that is not wise because it is against God’s will. Often “folly” also includes the meaning of something that is ridiculous or dangerous.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “fool” could be translated as “foolish person” or “unwise person” or “senseless person” or “ungodly person.”
- Ways to translate “foolish” could include “lacking understanding” or “unwise” or “senseless.”

(See also: [wise](#))

Bible References:

- Ecclesiastes 1:17
- Ephesians 5:15
- Galatians 3:3
- Genesis 31:28
- Matthew 7:26
- Matthew 25:8
- Proverbs 13:16
- Psalms 49:13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0191, H0196, H0200, H1198, H1984, H2973, H3684, H3687, H3688, H3689, H3690, H5014, H5034, H5036, H5039, H5528, H5529, H5530, H5531, H6612, H8417, H8602, H8604, G04530, G04540, G07810, G08010, G08770, G08780, G27570, G31500, G31540, G34710, G34720, G34730, G34740, G39120

(Go back to: [Romans 1:14](#); [1:21](#); [1:22](#); [1:31](#); [2:20](#); [10:19](#))

foreknew, foreknowledge

Definition:

The terms “foreknew” and “foreknowledge” come from the verb “foreknow” which means to know something before it happens.

- God is not limited by time. He knows everything that happens in the past, present, and future.
- This word is often used in the context of God knowing already who will be saved through receiving Jesus as Savior.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “foreknew” could also be translated as “knew before” or “knew ahead of time” or “knew beforehand” or “already knew.”
- The term “foreknowledge” could be translated as “knowing before” or “knowing ahead of time” or “already knowing” or “knowing in advance.”

(See also: [know](#), [predestine](#))

Bible References:

- Romans 8:29
- Romans 11:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G42670, G42680

(Go back to: [Romans 8:29](#); [11:2](#))

forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned

Definition:

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against that person even though they did something hurtful. "Forgiveness" is the act of forgiving someone.

- Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
- This term can be used figuratively to mean "cancel," as in the expression "forgive a debt."
- When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus' sacrificial death on the cross.
- Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

The term "pardon" means to forgive and not punish someone for his sin.

- This word has the same meaning as "forgive" but may also include the meaning of a formal decision to not punish someone who is guilty.
- In a court of law, a judge can pardon a person found guilty of a crime.
- Even though we are guilty of sin, Jesus Christ pardoned us from being punished in hell, based on his sacrificial death on the cross.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "forgive" could be translated as "pardon" or "cancel" or "release" or "not hold against" (someone).
- The term "forgiveness" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "practice of not resenting" or "declaring (someone) as not guilty" or "the act of pardoning."
- If the language has a word for a formal decision to forgive, that word could be used to translate "pardon."

(See also: [guilt](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 50:17
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21
- Joshua 24:19-20
- 2 Kings 5:17-19
- Psalms 25:11
- Psalms 25:17-19
- Isaiah 55:6-7
- Isaiah 40:2
- Luke 5:21
- Acts 8:22
- Ephesians 4:31-32
- Colossians 3:12-14
- 1 John 2:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **7:10** But Esau had already **forgiven** Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.
- **13:15** Then Moses climbed the mountain again and prayed that God would **forgive** the people. God listened to Moses and **forgave** them.
- **17:13** David repented of his sin and God **forgave** him.

- **21:5** In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would **forgive** their sins.
- **29:1** One day Peter asked Jesus, "Master, how many times should I **forgive** my brother when he sins against me?"
- **29:8** I **forgave** your debt because you begged me.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the **forgiveness** of sins."

Word Data:

- H5546, H5547, H3722, H5375, H5545, H5547, H7521, G859, G863, G5483

(Go back to: [Romans 4:7](#))

found, founder, foundation

Definition:

The verb “found” means build, create, or lay a base for. The phrase “founded on” means supported by or based on. A “foundation” is the base of support on which something is built or created.

- The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
- The term “foundation” can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Christ are compared to a building that is founded on the teachings of the apostles and prophets, with Christ himself being the cornerstone of the building.
- A “foundation stone” was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “before the foundation of the world” could be translated as “before the creation of the world” or “before the time when the world first existed” or “before everything was first created.”
- The term “founded on” could be translated as “securely built on” or “firmly based on.”
- Depending on the context, “foundation” could be translated as “strong base” or “solid support” or “beginning” or “creation.”

(See also: [cornerstone](#), [create](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 6:37-38
- 2 Chronicles 3:1-3
- Ezekiel 13:13-14
- Luke 14:29
- Matthew 13:35
- Matthew 25:34

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0134, H0787, H2713, H3245, H3247, H3248, H4143, H4144, H4146, H4328, H4349, H4527, H8356, G23100, G23110, G26020

(Go back to: [Romans 15:20](#))

free, freed, freedom, freeman, freewill, liberty

Definition:

The terms “free” or “freedom” refer to not being in slavery, or any other kind of bondage. Another word for “freedom” is “liberty.”

- The expression to “set someone free” or to “free someone” means to provide a way for someone to no longer be in slavery or captivity.
- In the Bible, these terms are often used figuratively to refer to how a believer in Jesus is no longer under the power of sin.
- Having “liberty” or “freedom” can also refer to no longer being required to obey the Law of Moses, but instead being free to live by the teachings and guidance of the Holy Spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “free” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “not bound” or “not enslaved” or “not in slavery” or “not in bondage.”
- The term “freedom” or “liberty” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the state of being free” or “the condition of not being a slave” or “not being bound.”
- The expression to “set free” could be translated as to “cause to be free” or to “rescue from slavery” or to “release from bondage.”
- A person who has been “set free” has been “released” or “taken out of” bondage or slavery.

(See also: [bind](#), [enslave](#), [servant](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 4:26
- Galatians 5:1
- Isaiah 61:1
- Leviticus 25:10
- Romans 6:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1865, H2600, H2666, H2668, H2670, H3318, H4800, H5068, H5069, H5071, H5337, H5352, H5355, H5425, H5674, H5800, H6299, H6362, H7342, H7971, G04250, G05250, G05580, G06290, G06300, G08590, G13440, G14320, G16570, G16580, G16590, G18490, G30890, G39550, G45060, G54830

(Go back to: [Romans 3:24](#); [6:18](#); [6:20](#); [6:22](#); [7:3](#); [8:2](#); [8:21](#))

fruit, fruitful, unfruitful

Definition:

The term “fruit” literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is “fruitful” has a lot of fruit. These terms are also used figuratively in the Bible.

- The Bible often uses “fruit” to refer to a person’s actions. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person’s words and actions reveal what his character is like.
- A person can produce good or bad spiritual fruit, but the term “fruitful” always has the positive meaning of producing much good fruit.
- The term “fruitful” is also used figuratively to mean “prosperous.” This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.
- In general, the expression “fruit of” refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the “fruit of wisdom” refers to the good things that come from being wise.
- The expression “fruit of the land” refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
- The figurative expression “fruit of the Spirit” refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
- The expression “fruit of the womb” refers to “what the womb produces”—that is children.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for “fruit” that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural “fruits” whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term “fruitful” could be translated as “producing much spiritual fruit” or “having many children” or “prosperous.”
- The expression “fruit of the land” could also be translated as “food that the land produces” or “food crops that are growing in that region.”
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to “be fruitful and multiply,” which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as “have many offspring” or “have many children and descendants” or “have many children so that you will have many descendants.”
- The expression “fruit of the womb” could be translated as “what the womb produces” or “children a woman gives birth to” or just “children.” When Elizabeth says to Mary “blessed is the fruit of your womb,” she means “blessed is the child you will give birth to.” The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression “fruit of the vine,” could be translated as “vine fruit” or “grapes.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “will be more fruitful” could also be translated as “will produce more fruit” or “will have more children” or “will be prosperous.”
- The apostle Paul’s expression “fruitful labor” could be translated as “work that brings very good results” or “efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus.”
- The “fruit of the Spirit” could also be translated as “works that the Holy Spirit produces” or “words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in someone.”

(See also: [descendant](#), grain, grape, [Holy Spirit](#), vine, [womb](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 5:23
- Genesis 1:11
- Luke 8:15
- Matthew 3:8

- Matthew 7:17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0004, H1061, H1063, H1069, H2233, H2981, H3581, H3759, H3899, H3978, H4022, H5108, H6509, H6529, H7019, H8393, H8570, G10810, G25900, G25920, G25930, G37030, G50520, G53520

(Go back to: [Romans 1 General Notes](#); [1:13](#); [Notes](#); [6:21](#); [6:22](#); [7:4](#); [7:5](#); [15:28](#))

fulfill, fulfilled, carried out

Definition:

The term “fulfill” means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “fulfill” could be translated as “accomplish” or “complete” or “cause to happen” or “obey” or “perform.”
- The phrase “has been fulfilled” could also be translated as “has come true” or “has happened” or “has taken place.”
- Ways to translate “fulfill,” as in “fulfill your ministry,” could include “complete” or “perform” or “practice” or “serve other people as God has called you to do.”

(See also: [prophet](#), [Christ](#), [minister](#), [call](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 2:27
- Acts 3:17-18
- Leviticus 22:17-19
- Luke 4:21
- Matthew 1:22-23
- Matthew 5:17
- Psalms 116:12-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:4** John **fulfilled** what the prophets said, “See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way.”
- **40:3** The soldiers gambled for Jesus’ clothing. When they did this, they **fulfilled** a prophecy that said, “They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing.”
- **42:7** Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in God’s word must be **fulfilled**.”
- **43:5** “This **fulfills** the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- **43:7** “This **fulfills** the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
- **44:5** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to **fulfill** the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H5487, G10960, G41380

(Go back to: [Romans 2:27](#); [8:4](#); [11:12](#); [13:8](#); [13:10](#))

Gentile

Facts:

The term “Gentile” refers to anyone who is not a Jew. Gentiles are people who are not descendants of Jacob.

- In the Bible, the term “uncircumcised” is also used figuratively to refer to Gentiles because many of them did not circumcise their male children as the Israelites did.
- Because God chose the Jews to be his special people, they thought of the Gentiles as outsiders who could never be God’s people.
- The Jews were also called “Israelites” or “Hebrews” at different times in history. They referred to anyone else as a “Gentile.”
- Gentile could also be translated as “not a Jew” or “non-Jewish” or “not an Israelite” (Old Testament) or “non-Jew.”
- Traditionally, Jews would neither eat with nor associate with Gentiles, which at first caused problems within the early church.

(See also: [Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [Jew](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 9:13-16
- Acts 14:5-7
- Galatians 2:16
- Luke 2:32
- Matthew 5:47
- Matthew 6:5-7
- Romans 11:25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1471, G14820, G14840, G16720

(Go back to: [Romans 1:5](#); [1:13](#); [2:14](#); [2:24](#); [3:29](#); [9:24](#); [9:30](#); [11:11](#); [11:12](#); [11:13](#); [11:25](#); [15:9](#); [15:10](#); [15:11](#); [15:12](#); [15:16](#); [15:18](#); [15:27](#); [16:4](#))

gift

Definition:

The term “gift” refers to anything that is given or offered to someone. A gift is given without the expectation of getting anything in return

- Money, food, clothing, or other things given to poor people are called “gifts.”
- In the Bible, an offering or sacrifice given to God is also called a gift.
- The gift of salvation is something God gives us through faith in Jesus.
- In the New Testament, the term “gifts” is also used to refer to special spiritual abilities that God gives to all Christians for serving other people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “gift” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “something that is given.”
- In the context of someone having a gift or special ability that comes from God, the term “gift from the Spirit” could be translated as “spiritual ability” or “special ability from the Holy Spirit” or “special spiritual skill that God gave.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:1
- 2 Samuel 11:8
- Acts 8:20
- Acts 10:4
- Acts 11:17
- Acts 24:17
- James 1:17
- John 4:9-10
- Matthew 5:23
- Matthew 8:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0814, H4503, H4864, H4976, H4978, H4979, H4991, H5078, H5083, H5379, H7810, H8641, G03340, G13900, G13940, G14310, G14340, G14350, G33110, G54860

(Go back to: [Romans 1:11](#); [5:15](#); [5:16](#); [5:17](#); [6:23](#); [11:29](#); [12:6](#))

glory, glorious, glorify

Definition:

The term “glory” is a general term for a family of concepts including value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, or majesty. The term “glorify” means to ascribe glory to someone or something, or to show or tell how glorious something or someone is.

- In the Bible, the term “glory” is especially used to describe God, who is more valuable, more worthy, more important, more honorable, more splendid, and more majestic than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything about his character reveals his glory.
- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done. They can also glorify God by living in accordance with God’s character, because doing so shows to others his value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, and majesty.
- The expression to “glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

Old Testament

- The specific phrase “the glory of Yahweh” in the Old Testament usually refers to some perceptible manifestation of Yahweh’s presence in a particular location.

New Testament

- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to all people the full extent of how glorious Jesus is.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. This use of the term “glorify” carries a unique meaning. It means that when people who believe in Christ are raised to life, they will be changed physically to be like Jesus as he appeared after his resurrection.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include “splendor” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God’s greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”
- “Glorify” could also be translated as “give glory to” or “bring glory to” or “cause to appear great.”
- The phrase “glorify God” could also be translated as “praise God” or “talk about God’s greatness” or “show how great God is” or “honor God (by obeying him).”
- The term “be glorified” could also be translated as “be shown to be very great” or “be praised” or “be exalted.”

(See also: [honor](#), majesty, exalt, [obey](#), [praise](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 24:17
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:2

- Luke 18:43
- Luke 2:9
- John 12:28
- Acts 3:13-14
- Acts 7:1-3
- Romans 8:17
- 1 Corinthians 6:19-20
- Philippians 2:14-16
- Philippians 4:19
- Colossians 3:1-4
- 1 Thessalonians 2:5
- James 2:1-4
- 1 Peter 4:15-16
- Revelation 15:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “**Glory** to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **25:6** Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- **37:1** When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God.”
- **37:8** Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s **glory** if you believe in me?”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0117, H0142, H0155, H0215, H1342, H1921, H1926, H1935, H1984, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8597, G13910, G13920, G17400, G17410, G27440, G48880

(Go back to: [Romans 1:21](#); [1:23](#); [2:7](#); [2:10](#); [3:7](#); [3:23](#); [4:20](#); [5:2](#); [6:4](#); [8:17](#); [8:18](#); [8:21](#); [8:30](#); [9:4](#); [9:23](#); [11:13](#); [11:36](#); [15:6](#); [15:7](#); [15:9](#); [16:27](#))

God

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being” or “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”
NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word “god,” it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [create](#), [false god](#), [God the Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [false god](#), [Son of God](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 4:10
- Colossians 1:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 3:1-2
- Genesis 1:2
- Hosea 4:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 2:20
- Jeremiah 5:5
- John 1:3
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Lamentations 3:43
- Micah 4:5
- Philippians 2:6
- Proverbs 24:12

- Psalms 47:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:1 God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **1:15 God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **5:3** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **9:14 God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:2** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:7** "You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:9** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:7** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:1** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:9** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0136, H0305, H0410, H0426, H0430, H0433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G01120, G05160, G09320, G09350, G10960, G11400, G20980, G21240, G21280, G21500, G21520, G21530, G22990, G23040, G23050, G23120, G23130, G23140, G23150, G23160, G23170, G23180, G23190, G23200, G33610, G37850, G41510, G52070, G53770, G54630, G55370, G55380

(Go back to: Romans 1:1; 1:7; 1:8; 1:9; 1:10; 1:16; 1:17; 1:18; 1:19; 1:21; 1:23; 1:24; 1:25; 1:26; 1:28; 1:32; 2:2; 2:3; 2:4; 2:5; 2:11; 2:13; 2:16; 2:17; 2:23; 2:24; 2:29; 3:2; 3:3; 3:4; 3:5; 3:6; 3:7; 3:11; 3:18; 3:19; 3:21; 3:22; 3:23; 3:25; 3:26; 3:29; 3:30; 4:2; 4:3; 4:6; 4:17; 4:20; 5:1; 5:2; 5:5; 5:8; 5:10; 5:11; 5:15; 6:10; 6:11; 6:13; 6:17; 6:22; 6:23; 7:4; 7:22; 7:25; 8:3; 8:7; 8:8; 8:14; 8:16; 8:17; 8:19; 8:21; 8:27; 8:28; 8:31; 8:33; 8:34; 8:39; 9:5; 9:8; 9:11; 9:14; 9:16; 9:20; 9:22; 9:26; 10:1; 10:2; 10:3; 10:9; 11:1; 11:2; 11:8; 11:21; 11:22; 11:23; 11:29; 11:30; 11:32; 11:33; 12:1; 12:2; 12:3; 13:1; 13:2; 13:4; 13:6; 14:3; 14:6; 14:10; 14:11; 14:12; 14:18; 14:20; 14:22; 15:5; 15:7; 15:8; 15:9; 15:13; 15:15; 15:16; 15:17; 15:30; 15:32; 15:33; 16:20; 16:26; 16:27)

God the Father, heavenly Father, Father

Facts:

The terms “God the Father” and “heavenly Father” refer to Yahweh, the one true God. Another term with the same meaning is “Father,” used most often when Jesus was referring to him.

- God exists as God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. Each one is fully God, and yet they are only one God. This is a mystery that mere humans cannot fully understand.
- God the Father sent God the Son (Jesus) into the world and he sends the Holy Spirit to his people.
- Anyone who believes in God the Son becomes a child of God the Father, and God the Holy Spirit comes to live in that person. This is another mystery that human beings cannot fully understand.

Translation Suggestions:

- In translating the phrase “God the Father,” it is best to translate “Father” with the same word that the language naturally uses to refer to a human father.
- The term “heavenly Father” could be translated by “Father who lives in heaven” or “Father God who lives in heaven” or “God our Father from heaven.”
- Usually “Father” is capitalized when it, refers to God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [ancestor](#), [God](#), [heaven](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [Son of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 8:4-6
- 1 John 2:1
- 1 John 2:23
- 1 John 3:1
- Colossians 1:1-3
- Ephesians 5:18-21
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 5:16
- Matthew 23:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:9** There is only one God. But John heard **God the Father** speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **29:9** Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly Father** will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- **37:9** Then Jesus looked up to heaven and said, “**Father**, thank you for hearing me.”
- **40:7** Then Jesus cried out, “It is finished! **Father**, I give my spirit into your hands.”
- **42:10** “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of **the Father**, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **43:8** “Jesus is now exalted to the right hand of **God the Father**.”
- **50:10** “Then the righteous ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of **God their Father**.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0001, H0002, G39620

(Go back to: [Romans 1:7](#); [6:4](#); [8:15](#); [15:6](#))

god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry

Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term “goddess” refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God’s people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as “idolatrous” if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An “idolatrous kingdom” means a “kingdom of people who worship idols” or a “kingdom of people who worship earthly things.”
- The term “idolatrous figure” is another word for a “carved image” or an “idol.”

Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for “god” or “false god” in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term “idol” could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case “g” is used to refer to false gods, and upper case “G” is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: [God](#), Asherah, [Baal](#), Molech, demon, [image](#), kingdom, worship)

Bible References:

- Genesis 35:2
- Exodus 32:1
- Psalms 31:6
- Psalms 81:8-10
- Isaiah 44:20
- Acts 7:41
- Acts 7:43
- Acts 15:20
- Acts 19:27
- Romans 2:22
- Galatians 4:8-9
- Galatians 5:19-21
- Colossians 3:5
- 1 Thessalonians 1:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:2** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's **gods**.
- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**."
- **14:2** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **18:13** But most of Judah's kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0367, H0410, H0426, H0430, H0457, H1322, H1544, H1892, H2553, H3649, H4656, H4906, H5236, H5566, H6089, H6090, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6673, H6736, H6754, H7723, H8163, H8251, H8267, H8441, H8655, G14930, G14940, G14950, G14960, G14970, G22990, G27120

(Go back to: [Romans 2:22](#))

godly, godliness, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness

Definition:

The term “godly” is used to describe a person who acts in a way that honors God and shows what God is like. “Godliness” is the character quality of honoring God by doing his will.

- A person who has godly character will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit, such as love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, and self control.
- The quality of godliness shows that a person has the Holy Spirit and is obeying him.

The terms “ungodly” and “godless” describe people who are in rebellion against God. Living in an evil way, without thought of God, is called “ungodliness” or “godlessness.”

- The meanings of these words are very similar. However, “godless” and “godlessness” may describe a more extreme condition in which people or nations do not even acknowledge God or his right to rule them.
- God pronounces judgment and wrath on ungodly people, on everyone who rejects him and his ways.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “the godly” could be translated as “godly people” or “people who obey God.” (See: nominaladj)
- The adjective “godly” could be translated as “obedient to God” or “righteous” or “pleasing to God.”
- The phrase “in a godly manner” could be translated as “in a way that obeys God” or “with actions and words that please God.”
- Ways to translate “godliness” could include “acting in a way that pleases God” or “obeying God” or “living in a righteous manner.”
- Depending on the context, the term “ungodly” could be translated as “displeasing to God” or “immoral” or “disobeying God.”
- The terms “godless” and “godlessness” literally mean that the people are “without God” or “having no thought of God” or “acting in a way that does not acknowledge God.”
- Other ways to translate “ungodliness” or “godlessness” could be “wickedness” or “evil” or “rebellion against God”.

(See also [evil](#), [honor](#), [obey](#), [righteous](#), [righteous](#))

Bible References:

- Job 27:10
- Proverbs 11:9
- Acts 3:12
- 1 Timothy 1:9-11
- 1 Timothy 4:7
- 2 Timothy 3:12
- Hebrews 12:14-17
- Hebrews 11:7
- 1 Peter 4:18
- Jude 1:16

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0430, H1100, H2623, H5760, H7563, G05160, G07630, G07640, G07650, G21240, G21500, G21520, G21530, G23160, G23170

(Go back to: [Romans 1:18](#); [4:5](#); [5:6](#); [Notes](#); [11:26](#); [Notes](#))

Gomorrah

Facts:

Gomorrah was a city located in a fertile valley near Sodom, where Abraham's nephew Lot chose to live.

- The exact location of Gomorrah and Sodom is unknown, but there are indications that they may have been located directly south of the Salt Sea, near the Valley of Siddim.
- There were many kings at war in the region where Sodom and Gomorrah were located.
- When Lot's family was captured in a conflict between Sodom and other cities, Abraham and his men rescued them.
- Not long after that, Sodom and Gomorrah were destroyed by God because of the wickedness of the people who lived there.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Babylon](#), [Lot](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Sodom](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:6
- Genesis 10:19
- Genesis 14:1-2
- Genesis 18:21
- Isaiah 1:9
- Matthew 10:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6017

(**Go back to:** [Romans 9:29](#))

good news, gospel

Definition:

The term “gospel” literally means “good news” and refers to a message or announcement that tells people something that benefits them and makes them glad.

- In the Bible, this term usually refers to the message about God’s salvation for people through Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross.
- In most English Bibles, “good news” is usually translated as “gospel” and is also used in phrases such as, the “gospel of Jesus Christ,” the “gospel of God” and the “gospel of the kingdom.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways to translate this term could include, “good message” or “good announcement” or “God’s message of salvation” or “the good things God teaches about Jesus.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase, “good news of” could include, “good news/ message about” or “good message from” or “the good things God tells us about” or “what God says about how he saves people.”

(See also: kingdom, [sacrifice](#), [save](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 1:5
- Acts 8:25
- Colossians 1:23
- Galatians 1:6
- Luke 8:1-3
- Mark 1:14
- Philippians 2:22
- Romans 1:3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:6** The angel said, “Do not be afraid, because I have some **good news** for you. The Messiah, the Master, has been born in Bethlehem!”
- **26:3** Jesus read, “God has given me his Spirit so that I can proclaim **good news** to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed. This is the year of the Lord’s favor.”
- **45:10** Philip also used other Scriptures to tell him the **good news of Jesus**.
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to preach the **good news about Jesus** in many other places.
- **47:1** One day, Paul and his friend Silas went to the town of Philippi to proclaim the **good news about Jesus**.
- **47:13** The **good news about Jesus** kept spreading, and the Church kept growing.
- **50:1** For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the **good news about Jesus** the Messiah.
- **50:2** When Jesus was living on earth he said, “My disciples will preach the **good news** about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come.”
- **50:3** Before he returned to heaven, Jesus told Christians to proclaim the **good news** to people who have never heard it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G20970, G20980, G42830

(Go back to: [Romans 1:1](#); [1:9](#); [1:15](#); [1:16](#); [2:16](#); [10:15](#); [10:16](#); [11:28](#); [15:16](#); [15:19](#); [15:20](#); [16:25](#))

good, right, pleasant, better, best

Definition:

The term “good” generally refers to a positive evaluation of the quality of something or someone, often in a moral or emotional sense. However, the term conveys various nuances throughout the Bible depending on the context.

- Something that is “good” could be emotionally pleasant, morally right, excellent, helpful, suitable, or profitable.
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone or “cause someone to prosper.”
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: [righteous](#), [prosper](#), [evil](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 5:22-24
- Genesis 1:12
- Genesis 2:9
- Genesis 2:17
- James 3:13
- Romans 2:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:4** God saw that what he had created was **good**.
- **1:11** God planted the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.
- **1:12** Then God said, “It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- **2:4** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- **8:12** “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good!**”
- **14:15** Joshua was a **good** leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **18:13** Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- **28:1** “**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you call me ‘**good**?’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0117, H0145, H0155, H0202, H0239, H0410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G00140, G00150, G00180, G00190, G05150, G07440, G08650, G09790, G13800, G20950, G20970, G21060, G21070, G21080, G21090, G21140, G21150, G21330, G21400, G21620, G21630, G21740, G22930, G25650, G25670, G25700, G25730, G28870, G29860, G31400, G36170, G37760, G41470, G46320, G46740, G48510, G52230, G52240, G53580, G55420, G55430, G55440

(Go back to: [Romans 2:7](#); [2:10](#); [3:8](#); [3:12](#); [5:7](#); [7:12](#); [7:13](#); [7:16](#); [7:18](#); [7:19](#); [7:21](#); [8:28](#); [9:11](#); [10:15](#); [12:2](#); [12:9](#); [12:17](#); [12:21](#); [13:3](#); [13:4](#); [14:16](#); [14:21](#); [15:2](#); [15:14](#); [16:19](#))

gossip, gossips, talk nonsense

Definition:

The term “gossip” refers to talking to people about someone else’s personal affairs, usually in a negative and unproductive way. Often what is talked about has not been confirmed as true.

- The Bible says that spreading negative information about people is wrong. Gossip and slander are examples of this kind of negative speech.
- Gossip is harmful to the person being spoken about because it often hurts someone’s relationships with other people.

(See also: [slander](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 5:13
- 2 Corinthians 12:20
- Leviticus 19:15-16
- Proverbs 16:28
- Romans 1:29-31

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5372, G26360, G53970

(Go back to: [Romans 1:29](#))

grace, gracious

Definition:

The word “grace” refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term “gracious” describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God’s grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression to “find grace” is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that “grace” could be translated include “divine kindness” or “God’s favor” or “God’s kindness and forgiveness for sinners” or “merciful kindness.”
- The term “gracious” could be translated as “full of grace” or “kind” or “merciful” or “mercifully kind.”
- The expression “he found grace in the eyes of God” could be translated as “he received mercy from God” or “God mercifully helped him” or “God showed his favor to him” or “God was pleased with him and helped him.”

Bible References:

- Acts 4:33
- Acts 6:8
- Acts 14:4
- Colossians 4:6
- Colossians 4:18
- Genesis 43:28-29
- James 4:7
- John 1:16
- Philippians 4:21-23
- Revelation 22:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2580, H2587, H2589, H2603, H8467, G21430, G54850, G55430

(Go back to: [Romans 1:5](#); [1:7](#); [3:24](#); [4:4](#); [4:16](#); [5:2](#); [5:15](#); [5:17](#); [5:20](#); [5:21](#); [6:1](#); [6:14](#); [6:15](#); [Notes](#); [11:5](#); [11:6](#); [12:3](#); [12:6](#); [15:15](#); [16:20](#))

grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place

Definition:

The terms “tomb” and “grave” refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A “burial place” is a more general term that also refers to this.

- The Jews sometimes used natural caves as tombs, and sometimes they dug caves into rock in the side of a hill.
- In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
- If the target language the word for a tomb can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include “cave” or “hole in the side of a hill.”
- The phrase “the grave” is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: [bury](#), [death](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 2:29-31
- Genesis 23:6
- Genesis 50:5
- John 19:41
- Luke 23:53
- Mark 5:1-2
- Matthew 27:53
- Romans 3:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **32:4** The man lived among the **tombs** in the area.
- **37:6** Jesus asked them, “Where have you put Lazarus?” They told him, “In the **tomb**. Come and see.”
- **37:7** The **tomb** was a cave with a stone rolled in front of its opening.
- **40:9** Then Joseph and Nicodemus, two Jewish leaders who believed Jesus was the Messiah, asked Pilate for Jesus’ body. They wrapped his body in cloth and placed it in a **tomb** cut out of rock. Then they rolled a large stone in front the **tomb** to block the opening.
- **41:4** He (the angel) rolled away the stone that was covering the entrance to the **tomb** and sat on it. The soldiers guarding the **tomb** were terrified and fell to the ground like dead men.
- **41:5** When the women arrived at the **tomb**, the angel told them, “Do not be afraid. Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would! Look in the **tomb** and see.” The women looked into the **tomb** and saw where Jesus’ body had been laid. His body was not there!

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1430, H6900, H6913, H7585, H7845, G34180, G34190, G50280

(Go back to: [Romans 3:13](#))

Greek, Grecian, Hellenist

Facts:

The term “Greek” refers to the language spoken in the country of Greece, it is also a person from the country of Greece. Greek was also spoken throughout the Roman Empire. The adjective “Grecian” means “Greek-speaking.”

- Since most non-Jewish people in the Roman Empire spoke Greek, Gentiles are often referred to as “Greeks” in the New Testament, especially when contrasted with Jews.
- The phrase “Grecian Jews” or “Hellenists” referred to Jews who spoke Greek in contrast to the “Hebraic Jews” who spoke only Hebrew, or perhaps Aramaic. The term “Hellenists” comes from the pronunciation of the Greek word for a Greek-speaker.
- Other ways to translate “Grecian” could include, “Greek-speaking” or “culturally Greek” or “Greek.”
- When referring to non-Jews, “Greek” could be translated as “Gentile.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Aram, [Gentile](#), Greece, Hebrew, [Rome](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 6:1
- Acts 9:29
- Acts 11:20
- Acts 14:1-2
- Colossians 3:11
- Galatians 2:3-5
- John 7:35

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3125, G16720, G16730, G16740, G16750, G16760

(**Go back to:** [Romans 1:14](#); [1:16](#); [2:9](#); [2:10](#); [3:9](#); [10:12](#))

groan

Definition:

The term to “groan” refers to the uttering of a deep, low sound that is caused by physical or emotional distress. It could also be the sound someone makes without any words.

- A person can groan because of feeling grief.
- Groaning can be caused by feeling a terrible, oppressive burden.
- Other ways to translate “groan” could include, “give a low cry of pain” or “grieve deeply.”
- As a noun, this could be translated as “a low cry of distress” or “a deep murmur of pain.”

(See also: [cry](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 5:2
- Hebrews 13:17
- Job 23:2
- Psalms 32:3-4
- Psalms 102:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0584, H0585, H0602, H0603, H1901, H1993, H5008, H5009, H5098, H5594, H7581, G47260, G47270, G49590

(Go back to: [Romans 8:22](#); [8:23](#); [8:26](#))

guilt, guilty

Definition:

The term “guilt” refers to the fact of having sinned or committed a crime.

- To “be guilty” means to have done something morally wrong, that is, to have disobeyed God.
- The opposite of “guilty” is “innocent.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages might translate “guilt” as “the weight of sin” or “the counting of sins.”
- Ways to translate to “be guilty” could include a word or phrase that means, to “be at fault” or “having done something morally wrong” or “having committed a sin.”

(See also: [innocent](#), iniquity, punish, [sin](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 28:36-38
- Isaiah 6:7
- James 2:10-11
- John 19:4
- Jonah 1:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:2** They brought many witnesses who lied about him (Jesus). However, their statements did not agree with each other, so the Jewish leaders could not prove he was **guilty** of anything.
- **39:11** After speaking with Jesus, Pilate went out to the crowd and said, “I find no **guilt** in this man.” But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, “Crucify him!” Pilate replied, “He is not **guilty**.” But they shouted even louder. Then Pilate said a third time, “He is not **guilty!**”
- **40:4** Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Don’t you fear God? We are **guilty**, but this man is innocent.”
- **49:10** Because of your sin, you are **guilty** and deserve to die.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0816, H0817, H0818, H5352, H5355, H7563, G03380, G17770, G37840, G52670

(Go back to: [Romans 2 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#))

hand

Definition:

The word “hand” refers to the part of the body at the end of the arm. This term is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s power, control, or action, whether it be in reference to God or in reference to a human person.

Some of the various uses of the term “hand” include the following:

- The term “hand” can be used figuratively to refer to the position of being “beside” a person, an object, or a location.
- To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.” To “save from the hand of” means to prevent someone from being harmed by another person.
- The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
- The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, the phrase “by the hand of the Lord” means that God caused something to happen.
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- The term “laying on of hands” can refer to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God’s service, to pray for healing, or to ask God to bless that person.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that he himself wrote that part of the letter rather than speaking it to someone else to write down.

Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: [power](#), [right hand](#), [honor](#), [bless](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:25
- Acts 8:17
- Acts 11:21
- Genesis 9:5
- Genesis 14:20
- John 3:35
- Mark 7:32
- Matthew 6:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3225, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8040, H8042, H8168, G07100, G11880, G14480, G14510, G21760, G29020, G40840, G44740, G54950, G54960, G54970

(**Go back to:** [Romans 10:21](#))

hard, harden, hardness

Definition:

The term “hard” generally refers to something that is difficult, persistent, or unyielding.

- The use of “hard” (in various forms) with “heart” refers to people being stubbornly unrepentant or disobedient (usually) to God.
- When used as a modifier, its meaning is similar to “great effort.”

Translation Suggestions

- The term “hard” could also be translated as “difficult” or “stubborn” or “challenging,” depending on the context.
- The terms “hardness” or “hardness of heart” or “hard heart” could be translated as “stubbornness” or “persistent rebellion” or “rebellious attitude” or “stubborn disobedience” or “stubbornly not repenting.”
- The term “hardened” could also be translated as “stubbornly unrepentant” or “refusing to obey.”
- “Do not harden your heart” could be translated as “do not refuse to repent” or “do not stubbornly keep disobeying.”
- Other ways to translate “hard-headed” or “hard-hearted” could include “stubbornly disobedient” or “continuing to disobey” or “refusing to repent” or “always rebelling.”
- In expressions such as “work hard” or “try hard,” the term “hard” could be translated as “with perseverance” or “diligently.”
- The expression “press hard against” could also be translated as “shove with force” or “push strongly against.”
- To “oppress people with hard labor” could be translated as “force people to work so hard that they suffer” or “cause people to suffer by forcing them to do very difficult work.”
- A different kind of “hard labor” is experienced by a woman who is about to deliver a baby.

(See also: [disobey](#), [evil](#), [heart](#), labor pains, [stiff-necked](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 11:23
- Deuteronomy 15:7
- Exodus 14:4
- Hebrews 4:7
- John 12:40
- Matthew 19:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0553, H1692, H2388, H2389, H2420, H2864, H3021, H3332, H3513, H3515, H3966, H4165, H4522, H5450, H5647, H5797, H5810, H5980, H5999, H6089, H6381, H6635, H7185, H7186, H7188, H7280, H8068, H8307, H8631, G09170, G14190, G14210, G14220, G14230, G22050, G25320, G25530, G28720, G28730, G34250, G34330, G40530, G41830, G44560, G44570, G46410, G46420, G46430, G46450, G49120

(Go back to: [Romans 2:5](#); [11:7](#); [11:25](#))

head

Definition:

The word “head” refers to the uppermost body part of a human body, above the neck. This term is often used figuratively to mean many different things, including “top,” “first,” “beginning,” “source,” and other concepts.

Some examples of various uses of the term “head” include:

- The expression “no razor will ever touch his head” means that he should never cut or shave his hair.
- The expression “let their blood be on his own head” means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.
- The expression “heads of grain” refers to the top part of wheat or barley plants that contains the seeds. Similarly, the expression “head of a mountain” refers to the top part of the mountain.
- The term “head” can also refer to the beginning or source of something, or the first in a series of things (can be objects or people).
- Often the term “head” refers to the most important person in a group or to a person who is in authority over others. For example, the phrase “You have made me the head over nations” means “You have made me the ruler...” or “You have given me authority over....”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “head” could be translated as “authority” or “ruler” or “the one who is responsible for.”
- The expression “will be on his own head” could be translated as “will be on him” or “he will be punished for” or “he will be held responsible for” or “he will be considered guilty for.”
- Depending on the context, some other ways to translate this term might include “top” or “beginning” or “source” or “leader.”

(See also: chief, grain)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:51-54
- 1 Kings 8:1-2
- 1 Samuel 9:22
- Colossians 2:10
- Colossians 2:19
- Numbers 1:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0441, H1270, H1538, H3852, H4425, H4761, H4763, H5110, H5324, H6285, H6287, H6797, H6915, H6936, H7139, H7144, H7146, H7217, H7226, H7218, H7541, H7636, H7641, H7872, G03460, G07550, G27750, G27760, G47190

(Go back to: [Romans 12:20](#))

heart

Definition:

The term “heart” refers to the internal bodily organ that pumps blood throughout the body in people and animals. However, in the Bible the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with complete sincerity, commitment, or willingness, holding nothing back.
- The expression “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one’s life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: [hard](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 3:17
- 1 Thessalonians 2:4
- 2 Thessalonians 3:13-15
- Acts 8:22
- Acts 15:9
- Luke 8:15
- Mark 2:6
- Matthew 5:8
- Matthew 22:37

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1079, H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H5640, H7130, H7307, H7356, H7907, G06740, G12820, G12710, G21330, G25880, G25890, G46410, G46980, G55900

(Go back to: [Romans 1:21](#); [1:24](#); [2:5](#); [2:15](#); [2:29](#); [5:5](#); [6:17](#); [8:27](#); [9:2](#); [10:1](#); [10:6](#); [10:8](#); [10:9](#); [10:10](#); [16:18](#))

heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.

Translation Suggestions:

- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See also: [kingdom of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 1:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 4:17
- Deuteronomy 9:1
- Ephesians 6:9
- Genesis 1:1
- Genesis 7:11
- John 3:12
- John 3:27
- Matthew 5:18
- Matthew 5:46-48

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:2** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **29:9** Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- **37:9** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G09320, G20320, G33210, G37700, G37710, G37720

(Go back to: [Romans 1:18](#); [Notes](#); [10:6](#))

heir

Definition:

An "heir" is a person who legally receives property or money that belonged to a person who has died.

- In Bible times, the main heir was the firstborn son, who received most of the property and money of his father.
- The Bible also uses "heir" in a figurative sense to refer to person who as a Christian receives spiritual benefits from God, his spiritual father.
- As God's children, Christians are said to be "joint heirs" with Jesus Christ. This could also be translated as "co-heirs" or "fellow heirs" or "heirs together with."
- The term "heir" could be translated as "person receiving benefits" or whatever expression is used in the language to communicate the meaning of someone who receives property and other things when a parent or other relative dies.

(See also: [firstborn](#), inherit)

Bible References:

- Galatians 4:1-2
- Galatians 4:7
- Genesis 15:1
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Luke 20:14
- Mark 12:7
- Matthew 21:38-39

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1121, H3423, G28160, G28180, G28200, G47890

(Go back to: [Romans 4:13](#); [4:14](#); [8:17](#))

Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit

Facts:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as “the Spirit” and “Spirit of Yahweh” and “Spirit of truth.”
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God’s Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God’s will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate “holy” and “spirit.”
- Ways to translate this term could also include “Pure Spirit” or “Spirit who is Holy” or “God the Spirit.”

(See also: [holy](#), [spirit](#), [God](#), [Lord](#), [God the Father](#), [Son of God](#), [gift](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:10
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7-8
- Acts 8:17
- Galatians 5:25
- Genesis 1:1-2
- Isaiah 63:10
- Job 33:4
- Matthew 12:31
- Matthew 28:18-19
- Psalms 51:10-11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:1** But **God’s Spirit** was there over the water.
- **24:8** When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, **the Spirit of God** appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- **26:1** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the power of **the Holy Spirit** to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **26:3** Jesus read, “God has given me **his Spirit** so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed.”
- **42:10** “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and **the Holy Spirit** and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **43:3** They were all filled with the **Holy Spirit** and they began to speak in other languages.
- **43:8** “And Jesus has sent the **Holy Spirit** just as he promised he would do. The **Holy Spirit** is causing the things that you are now seeing and hearing.”
- **43:11** Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the **Holy Spirit.**”
- **45:1** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the **Holy Spirit** and of wisdom.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3068, H6944, H7307, G00400, G41510

(Go back to: [Romans 1:4](#); [2:29](#); [5:5](#); [7:6](#); [8:2](#); [8:4](#); [8:5](#); [8:6](#); [8:9](#); [8:10](#); [8:11](#); [8:13](#); [8:14](#); [8:15](#); [8:16](#); [8:23](#); [8:26](#); [8:27](#); [9:1](#); [14:17](#); [15:13](#); [15:16](#); [15:19](#); [15:30](#))

holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term “unholy” means “not holy.” It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called “unholy” could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term “sacred” describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sacred” was often used to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as “religious.”
- “Sacred songs” and “sacred music” refer to music that was sung or played for God’s glory. This could be translated as “music for worshiping Yahweh” or “songs that praise God.”
- The phrase “sacred duties” referred to the “religious duties” or “rituals” that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”
- Ways to translate “unholy” could include “not holy” or “not belonging to God” or “not honoring to God” or “not godly.”
- In some contexts, “unholy” could be translated as “unclean.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), consecrate, [sanctify](#), [set apart](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 28:22
- 2 Kings 3:2
- Lamentations 4:1
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 7:6

- Mark 8:38
- Acts 7:33
- Acts 11:8
- Romans 1:2
- 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
- Colossians 1:22
- 1 Thessalonians 3:13
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- 2 Timothy 3:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **9:12** "You are standing on **holy** ground."
- **13:1** "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation."
- **13:5** "Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**."
- **22:5** "So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God."
- **50:2** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G00370, G00380, G00400, G00400, G00410, G00420, G04620, G18590, G21500, G24120, G24130, G28390, G37410, G37420

(Go back to: [Romans 1:2](#); [7:12](#); [11:16](#); [12:1](#); [16:16](#))

honor

Definition:

The terms “honor” and to “honor” refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God instructs Christians to honor others.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents in ways that include respecting them and obeying them.
- The terms “honor” and “glory” are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Ways of honoring God include thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “honor” could include “respect” or “esteem” or “high regard.”
- The term to “honor” could be translated as to “show special respect to” or to “cause to be praised” or to “show high regard for” or to “highly value.”

(See also: [dishonor](#), [glory](#), [praise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 2:8
- Acts 19:17
- John 4:44
- John 12:26
- Mark 6:4
- Matthew 15:6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1420, H1921, H1922, H1923, H1926, H1927, H1935, H2082, H2142, H3366, H3367, H3368, H3372, H3373, H3374, H3444, H3513, H3519, H3655, H3678, H5081, H5375, H5457, H6213, H6286, H6437, H6942, H6944, H6965, H7236, H7613, H7812, H8597, H8416, G08200, G13910, G13920, G17840, G21510, G25700, G31700, G44110, G45860, G50910, G50920, G50930, G53990

(Go back to: [Romans 2:7](#); [2:10](#); [9:21](#); [12:10](#); [13:7](#))

hope, hoped

Definition:

Hope is strongly desiring something to happen. Hope can imply either certainty or uncertainty regarding a future event.

- In the Bible, the term “hope” also has the meaning of “trust,” as in “my hope is in the Lord.” It refers to a sure expectation of receiving what God has promised his people.
- Sometimes the ULT translates the term in the original language as “confidence.” This happens mostly in the New Testament in situations where people who believe in Jesus as their Savior have the assurance (or confidence or hope) of receiving what God has promised.
- To have “no hope” means to have no expectation of something good happening. It means that it is actually very certain that it will not happen.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, the term to “hope” could also be translated as to “wish” or to “desire” or to “expect.”
- The expression “nothing to hope for” could be translated as “nothing to trust in” or “no expectation of anything good”
- To “have no hope” could be translated as “have no expectation of anything good” or “have no security” or “be sure that nothing good will happen.”
- The expression “have set your hopes on” could also be translated as “have put your confidence in” or “have been trusting in.”
- The phrase “I find hope in your Word” could also be translated as “I am confident that your Word is true” or “Your Word helps me trust in you” or “When I obey your Word, I am certain to be blessed.”
- Phrases such as “hope in” God could also be translated as “trust in God” or “know for sure that God will do what he has promised” or “be certain that God is faithful.”

(See also: [bless](#), [confidence](#), [good](#), [obey](#), [trust](#), [word of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:14-15
- 1 Thessalonians 2:19
- Acts 24:14-16
- Acts 26:6
- Acts 27:20
- Colossians 1:5
- Job 11:20

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0982, H0983, H0986, H2620, H2976, H3175, H3176, H3689, H4009, H4268, H4723, H7663, H7664, H8431, H8615, G00910, G05600, G16790, G16800, G20700

(Go back to: [Romans 4:18](#); [5:2](#); [5:4](#); [5:5](#); [8:20](#); [8:24](#); [8:25](#); [12:12](#); [15:4](#); [15:12](#); [15:13](#); [15:24](#))

Hosea

Facts:

Hosea was a prophet of Israel who lived and prophesied about 750 years before the time of Christ.

- His ministry lasted for many years through the reigns of several kings, such as Jeroboam, Zechariah, Jotham, Ahaz, Hoshea, Uzziah, and Hezekiah.
- Hosea was told by God to marry a prostitute named Gomer and to continue to love her, even though she was unfaithful to him.
- This was a picture of God's love for his unfaithful people, Israel.
- Hosea prophesied against the people of Israel because of their sin, warning them to turn away from worshipping idols.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ahaz, Hezekiah, Hoshea, Jeroboam, Jotham, Uzziah, Zechariah (OT))

Bible References:

- Hosea 1:1-2
- Hosea 1:3-5
- Hosea 1:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1954, G56170

(Go back to: [Romans 9:25](#))

hour

Definition:

In addition to being used to refer to when or how long something took place, the term “hour” is also used in several figurative ways:

- Sometimes “hour” refers to a regular, scheduled time to do something, such as the “hour of prayer.”
- When the text says that the “hour had come” for Jesus to suffer and be put to death, this means that it was the appointed time for this to happen—the time that God had selected long ago.
- The term “hour” is also used to mean “at that moment” or “right then.”
- When the text talks about the “hour” being late, this means that it was late in the day, when the sun would soon be setting.

Translation Suggestions:

- When used figuratively, the term “hour” can be translated as “time” or “moment” or “appointed time.”
- The phrase “in that very hour” or “the same hour” could be translated as “at that moment” or “at that time” or “immediately” or “right then.”
- The expression “the hour was late” could be translated as “it was late in the day” or “it would soon be getting dark” or “it was late afternoon.”

(See also: [hour](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:30
- Acts 10:30
- Mark 14:35

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G56100

(Go back to: [Romans 13:11](#))

hour, moment, immediately, for a while

Definition:

The term “hour” is often used in the Bible to tell what time of day a certain event took place. It is also used figuratively to mean “time” or “moment.”

- The Jews counted daylight hours starting at sunrise (around 6 a.m.). For example, “the ninth hour” meant “around three in the afternoon.”
- Nighttime hours were counted starting at sunset (around 6 p.m.). For example, “the third hour of the night” meant “around nine in the evening” in our present-day system..
- Since references to time in the Bible will not correspond exactly to the present-day time system, phrases such as “around nine” or “about six o’clock” could be used.
- Some translations might add phrases like “in the evening” or “in the morning” or “in the afternoon” to make it clear what time of day is being talked about.
- The phrase, “in that hour” could be translated as “at that time” or “in that moment.”
- Referring to Jesus, the expression “his hour had come” could be translated as “the time had come for him to” or “the appointed time for him had come.”

Bible References:

- Acts 2:15
- John 4:51-52
- Luke 23:44
- Matthew 20:3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8160, G56100

(Go back to: [Romans 13:11](#))

house, household

Definition:

The term “house” refers to a small building, shelter, or tent, usually the place where a family sleeps. The term is often used figuratively in the Bible to mean various concepts such as “household” or “descendants,” etc.

- Sometimes the term “house” means “household,” referring to all the people who live together in one house or multi-structure home compound (whether buildings or tents), including family members and all their servants.
- Sometimes the term “house” means “family” or “descendants,” referring to all the people related to or descended from a particular person. For example, the phrase “house of David” refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms “house of God” and “house of Yahweh” refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to a central place where Yahweh was worshipped.
- The phrase “house of Israel” can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “house” could be translated as “household” or “people” or “family” or “descendants” or “temple” or “dwelling place.”
- The phrase “house of David” could be translated as “clan of David” or “family of David” or “descendants of David.” Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate “house of Israel” could include “people of Israel” or “Israel’s descendants” or “Israelites.”
- The phrase “house of Yahweh” could be translated as “Yahweh’s temple” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped” or “place where Yahweh meets with his people” or “where Yahweh dwells.” The phrase “house of God” could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: [descendant](#), house of God, tabernacle, temple, house of David, kingdom of Israel)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:42
- Acts 7:49
- Genesis 39:4
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 8:39
- Matthew 10:6
- Matthew 15:24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1005, G36090, G36130, G36140, G36240

(Go back to: [Romans 16:5](#))

image, carved image, cast metal images, figure, carved figure, statue

Definition:

These terms are all used to refer to idols that have been made for worshiping a false god. In the context of worshiping idols, the term “image” is a shortened form of “carved image.”

- A “carved image” or “carved figure” is a wooden object that has been made to look like an animal, person, or thing.
- A “cast metal figure” is an object or statue created by melting metal and pouring it into a mold that is in the shape of an object, animal, or person.
- These wooden and metal objects were used in the worship of false gods.
- The term “image” when referring to an idol could either refer to a wooden or metal idol.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to an idol, the term “image” could also be translated as “statue” or “engraved idol” or “carved religious object.”
- It may be more clear in some languages to always use a descriptive word with this term, such as “carved image” or “cast metal figure,” even in places where only the term “image” or “figure” is in the original text.
- Make sure it is clear that this term is different than the term used to refer to being in the image of God.

(See also: [false god](#), [God](#), [false god](#), [image of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:9-10
- Acts 7:43
- Isaiah 21:8-9
- Matthew 22:21
- Romans 1:23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0457, H1544, H2553, H4541, H4676, H4853, H4906, H5257, H5262, H5566, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6754, H6755, H6816, H8403, H8544, H8655, G15040, G51790

(Go back to: [Romans 1:23](#); [8:29](#))

in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him

Definition:

The phrase “in Christ” and related terms refer to the state or condition of being in relationship with Jesus Christ through faith in him.

- Other related terms include “in Christ Jesus, in Jesus Christ, in the Lord Jesus, in the Lord Jesus Christ.”
- Possible meanings for the term “in Christ” could include “because you belong to Christ” or “through the relationship you have with Christ” or “based on your faith in Christ.”
- These related terms all have the same meaning of being in a state of believing in Jesus and being his disciple.
- Note: Sometimes the word “in” belongs with the verb. For example, “share in Christ” means to “share in” the benefits that come from knowing Christ. To “glory in” Christ means to be glad and give praise to God for who Jesus is and what he has done. To “believe in” Christ means to trust him as Savior and know him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “in Christ” and “in the Lord” (and related phrases) could include:
 - “who belong to Christ”
 - “because you believe in Christ”
 - “because Christ has saved us”
 - “in service to the Lord”
 - “relying on the Lord”
 - “because of what the Lord has done.”
- People who “believe in” Christ or who “have faith in” Christ believe what Jesus taught and are trusting him to save them because of his sacrifice on the cross that paid the penalty for their sins. Some languages may have one word that translates verbs like “believe in” or “share in” or “trust in.”

(See also: [Christ](#), [Lord](#), [Jesus](#), [believe](#), [faith](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:5
- 2 Corinthians 2:17
- 2 Timothy 1:1
- Galatians 1:22
- Galatians 2:17
- Philemon 1:6
- Revelation 1:10
- Romans 9:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G15190, G29620, G55470

(Go back to: [Introduction to Romans](#); [Romans 3:24](#); [6:11](#); [6:23](#); [8:1](#); [8:2](#); [8:39](#); [9:1](#); [12:5](#); [14:14](#); [15:17](#); [16:2](#); [16:3](#); [16:7](#); [16:8](#); [16:9](#); [16:10](#); [16:11](#); [16:12](#); [16:13](#); [16:22](#))

innocent

Definition:

The term “innocent” means to not be guilty of a crime or other wrongdoing. It can also refer more generally to people who are not involved in evil things.

- A person accused of doing something wrong is innocent if he has not committed that wrong.
- Sometimes the term “innocent” is used to refer to people who have done nothing wrong to deserve the bad treatment they are receiving, as in an enemy army attacking “innocent people.”
- In the Bible, “blood” can represent “killing,” so “innocent blood” refers to “killing people who did not deserve to die.”

Translation Suggestions:

- In most contexts, the term “innocent” can be translated as “not guilty” or “not responsible” or “not to blame” for something.
- When referring in general to innocent people, this term could be translated as “who have done nothing wrong” or “who are not involved in evil.”
- “To shed innocent blood” can be translated as “to kill people who did not deserve to die.”

(See also: [guilt](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 4:4
- 1 Samuel 19:5
- Acts 20:26
- Exodus 23:7
- Jeremiah 22:17
- Job 9:23
- Romans 16:18

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:6** After two years, Joseph was still in prison, even though he was **innocent**.
- **40:4** One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God? We are guilty, but this man is **innocent**.”
- **40:8** When the soldier guarding Jesus saw everything that happened, he said, “Certainly, this man was **innocent**. He was the Son of God.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2136, H2600, H2643, H5352, H5355, H5356, G01210

(Go back to: [Romans 16:18](#); [16:19](#))

instruct, instruction, instructors

Facts:

The terms “instruct” and “instruction” refer to giving specific directions about what to do.

- To “give instructions” means to tell someone specifically what he is supposed to do.
- When Jesus gave the disciples the bread and fish to distribute to the people, he gave them specific instructions about how to do it.
- Depending on the context, the term “instruct” could also be translated as “tell” or “direct” or “teach” or “give instructions to.”
- The term “instructions” could be translated as “directions” or “explanations” or “what he has told you to do.”
- When God gives instructions, this term is sometimes translated as “commands” or “orders.”

(See also: [command](#), decree, [teach](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 14:4
- Genesis 26:5
- Hebrews 11:22
- Matthew 10:5
- Matthew 11:1
- Proverbs 1:30

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0241, H0376, H0559, H0631, H1004, H1696, H1697, H3256, H3289, H3384, H4148, H4156, H4687, H4931, H4941, H6098, H6310, H6490, H6680, H7919, H8451, G12560, G12990, G13190, G13210, G13780, G17810, G17850, G27270, G27530, G35590, G35600, G38110, G38520, G38530, G42640, G43670, G48220

(Go back to: [Romans 2:18](#); [2:20](#); [15:4](#))

intercede, intercession

Definition:

The terms “intercede” and “intercession” refer to making requests to someone on behalf of another person. In the Bible this usually refers to praying for other people.

- The expressions “make intercession for” and “intercede for” mean to make requests to God for the benefit of other people.
- The Bible teaches that the Holy Spirit intercedes for us, that is, he prays to God for us.
- A person intercedes for other people by making requests for them to someone in authority.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “intercede” could include “plead for” or “urge (someone) to do something (for someone else).”
- The noun “intercessions” could be translated as “appeals” or “requests” or “urgent prayers.”
- The phrase “make intercession for” could be translated as “make requests for the benefit of” or “make an appeal on behalf of” or “ask God to help” or “appeal to God to bless (someone).”

(See also: [pray](#))

Bible References:

- Hebrews 7:25-26
- Isaiah 53:12
- Jeremiah 29:6-7
- Romans 8:26-27
- Romans 8:33-34

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6293, G17830, G17930, G52410

(Go back to: [Romans 8:27](#); [8:34](#))

Isaac

Facts:

Isaac was the only son of Abraham and Sarah. God had promised to give them a son even though they were very old.

- The name “Isaac” means “he laughs.” When God told Abraham that Sarah would give birth to a son, Abraham laughed because they were both very old. Some time later, Sarah also laughed when she heard this news.
- But God fulfilled his promise and Isaac was born to Abraham and Sarah in their old age.
- God told Abraham that the covenant he had made with Abraham would also be for Isaac and his descendants forever.
- When Isaac was a youth, God tested Abraham’s faith by commanding him to sacrifice Isaac.
- Isaac’s son Jacob had twelve sons whose descendants later became the twelve tribes of the nation of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [descendant](#), [eternity](#), [fulfill](#), [Jacob](#), [Sarah](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- Galatians 4:28-29
- Genesis 25:9-11
- Genesis 25:19
- Genesis 26:1
- Genesis 26:8
- Genesis 28:1-2
- Genesis 31:18
- Matthew 8:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:4** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of promise. Name him **Isaac**.”
- **5:6** When **Isaac** was a young man, God tested Abraham’s faith by saying, “Take **Isaac**, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **5:9** God had provided the ram to be the sacrifice instead of **Isaac**.
- **6:1** When Abraham was very old and his son, **Isaac**, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, **Isaac**.
- **6:5** **Isaac** prayed for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **7:10** Then **Isaac** died, and Jacob and Esau buried him. The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to **Isaac** now passed on to Jacob.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3327, H3446, G24640

(Go back to: [Romans 9:7](#); [9:10](#))

Isaiah

Facts:

Isaiah was a prophet of God who prophesied during the reigns of four kings of Judah: Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah.

- He lived in Jerusalem during the time when the Assyrians were attacking the city, during the reign of Hezekiah.
- The Old Testament book of Isaiah is one of the major books of the Bible.
- Isaiah wrote many prophecies that came true while he was still living.
- Isaiah is especially known for the prophecies he wrote about the Messiah that came true 700 years later when Jesus was living on earth.
- Jesus and his disciples quoted Isaiah's prophecies to teach people about the Messiah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ahaz, Assyria, [Christ](#), Hezekiah, Jotham, Judah, [prophet](#), Uzziah)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:1-3
- Acts 28:26
- Isaiah 1:1
- Luke 3:4
- Mark 1:1
- Mark 7:6
- Matthew 3:3
- Matthew 4:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:9** The prophet **Isaiah** prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **21:10** The prophet **Isaiah** said the Messiah would live in Galilee, comfort broken-hearted people, and proclaim freedom to captives and release to prisoners.
- **21:11** The prophet **Isaiah** also prophesied that the Messiah would be hated without reason and rejected.
- **21:12** **Isaiah** prophesied that people would spit on, mock, and beat the Messiah.
- **26:2** They handed him (Jesus) the scroll of the prophet **Isaiah** so that he would read from it. Jesus opened up the scroll and read part of it to the people.
- **45:8** When Philip approached the chariot, he heard the Ethiopian reading from what the prophet **Isaiah** wrote.
- **45:10** Philip explained to the Ethiopian that **Isaiah** was writing about Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3470, G22680

(Go back to: [Romans 9:27](#); [9:29](#); [10:16](#); [10:20](#); [15:12](#))

Israel, Israelites

Facts:

The term "Israel" is the name that God gave to Jacob. Often it refers to the nation that is descended from him.

- The name Israel probably means "He struggles with God."
- The descendants of Jacob became known as the "sons of Israel" or the "people of Israel" or the "nation of Israel" or the "Israelites."
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called "Judah," and the northern kingdom, called "Israel."
- Often the term "Israel" can be translated as "the people of Israel" or "the nation of Israel," depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), kingdom of Israel, Judah, [nation](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1
- 1 Kings 8:2
- Acts 2:36
- Acts 7:24
- Acts 13:23
- John 1:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:29
- Matthew 2:6
- Matthew 27:9
- Philippians 3:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **9:3** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **9:5** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **10:1** They said, "This is what the God of **Israel** says, 'Let my people go!'"
- **14:12** But despite all this, the people of *_Israel_* complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **15:9** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** *its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave _Israel_ peace along all its borders.*
- **16:16** So God punished *_Israel_* again for worshipping idols.
- **43:6** "Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G09350, G24740, G24750

(Go back to: [Romans 9:4](#); [9:6](#); [9:27](#); [9:31](#); [10:19](#); [10:21](#); [11:1](#); [11:2](#); [11:7](#); [11:25](#); [11:26](#))

it is written

Definition:

The phrase “as it is written” or “what is written” occurs frequently in the New Testament and usually refers to commands or prophecies that were written in the Hebrew scriptures.

- Sometimes “as it is written” refers to what was written in the Law of Moses.
- Other times it is a quote from what one of the prophets wrote in the Old Testament.
- This could be translated “as it is written in the Law of Moses” or “as the prophets wrote long ago” or “what it says in God’s laws that Moses wrote down long ago”.
- Another option is to keep “It is written” and give a footnote that explains what this means.

(See also: [command](#), [law](#), [prophet](#), [word of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 5:13-15
- Acts 13:29
- Exodus 32:15-16
- John 21:25
- Luke 3:4
- Mark 9:12
- Matthew 4:6
- Revelation 1:3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3789, G11250

(Go back to: [Romans 1:17](#); [2:24](#); [3:4](#); [3:10](#); [4:17](#); [4:23](#); [8:36](#); [9:13](#); [9:33](#); [10:5](#); [10:15](#); [11:8](#); [11:26](#); [12:19](#); [14:11](#); [15:3](#); [15:4](#); [15:9](#); [15:21](#))

Jacob, Israel

Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac by Rebekah. God changed his name to “Israel.” His descendants became the nation of Israel.

- Jacob is the last of the three patriarchs of the Israelite nation: Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. The descendants of Jacob’s twelve sons became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The name Jacob is similar to the Hebrew word meaning “heel.” As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau. In the Old Testament times, the heel was a body part associated both with attack and with the rear part of a person’s body. The Hebrew name Jacob was probably associated with the idea of attacking someone from behind.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob’s name to “Israel,” which probably means “He struggles with God.”
- Jacob married Laban’s two daughters, Leah and Rachel, as well as each of their servants, Zilpah and Bilhah. These four women mothered the twelve sons who became the ancestral fathers of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- In the New Testament, a different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph’s father in Matthew’s genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), twelve tribes of Israel, Leah, Rachel, Zilpah, Bilhah, [deceive](#), [Esau](#), [Isaac](#), [Rebekah](#), Laban)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:11
- Acts 7:46
- Genesis 25:26
- Genesis 29:1-3
- Genesis 32:1-2
- John 4:4-5
- Matthew 8:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **7:1** As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved **Jacob**, but Isaac loved Esau. **Jacob** loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.
- **7:7** **Jacob** lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- **7:8** After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, **Jacob** returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.
- **7:10** The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to **Jacob**.
- **8:1** Many years later, when **Jacob** was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3290, G23840

(Go back to: [Romans 9:13](#); [11:26](#))

jealous, jealousy

Definition:

The terms “jealous” and “jealousy” refer to a strong desire to protect the purity of a relationship. They can also refer to a strong desire to keep possession of something or someone.

- These terms are often used to describe the angry feeling that a person has toward a spouse who has been unfaithful in their marriage.
- When used in the Bible, these terms often refer to God’s strong desire for his people to remain pure and unstained by sin.
- God is also “jealous” for his name, desiring that it be treated with honor and reverence.
- Another meaning of jealous involves being angry that someone else is successful or more popular. This is close in meaning to the word “envious.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “jealous” could include “strong protective desire” or “possessive desire.”
- The term “jealousy” could be translated as “strong protective feeling” or “possessive feeling.”
- When talking about God, make sure the translation of these terms does not give a negative meaning of being resentful of someone else.
- In the context of people’s wrong feelings of anger toward other people who are more successful, the terms “envious” and “envy” could be used. But these terms should not be used for God.

(See also: [envy](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 12:20
- Deuteronomy 5:9
- Exodus 20:5
- Ezekiel 36:5
- Joshua 24:19
- Nahum 1:2-3
- Romans 13:13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7065, H7067, H7068, H7072, G22050, G38630

(Go back to: [Romans 10 General Notes; 13:13](#))

Jerusalem

Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

- The name "Jerusalem" is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include "Salem" "city of Jebus," and "Zion." Both "Jerusalem" and "Salem," have the root meaning of "peace."
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called "Zion" which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- It was in Jerusalem that David's son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going "up" to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: Babylon, [Christ](#), [David](#), Jebusites, [Jesus](#), Solomon, temple, [Zion](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 4:26-27
- John 2:13
- Luke 4:9-11
- Luke 13:5
- Mark 3:7-8
- Mark 3:20-22
- Matthew 3:6
- Matthew 4:23-25
- Matthew 20:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:5** David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it his capital city.
- **18:2** In **Jerusalem**, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **20:7** They (Babylonians) captured the city of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.
- **38:1** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.
- **38:2** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in **Jerusalem**, and then go to all people groups everywhere."
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in **Jerusalem** until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3389, H3390, G24140, G24150, G24190

(Go back to: [Romans 15:19](#); [15:25](#); [15:26](#); [15:31](#))

Jesse

Facts:

Jesse was the father of King David and the grandson of Ruth and Boaz.

- Jesse was from the tribe of Judah.
- He was an “Ephrathite,” which means he was from the region of Ephrathah. The town of Bethlehem was located in the region of Ephrathah.
- The prophet Isaiah prophesied about a “shoot” or “branch” that would come from the “root of Jesse” and bear fruit. This refers to Jesus, who was a descendant of Jesse.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Bethlehem, Boaz, [descendant](#), [Jesus](#), king, [prophet](#), Ruth, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:12
- 1 Kings 12:16
- 1 Samuel 16:1
- Luke 3:32
- Matthew 1:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3448, G24210

([Go back to: Romans 15:12](#))

Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

Facts:

Jesus is God's Son. The name "Jesus" means "Yahweh saves." The term "Christ" is a title that means "anointed one" and is another word for Messiah.

- The two names are often combined as "Jesus Christ" or "Christ Jesus." These names emphasize that God's Son is the Messiah, who came to save people from being punished eternally for their sins.
- In a miraculous way, the Holy Spirit caused the eternal Son of God to be born as a human being. His mother was told by an angel to call him "Jesus" because he was destined to save people from their sins.
- Jesus did many miracles that revealed that he is God and that he is the Christ, or the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many languages "Jesus" and "Christ" are spelled in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesucristo," "Jezus Christus," "Yesus Kristus", and "Hesukristo" are some of the ways that these names are translated into different languages.
- For the term "Christ," some translators may prefer to use only some form of the term "Messiah" throughout.
- Also consider how these names are spelled in a nearby local or national language.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [God](#), [God the Father](#), high priest, [kingdom of God](#), Mary, Savior, [Son of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 6:11
- 1 John 2:2
- 1 John 4:15
- 1 Timothy 1:2
- 2 Peter 1:2
- 2 Thessalonians 2:15
- 2 Timothy 1:10
- Acts 2:23
- Acts 5:30
- Acts 10:36
- Hebrews 9:14
- Hebrews 10:22
- Luke 24:20
- Matthew 1:21
- Matthew 4:3
- Philippians 2:5
- Philippians 2:10
- Philippians 4:21-23
- Revelation 1:6

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:4** The angel said, "You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him **Jesus** and he will be the Messiah."

- **23:2** "Name him **Jesus** (which means, 'Yahweh saves'), because he will save the people from their sins."
- **24:7** So John baptized him (Jesus), even though **Jesus** had never sinned.
- **24:9** There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw **Jesus** the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized **Jesus**.
- **25:8** **Jesus** did not give in to Satan's temptations, so Satan left him.
- **26:8** Then **Jesus** went throughout the region of Galilee, and large crowds came to him. They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and **Jesus** healed them.
- **31:3** Then **Jesus** finished praying and went to the disciples. He walked on top of the water across the lake toward their boat!
- **38:2** He (Judas) knew that the Jewish leaders denied that **Jesus** was the Messiah and that they were plotting to kill him.
- **40:8** Through his death, **Jesus** opened a way for people to come to God.
- **42:11** Then **Jesus** was taken up to heaven, and a cloud hid him from their sight. **Jesus** sat down at the right hand of God to rule over all things.
- **50:17** **Jesus** and his people will live on the new earth, and he will reign forever over everything that exists. He will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death. **Jesus** will rule his kingdom with peace and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G24240, G55470

(Go back to: [Romans 1:1](#); [1:4](#); [1:6](#); [1:7](#); [1:8](#); [2:16](#); [3:22](#); [3:24](#); [3:26](#); [4:24](#); [5:1](#); [5:11](#); [5:15](#); [5:17](#); [5:21](#); [6:3](#); [6:11](#); [6:23](#); [7:25](#); [8:1](#); [8:2](#); [8:11](#); [8:34](#); [8:39](#); [10:9](#); [13:14](#); [14:14](#); [15:5](#); [15:6](#); [15:16](#); [15:17](#); [15:30](#); [16:3](#); [16:18](#); [16:20](#); [16:25](#); [16:27](#))

Jew, Jewish

Facts:

Jews are people who are descendants of Abraham's grandson Jacob. The word "Jew" comes from the word "Judah."

- People began to call the Israelites "Jews" after they returned to Judah from their exile in Babylon.
- Jesus the Messiah was Jewish. However, the Jewish religious leaders rejected Jesus and demanded that he be killed.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), Babylon, Jewish leaders)

Bible References:

- Acts 2:5
- Acts 10:28
- Acts 14:5-7
- Colossians 3:11
- John 2:14
- Matthew 28:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:11** The Israelites were now called **Jews** and most of them had lived their whole lives in Babylon.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of **Jews** returned to the city of Jerusalem in Judah.
- **37:10** Many of the **Jews** believed in Jesus because of this miracle.
- **37:11** But the religious leaders of the **Jews** were jealous, so they gathered together to plan how they could kill Jesus and Lazarus.
- **40:2** Pilate commanded that they write, "King of the **Jews**" on a sign and put it on the cross above Jesus' head.
- **46:6** Right away, Saul began preaching to the **Jews** in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3054, H3061, H3062, H3064, H3066, G24500, G24510, G24520, G24530, G24540

(Go back to: [Romans 1:16](#); [2:9](#); [2:10](#); [2:17](#); [2:28](#); [2:29](#); [3:1](#); [3:9](#); [3:29](#); [9:24](#); [10:12](#))

joy, joyful, rejoice, glad

Definition:

joy

The term “joy” refers to a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction. The related term “joyful” describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

rejoice

The term “rejoice” means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as “be very happy” or “be very glad” or “be full of joy.”
- When Mary said “my soul rejoices in God my Savior,” she meant “God my Savior has made me very happy” or “I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “joy” could also be translated as “gladness” or “delight” or “great happiness.”
- The phrase, “be joyful” could be translated as “rejoice” or “be very glad” or it could be translated “be very happy in God’s goodness.”
- A person who is joyful could be described as “very happy” or “delighted” or “deeply glad.”
- A phrase such as “make a joyful shout” could be translated as “shout in a way that shows you are very happy.”
- A “joyful city” or “joyful house” could be translated as “city where joyful people live” or “house full of joyful people” or “city whose people are very happy.” (See: [metonymy](#))

Bible References:

- Nehemiah 8:10
- Psalm 48:2
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 2:9-10
- Luke 15:7
- Luke 19:37-38
- John 3:29
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 5:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 5:23
- Philippians 4:10-13

- 1 Thessalonians 1:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 5:16
- Philemon 1:4-7
- James 1:2
- 3 John 1:1-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:7** "The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with **joy**."
- **34:4** "The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field."
- **41:7** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H1524, H1525, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G00200, G00210, G21650, G21670, G27440, G46400, G47960, G49130, G54630, G54790

(Go back to: [Romans 5:11](#); [12:12](#); [12:15](#); [14:17](#); [15:13](#); [15:32](#); [16:19](#))

Judea, Judah

Facts:

The term “Judea” refers to an area of land in ancient Israel. It is sometimes used in a narrow sense and other times in a broad sense.

- Sometimes “Judea” is used in a narrow sense to refer only to the province located in the southern part of ancient Israel just west of the Dead Sea. Some translations call this province “Judah.”
- Other times “Judea” has a broad sense and refers to all the provinces of ancient Israel, including Galilee, Samaria, Perea, Idumea and Judea (Judah).
- If translators want to make the distinction clear, the broad sense of Judea could be translated as “Judea Country” and the narrow sense could be translated as “Judea Province,” or “Judah Province” since this is the part of ancient Israel where the tribe of Judah had originally lived.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Galilee, Edom, Judah, Judah, Samaria)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14
- Acts 2:9
- Acts 9:32
- Acts 12:19
- John 3:22-24
- Luke 1:5
- Luke 4:44
- Luke 5:17
- Mark 10:1-4
- Matthew 2:1
- Matthew 2:5
- Matthew 2:22-23
- Matthew 3:1-3
- Matthew 19:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G24530

(Go back to: [Romans 15:31](#))

judge, judgment

Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether or not something is good, wise, or right. However, these terms can also refer to actions performed by a person as the result of a decision, usually in the context of deciding that something is bad, wrong, or evil.

- The terms “judge” and “judgment” can also mean “to cause harm to” (usually because God has decided a person or nation’s actions are wicked).
- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to “judge” could include to “decide” or to “condemn” or to “punish” or to “decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: decree, judge, judgment day, [just](#), [law](#), [law](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:17
- 1 Kings 3:9
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 3:14
- James 2:4
- Luke 6:37
- Micah 3:9-11
- Psalm 54:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:8** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:4** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, “We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?”

- **50:14** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0148, H0430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G01440, G03500, G09680, G11060, G12520, G13410, G13450, G13480, G13490, G29170, G29190, G29200, G29220, G29230, G42320

(Go back to: [Romans 2 General Notes](#); [2:1](#); [2:2](#); [2:3](#); [2:12](#); [2:16](#); [2:27](#); [3:4](#); [3:6](#); [3:7](#); [3:19](#); [5:16](#); [11:33](#); [13:2](#); [14:1](#); [14:3](#); [14:4](#); [14:5](#); [14:10](#); [14:13](#))

just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification

Definition:

“Just” and “justice” refer to treating people fairly according to God’s laws. Human laws that reflect God’s standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be “just” is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God’s eyes.
- To act “justly” means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God’s laws.
- To receive “justice” means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term “just” has the broader meaning of “righteous” or “following God’s laws.”

The terms “unjust” and “unjustly” refer to treating people in an unfair and often harmful manner.

- An “injustice” is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being “partial” or “prejudiced” because he is not treating people equally.

The terms “justify” and “justification” refer to causing a guilty person to be righteous. Only God can truly justify people.

- When God justifies people, he forgives their sins and makes it as though they have no sin. He justifies sinners who repent and trust in Jesus to save them from their sins.
- “Justification” refers to what God does when he forgives a person’s sins and declares that person to be righteous in his sight.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “just” could include “morally right” or “fair.”
- The term “justice” could be translated as “fair treatment” or “deserved consequences.”
- To “act justly” could be translated as “treat fairly” or “behave in a just way.”
- In some contexts, “just” could be translated as “righteous” or “upright.”
- Depending on the context, “unjust” could also be translated as “unfair” or “partial” or “unrighteous.”
- The phrase “the unjust” could be translated as “the unjust ones” or “unjust people” or “people who treat others unfairly” or “unrighteous people” or “people who disobey God.”
- The term “unjustly” could be translated as “in an unfair manner” or “wrongly” or “unfairly.”
- Ways to translate “injustice” could include, “wrong treatment” or “unfair treatment” or “acting unfairly.” (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- Other ways to translate “justify” could include “declare (someone) to be righteous” or “cause (someone) to be righteous.”
- The term “justification” could be translated as “being declared righteous” or “becoming righteous” or “causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “resulting in justification” could be translated as “so that God justified many people” or “which resulted in God causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “for our justification” could be translated as “in order that we could be made righteous by God.”

(See also: [forgive](#), [guilt](#), [judge](#), [righteous](#), [righteous](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 44:16
- 1 Chronicles 18:14
- Isaiah 4:3-4
- Jeremiah 22:3
- Ezekiel 18:16-17
- Micah 3:8
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 11:19
- Matthew 23:23-24
- Luke 18:3
- Luke 18:8
- Luke 18:13-14
- Luke 21:20-22
- Luke 23:41
- Acts 13:38-39
- Acts 28:4
- Romans 4:1-3
- Galatians 3:6-9
- Galatians 3:11
- Galatians 5:3-4
- Titus 3:6-7
- Hebrews 6:10
- James 2:24
- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:9** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- **18:13** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.
- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H2555, H3477, H4941, H5765, H5766, H5767, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6666, H8003, H8264, H8636, G00910, G00930, G00940, G13420, G13440, G13450, G13460, G13470, G17380

(Go back to: [Romans 2 General Notes](#); [2:13](#); [Notes](#); [3:4](#); [3:8](#); [3:20](#); [3:24](#); [3:26](#); [3:28](#); [3:30](#); [Notes](#); [4:2](#); [4:5](#); [4:25](#); [Notes](#); [5:1](#); [5:9](#); [5:16](#); [5:18](#); [8:30](#); [8:33](#))

kin, kinfolk, kindred, kinsman

Definition:

The term “kin” refers to a person’s blood relatives, considered as a group. The word “kinsman” refers specifically to a male relative.

- “Kin” can only refer to a person’s close relatives, such as parents and siblings, or it can also include more distant relatives, such as an aunts, uncles, or cousins.
- In ancient Israel, if a man died, his nearest male relative was expected to marry his widow, manage his property, and help carry on his family name. This relative was called a “kinsman-redeemer.”
- This term “kin” could also be translated as “relative” or “family member.”

Bible References:

- Romans 16:9-11
- Ruth 2:20
- Ruth 3:9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0251, H1350, H4129, H4130, H7138, H7607, G47730

(Go back to: [Romans 9:3](#); [16:7](#); [16:11](#); [16:21](#))

kind [NOT kindness]

Definition:

The term “kind” refers to a group or classification of something(s) that share some common characteristics but not all characteristics.

- In the Bible, this term is specifically used to refer to the distinctive kinds of plants and animals that God made when he created the world.
- Often there are many different variations or species within each “kind.” For example, horses, zebras, and donkeys are all members of the same “kind,” but they are different species.
- The main thing that distinguishes each “kind” as a separate group is that members of that group can reproduce more of their same “kind.” Members of different kinds cannot do that with each other.

Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate this term could include “type” or “class” or “group” or “animal (plant) group” or “category.”

Bible References:

- Genesis 1:21
- Genesis 1:24
- Mark 9:29
- Matthew 13:47

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2178, H3978, H4327, G10850, G54490

(Go back to: [Romans 2:4](#); [11:22](#))

kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven

Definition:

The terms “kingdom of God” and “kingdom of heaven” both refer to God’s rule and authority over his people and over all creation.

- The Jews often used the term “heaven” to refer to God, to avoid saying his name directly. (See: [metonymy](#))
- In the New Testament book that Matthew wrote, he referred to God’s kingdom as “the kingdom of heaven,” probably because he was writing primarily for a Jewish audience.
- The kingdom of God refers to God ruling people spiritually as well as ruling over the physical world.
- The Old Testament prophets said that God would send the Messiah to rule with righteousness. Jesus, the Son of God, is the Messiah who will rule over God’s kingdom forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “kingdom of God” can be translated as “God’s rule (as king)” or “when God reigns as king” or “God’s rule over everything.”
- The term “kingdom of heaven” could also be translated as “God’s rule from heaven as king” or “God in heaven reigning” or “heaven’s reign” or “heaven ruling over everything.” If it is not possible to translate this simply and clearly, the phrase “kingdom of God” could be translated instead.
- Some translators may prefer to capitalize “Heaven” to show that it refers to God. Others may include a note in the text, such as “kingdom of heaven (that is, ‘kingdom of God’).”
- A footnote at the bottom of the page of a printed Bible may also be used to explain the meaning of “heaven” in this expression.

(See also: [God](#), [heaven](#), king, kingdom, King of the Jews, [reign](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 1:5
- Acts 8:12-13
- Acts 28:23
- Colossians 4:11
- John 3:3
- Luke 7:28
- Luke 10:9
- Luke 12:31-32
- Matthew 3:2
- Matthew 4:17
- Matthew 5:10
- Romans 14:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:2** He (John) preached to them, saying, “Repent, for the **kingdom of God** is near!”
- **28:6** Then Jesus said to his disciples, “It is extremely hard for rich people to enter into the **kingdom of God**! Yes, it is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich man to enter the **kingdom of God**.”
- **29:2** Jesus said, “The **kingdom of God** is like a king who wanted to settle accounts with his servants.”
- **34:1** Jesus told many other stories about the **kingdom of God**. For example, he said, “The **kingdom of God** is like a mustard seed that someone planted in his field.”

- **34:3** Jesus told another story, "The **kingdom of God** is like yeast that a woman mixes into some bread dough until it spreads throughout the dough."
- **34:4** "The **kingdom of God** is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again."
- **34:5** "The **kingdom of God** is also like a perfect pearl of great value."
- **42:9** He proved to his disciples in many ways that he was alive, and he taught them about the **kingdom of God**.
- **49:5** Jesus said that the **kingdom of God** is more valuable than anything else in the world.
- **50:2** When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will preach the good news about the **kingdom of God** to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."

Word Data:

- Strong's: G09320, G23160, G37720

(Go back to: [Romans 14:17](#))

kiss

Definition:

A kiss is an action in which one person puts his lips to another person's lips or face. This term can also be used figuratively.

- Some cultures kiss each other on the cheek as a form of greeting or to say goodbye.
- A kiss can communicate deep love between two people, such as a husband and wife.
- The expression to "kiss someone farewell" means to say goodbye with a kiss.
- Sometimes the word "kiss" is used to mean "say goodbye to." When Elisha said to Elijah, "Let me first go and kiss my father and mother," he wanted to say goodbye to his parents before leaving them to follow Elijah.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:25-28
- Genesis 27:26-27
- Genesis 29:11
- Genesis 31:28
- Genesis 45:15
- Genesis 48:10
- Luke 22:48
- Mark 14:45
- Matthew 26:48

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5390, H5401, G27050, G53680, G53700

(Go back to: [Romans 16:16](#))

know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Definition:

The term “know” and “knowledge” means generally to understand something or someone. It can also mean to be aware of a fact or to be familiar with a person. The expression “to make known” means to tell information.

- The term “knowledge” refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know” God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God’s will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”
- When used of a man and a woman to “know” is often an euphemism that refers to having sexual intercourse.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” or “be in relationship with.”
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as “distinguish.” When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition “between.”
- Some languages have two different words for “know,” one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.

(See also: [law](#), [reveal](#), [understand](#), [wise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 2:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46
- 2 Corinthians 2:15
- 2 Peter 1:3-4
- Deuteronomy 4:39-40
- Genesis 19:5
- Luke 1:77

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1843, H1844, H1847, H1875, H3045, H3046, H4093, H4486, H5046, H5234, H5475, H5869, G00500, G00560, G10970, G11070, G11080, G14920, G19210, G19220, G19870, G24670, G25890, G42670, G48940

(Go back to: [Romans 1:13](#); [1:19](#); [1:21](#); [1:28](#); [2:2](#); [2:4](#); [2:18](#); [2:20](#); [3:17](#); [3:19](#); [3:20](#); [5:3](#); [6:3](#); [6:6](#); [6:9](#); [6:16](#); [7:1](#); [7:7](#); [7:14](#); [7:18](#); [8:22](#); [8:26](#); [8:27](#); [8:28](#); [9:22](#); [9:23](#); [10:2](#); [10:3](#); [10:19](#); [11:2](#); [11:25](#); [11:33](#); [11:34](#); [13:11](#); [14:14](#); [15:14](#); [15:29](#); [16:26](#))

labor, laborer, work, hard work

Definition:

The term “labor” refers to doing hard work of any kind.

- In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It is often implied that the task is difficult.
- A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
- In English, the word “labor” is also used for part of the process of giving birth. Other languages may have a completely different word for this.
- Ways to translate “labor” could include “work” or “hard work” or “difficult work” or to “work hard.”

(See also: [hard](#), labor pains)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:9
- 1 Thessalonians 3:5
- Galatians 4:10-11
- James 5:4
- John 4:38
- Luke 10:2
- Matthew 10:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3018, H3021, H3022, H3205, H4522, H4639, H5447, H5450, H5647, H5656, H5998, H5999, H6001, H6089, H6468, H6635, G00750, G20380, G20400, G20410, G28720, G28730, G48660, G49040

(Go back to: [Romans 2:10](#); [4:4](#); [4:5](#); [13:10](#); [16:6](#); [16:12](#))

law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God

Definition:

Most simply, the term “law” refers to a rule or instruction that should be followed. In the Bible, the term “law” is often used generally to refer to anything and everything God wants his people to obey and do. The specific term “law of Moses” refers to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey.

- Depending on the context, the “law” can refer to:
 - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
 - all the laws given to Moses
 - the first five books of the Old Testament
 - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as “scriptures” in the New Testament).
 - all of God’s instructions and will
- The phrase “the Law and the Prophets” is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or “Old Testament”)

Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, “laws,” since they refer to many instructions.
- The term “law of Moses” could be translated as “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Depending on the context, “the law of Moses” could also be translated as “the law that God told to Moses” or “God’s laws that Moses wrote down” or “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Ways to translate “the law” or “law of God” or “God’s laws” could include “laws from God” or “God’s commands” or “laws that God gave” or “everything that God commands” or “all of God’s instructions.”
- The phrase “law of Yahweh” could also be translated as “Yahweh’s laws” or “laws that Yahweh said to obey” or “laws from Yahweh” or “things Yahweh commanded.”

(See also: [instruct](#), [Moses](#), Ten Commandments, [lawful](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 15:6
- Daniel 9:13
- Exodus 28:42-43
- Ezra 7:25-26
- Galatians 2:15
- Luke 24:44
- Matthew 5:18
- Nehemiah 10:29
- Romans 3:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:7** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.
- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed **God’s law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.
- **16:1** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God’s laws**.

- **21:5** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.
- **27:1** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"
- **28:1** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws**."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2710, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G23160, G35510, G35650

(Go back to: [Romans 2 General Notes](#); [2:12](#); [2:13](#); [2:14](#); [2:15](#); [2:17](#); [2:18](#); [2:20](#); [2:23](#); [2:25](#); [2:26](#); [2:27](#); [Notes](#); [3:19](#); [3:20](#); [3:21](#); [3:28](#); [3:31](#); [Notes](#); [4:13](#); [4:14](#); [4:15](#); [4:16](#); [5:13](#); [5:20](#); [6:14](#); [6:15](#); [Notes](#); [7:1](#); [7:4](#); [7:5](#); [7:6](#); [7:7](#); [7:8](#); [7:9](#); [7:12](#); [7:14](#); [7:16](#); [7:22](#); [7:25](#); [8:3](#); [8:4](#); [9:31](#); [10:5](#); [Notes](#); [13:8](#); [13:10](#))

law, principle

Definition:

A “law” is a legal rule that is usually written down and enforced by someone in authority. A “principle” is a guideline for decision-making and behavior, and is usually not written down or enforced. However, sometimes the term “law” is used to mean a “principle.”

- A “law” is similar to a “decree,” but the term “law” is generally used to refer to something written rather than spoken.
- Both “law” and “principle” can refer to a general rule or belief that guides a person’s behavior.
- This meaning of “law” is different from its meaning in the term “law of Moses,” where it refers to commands and instructions that God gave the Israelites.
- When a general law is being referred to, “law” could be translated as “principle” or “general rule.”

(See also: [law of Moses](#), decree, [command](#), [declare](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 4:2
- Esther 3:8-9
- Exodus 12:12-14
- Genesis 26:5
- John 18:31
- Romans 7:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1285, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2708, H2710, H4687, H4941, H6310, H7560, H8451, G17850, G35480, G35510, G47470

(Go back to: [Romans 3:27](#); [7:2](#); [7:3](#); [7:21](#); [7:23](#); [7:25](#); [8:2](#); [8:7](#); [9:4](#); [10:4](#))

lawful, unlawful, not lawful, lawless, lawlessness

Definition:

The term “lawful” refers to something that is permitted to be done according to a law or other requirement. The opposite of this is “unlawful,” which simply means “not lawful.”

- In the Bible, something was “lawful” if it was permitted by God’s moral law, or by the Law of Moses and other Jewish laws. Something that was “unlawful” was “not permitted” by those laws.
- To do something “lawfully” means to do it “properly” or “in the right way.”
- Many of the things that the Jewish laws considered lawful or not lawful were not in agreement with God’s laws about loving others.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “lawful” could include “permitted” or “according to God’s law” or “following our laws” or “proper” or “fitting.”
- The phrase “Is it lawful?” could also be translated as “Do our laws allow?” or “Is that something our laws permit?”

The terms “unlawful” and “not lawful” are used to describe actions that break a law.

- In the New Testament, the term “unlawful” is not only used to refer to breaking God’s laws, but also often refers to breaking Jewish man-made laws.
- Over the years, the Jews added to the laws that God gave to them. The Jewish leaders would call something “unlawful” if it did not conform to their man-made laws.
- When Jesus and his disciples were picking grain on a Sabbath day, the Pharisees accused them of doing something “unlawful” because it was breaking the Jewish laws about not working on that day.
- When Peter stated that eating unclean foods was “unlawful” for him, he meant that if he ate those foods he would be breaking the laws God had given the Israelites about not eating certain foods.

The term “lawless” describes a person who does not obey laws or rules. When a country or group of people are in a state of “lawlessness,” there is widespread disobedience, rebellion, or immorality.

- A lawless person is rebellious and does not obey God’s laws.
- The apostle Paul wrote that in the last days there will be a “man of lawlessness,” or a “lawless one,” who will be influenced by Satan to do evil things.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term “unlawful” should be translated using a word or expression that means “not lawful” or “lawbreaking.”
- Other ways to translate “unlawful” could be “not permitted” or “not according to God’s law” or “not conforming to our laws.”
- The expression “against the law” has the same meaning as “unlawful.”
- The term “lawless” could also be translated as “rebellious” or “disobedient” or “law-defying”.
- The term “lawlessness” could be translated as “not obeying any laws” or “rebellion (against God’s laws).”
- The phrase “man of lawlessness” could be translated as “man who does not obey any laws” or “man who rebels against God’s laws.”
- It is important to keep the concept of “law” in this term, if possible.
- Note that the term “unlawful” has a different meaning from this term.

(See also: [law](#), [law](#), [Moses](#), [Sabbath](#))

Bible References:

- Matthew 7:21-23

- Matthew 12:2
- Matthew 12:4
- Matthew 12:10
- Mark 3:4
- Luke 6:2
- Acts 2:23
- Acts 10:28
- Acts 22:25
- 2 Thessalonians 2:3
- Titus 2:14
- 1 John 3:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6530, G01110, G01130, G02660, G04580, G04590, G18320, G35450

(Go back to: [Romans 4:7](#); [6:19](#))

life, live, living, alive

Definition:

The term “life” refers to being physically alive as opposed to being physically dead.

1. Physical life

- A “life” can also refer to an individual person as in “a life was saved”.
- Sometimes the word “life” refers to the experience of living as in, “his life was enjoyable.”
- It can also refer to a person’s lifespan, as in the expression, “the end of his life.”
- The term “living” may refer to being physically alive, as in “my mother is still living.” It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, “they were living in the city.”
- In the Bible, the concept of “life” is often contrasted with the concept of “death.”

2. Eternal life

- A person has eternal life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- The opposite of eternal life is eternal death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “life” can be translated as “existence” or “person” or “soul” or “being” or “experience.”
- The term “live” could be translated by “dwell” or “reside” or “exist.”
- The expression “end of his life” could be translated as “when he stopped living.”
- The expression “spared their lives” could be translated as “allowed them to live” or “did not kill them.”
- The expression “they risked their lives” could be translated as “they put themselves in danger” or “they did something that could have killed them.”
- When the Bible text talks about eternal life, the term “life” could be translated in the following ways: “eternal life” or “God making us alive in our spirits” or “new life by God’s Spirit” or “being made alive in our inner self.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “give life” could also be translated as “cause to live” or “give eternal life” or “cause to live eternally.”

(See also: [death](#), [everlasting](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 1:3
- Acts 10:42
- Genesis 2:7
- Genesis 7:22
- Hebrews 10:20
- Jeremiah 44:2
- John 1:4
- Judges 2:18
- Luke 12:23
- Matthew 7:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- **3:1** After a long time, many people were *_living_* in the world.
- **8:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- **17:9** However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- **35:5** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- **44:5** "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G01980, G02220, G02270, G08060, G05900

(Go back to: [Romans 1:17](#); [2:7](#); [4:17](#); [5:10](#); [5:17](#); [5:18](#); [5:21](#); [6:2](#); [6:4](#); [6:8](#); [6:10](#); [6:11](#); [6:13](#); [6:22](#); [6:23](#); [7:1](#); [7:2](#); [7:3](#); [7:9](#); [7:10](#); [8:6](#); [8:10](#); [8:11](#); [8:12](#); [8:13](#); [8:38](#); [9:26](#); [10:5](#); [11:3](#); [11:15](#); [12:1](#); [14:7](#); [14:8](#); [14:9](#); [14:11](#); [16:4](#))

light, luminary, shine, brighten, enlighten

Definition:

The term “light” is used figuratively in various ways in the Bible. Light is often used as a metaphor for wisdom, life, righteousness, truth, or happiness.

- Jesus said, “I am the light of the world” to express that he brings God’s true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
- Christians are commanded to “walk in the light,” which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
- The apostle John stated that “God is light” and in him there is no darkness at all.
- Jesus said that he was “the light of the world” and that his followers should shine like lights in the world by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
- “Walking in the light” represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

Translation Suggestions:

- When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms “light” and “darkness” even when they are used figuratively.
- It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, “walk as children of light” could be translated as “live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight.”
- Make sure that the translation of “light” does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: [darkness](#), [wisdom](#), [life](#), [righteous](#), [true](#), [joy](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 John 2:8
- 2 Corinthians 4:6
- Acts 26:18
- Isaiah 2:5
- John 1:5
- Matthew 5:16
- Matthew 6:23
- Nehemiah 9:12-13
- Revelation 18:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0216, H0217, H3313, H3974, H5051, H5094, H5105, H5216, H7837, G06810, G07960, G16450, G29850, G30880, G53380, G54570, G54580, G54600, G54620

(Go back to: [Romans 2:19](#); [13:12](#))

like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if

Definition:

The terms “like” and “likeness” refer to something being the same as, or similar to, something else.

- The word “like” is also often used in a figurative expressions called a “simile” in which something is compared to something else, usually highlighting a shared characteristic. For example, “his clothes shined like the sun” and “the voice boomed like thunder.” (See: [Simile](#))
- To “be like” or “sound like” or “look like” something or someone means to have qualities that are similar to the thing or person being compared to.
- People were created in God’s “likeness,” that is, in his “image.” It means that they have qualities or characteristics that are “like” or “similar to” qualities that God has, such as the ability to think, feel, and communicate.
- To have “the likeness of” something or someone means to have characteristics that look like that thing or person.

Translation Suggestions

- In some contexts, the expression “the likeness of” could be translated as “what looked like” or “what appeared to be.”
- The expression “in the likeness of his death” could be translated as “sharing in the experience of his death” or “as if experiencing his death with him.”
- The expression “in the likeness of sinful flesh” could be translated as “being like a sinful human being” or to “be a human being.” Make sure the translation of this expression does not sound like Jesus was sinful.
- “In his own likeness” could also be translated as to “be like him” or “having many of the same qualities that he has.”
- The expression “the likeness of an image of perishable man, of birds, of four-footed beasts and of creeping things” could be translated as “idols made to look like perishable humans, or animals, such as birds, beasts, and small, crawling things.”

(See also: [beast](#), [flesh](#), [image of God](#), [image](#), [perish](#))

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 1:5
- Mark 8:24
- Matthew 17:2
- Matthew 18:3
- Psalms 73:5
- Revelation 1:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1823, H8403, H8544, G15030, G15040, G25090, G25310, G25960, G36640, G36650, G36660, G36670, G36680, G36690, G36970, G48330, G51080, G56130, G56150, G56160, G56180, G56190

(Go back to: [Romans 1:13](#); [1:17](#); [1:21](#); [1:27](#); [1:28](#); [2:24](#); [3:4](#); [3:7](#); [3:8](#); [3:10](#); [4:17](#); [5:12](#); [5:14](#); [5:15](#); [5:16](#); [5:18](#); [5:19](#); [5:21](#); [6:4](#); [6:5](#); [6:19](#); [7:4](#); [8:3](#); [8:26](#); [8:36](#); [9:13](#); [9:25](#); [9:27](#); [9:29](#); [9:32](#); [9:33](#); [10:15](#); [11:8](#); [11:26](#); [11:30](#); [12:3](#); [13:9](#); [13:13](#); [15:3](#); [15:7](#); [15:9](#); [15:15](#); [15:21](#))

lord, Lord, master, sir

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lord” generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When “Lord” is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULT and UST, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate “Lord” as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as “master.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated with a respectful form of address such as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as “Lord” (capitalized) in English.

(See also: [God](#), [Jesus](#), [ruler](#), Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Genesis 39:2
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Psalms 86:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:4
- Lamentations 2:2

- Ezekiel 18:29
- Daniel 9:9
- Daniel 9:17-19
- Malachi 3:1
- Matthew 7:21-23
- Luke 1:30-33
- Luke 16:13
- Romans 6:23
- Ephesians 6:9
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Colossians 3:23
- Hebrews 12:14
- James 2:1
- 1 Peter 1:3
- Jude 1:5
- Revelation 15:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:5** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, "In God's word, he commands his people, 'Do not test the **Lord** your God.'"
- **25:7** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.'"
- **26:3** This is the year of the **Lord's** favor.
- **27:2** The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind."
- **31:5** Then Peter said to Jesus, "**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water"
- **43:9** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!"
- **47:3** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0113, H0136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G02030, G06340, G09620, G12030, G29620

(Go back to: [Romans 1:4](#); [1:7](#); [4:8](#); [4:24](#); [5:1](#); [5:11](#); [5:21](#); [6:23](#); [7:25](#); [8:39](#); [9:28](#); [10:9](#); [10:12](#); [10:13](#); [10:16](#); [11:3](#); [11:34](#); [12:11](#); [12:19](#); [13:14](#); [14:4](#); [14:6](#); [14:8](#); [14:11](#); [14:14](#); [15:6](#); [15:11](#); [15:30](#); [16:2](#); [16:8](#); [16:11](#); [16:12](#); [16:13](#); [16:18](#); [16:20](#); [16:22](#))

love, beloved

Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for “love” some languages may express using different words:

The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it doesn’t benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.

- Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
- When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
- In the ULT, the word “love” refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.

Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.

- This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
- The term can also be used in such contexts as, “They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet.” This means that they “like very much” or “greatly desire” to do that.

The word “love” can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word “love” in the ULT refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, “devoted, faithful caring” or “care for unselfishly” or “love from God.” Make sure that the word used to translate God’s love can include giving up one’s own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word “love” describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means “like very much” or “care for” or “have strong affection for.”
- In contexts where the word “love” is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by “strongly prefer” or “like very much” or “greatly desire.”
- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express “love” as an action. So for example, they might translate “love is patient, love is kind” as, “when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [death](#), [sacrifice](#), [save](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:7
- 1 John 3:2
- 1 Thessalonians 4:10
- Galatians 5:23
- Genesis 29:18
- Isaiah 56:6
- Jeremiah 2:2

- John 3:16
- Matthew 10:37
- Nehemiah 9:32-34
- Philippians 1:9
- Song of Songs 1:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:2** The law expert replied that God's law says, "**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself."
- **33:8** "The thorny ground is a person who hears God's word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God."
- **36:5** As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, "This is my Son whom I **love**."
- **39:10** "Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me."
- **47:1** She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- **48:1** When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- **49:3** He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- **49:4** He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- **49:7** Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- **49:9** But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:13** God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0157, H0158, H0159, H0160, H2245, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H5691, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G00250, G00260, G53600, G53610, G53620, G53630, G53650, G53670, G53680, G53690, G53770, G53810, G53820, G53830, G53880

(Go back to: [Romans 5:5](#); [5:8](#); [8:28](#); [8:35](#); [8:37](#); [8:39](#); [9:13](#); [9:25](#); [12:9](#); [12:10](#); [13:8](#); [13:9](#); [13:10](#); [14:15](#); [15:30](#))

lowly, lowliness

Definition:

The terms “lowly” and “lowliness” refer to being poor or having low status. Being lowly can also have the meaning of being humble.

- Jesus humbled himself to the lowly position of becoming a human being and serving others.
- His birth was lowly because he was born in a place where animals were kept, not in a palace.
- Having a lowly attitude is the opposite of being proud.
- Ways to translate “lowly” could include “humble” or “of low status” or “unimportant.”
- The word “lowliness” could also be translated as “humility” or “little importance.”

(See also: [humble](#), [proud](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 20:19
- Ezekiel 17:14
- Luke 1:48-49
- Romans 12:16

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6041, H6819, H8217, G50110, G50120, G50140

(Go back to: [Romans 12:16](#))

lust, lustful, passions, desires

Definition:

Lust is a very strong desire, usually in the context of wanting something sinful or immoral. To lust is to have lust.

- In the Bible, “lust” usually referred to sexual desire for someone other than one’s own spouse.
- Sometimes this term was used in a figurative sense to refer to worshiping idols.
- Depending on the context, “lust” could be translated as “wrong desire” or “strong desire” or “wrongful sexual desire” or “strong immoral desire” or to “strongly desire to sin.”
- The phrase to “lust after” could be translated as to “wrongly desire” or to “think immorally about” or to “immorally desire.”

(See also: [adultery](#), [false god](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:16
- 2 Timothy 2:22
- Galatians 5:16
- Galatians 5:19-21
- Genesis 39:7-9
- Matthew 5:28

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0183, H0185, H0310, H1730, H2181, H2183, H2530, H5178, H5375, H5689, H5691, H5869, H7843, G07660, G19370, G19390, G22370, G37150, G38060

(**Go back to:** [Romans 1:24](#); [1:26](#); [1:27](#); [6:12](#); [7:5](#); [13:9](#); [13:14](#))

Macedonia

Facts:

In New Testament times, Macedonia was a Roman province located just north of ancient Greece.

- Some important Macedonian cities mentioned in the Bible were Berea, Philippi and Thessalonica.
- Through a vision, God told Paul to preach the gospel to the people in Macedonia.
- Paul and his coworkers went to Macedonia and taught the people there about Jesus and helped the new believers to grow in their faith.
- In the Bible there are letters that Paul wrote to the believers in the Macedonian cities of Philippi and Thessalonica.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [believe](#), Berea, [faith](#), [good news](#), Greece, Philippi, Thessalonica)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 1:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 4:10
- 1 Timothy 1:3-4
- Acts 16:10
- Acts 20:1-3
- Philippians 4:14-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: G31090, G31100

(**Go back to:** [Romans 15:26](#))

manager, steward, stewardship

Definition:

The term “manager” or “steward” in the Bible refers to a servant who was entrusted with taking care of his master’s property and business dealings.

- A steward was given a lot of responsibility, which included supervising the work of other servants.
- The term “manager” is a more modern term for a steward. Both terms refer to someone who manages practical affairs for someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “supervisor” or “household organizer” or “servant who manages” or “person who organizes.”

(See also: [servant](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 3:4-5
- Genesis 39:4
- Genesis 43:16
- Isaiah 55:10-11
- Luke 8:3
- Luke 16:2
- Matthew 20:8-10
- Titus 1:7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0376, H4453, H5057, H6485, G20120, G36210, G36230

(Go back to: [Romans 12:8](#); [16:23](#))

member, body parts

Definition:

The term “member” refers to one part of a complex body or group.

- The New Testament describes Christians as “members” of the body of Christ. Believers in Christ belong to a group that is made up of many members.
- Jesus Christ is the “head” of the body and individual believers function as the members of the body. The Holy Spirit gives each member of the body a special role to help the entire body to function well.
- Individuals who participate in groups such as the Jewish Council and the Pharisees are also called “members” of these groups.

(See also: [body](#), Pharisee, council)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 6:15
- 1 Corinthians 12:14-17
- Numbers 16:2
- Romans 12:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1121, H3338, H5315, H8212, G10100, G31960, G36090

(Go back to: [Romans 6:13](#); [6:19](#); [7:5](#); [7:23](#); [12:4](#); [12:5](#))

mercy, merciful

Definition:

The terms “mercy” and “merciful” refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term “mercy” can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as “merciful” when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- Being merciful also means to forgive someone who has done something wrong against us.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “mercy” could be translated as “kindness” or “compassion” or “pity.”
- The term “merciful” could be translated as “showing pity” or “being kind to” or “forgiving.”
- To “show mercy to” or “have mercy on” could be translated as “treat kindly” or “be compassionate toward.”

(See also: [compassion](#), [forgive](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:3-5
- 1 Timothy 1:13
- Daniel 9:17
- Exodus 34:6
- Genesis 19:16
- Hebrews 10:28-29
- James 2:13
- Luke 6:35-36
- Matthew 9:27
- Philippians 2:25-27
- Psalms 41:4-6
- Romans 12:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshipping idols and to start showing justice and **mercy** to others.
- **19:17** He (Jeremiah) sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had **mercy** on him and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.
- **20:12** The Persian Empire was strong but **merciful** to the people it conquered.
- **27:11** Then Jesus asked the law expert, “What do you think? Which one of the three men was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?” He replied, “The one who was **merciful** to him.”
- **32:11** But Jesus said to him, “No, I want you to go home and tell your friends and family about everything that God has done for you and how he has had **mercy** on you.”
- **34:9** “But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, ‘God, please be **merciful** to me because I am a sinner.’”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2551, H2603, H2604, H2616, H2617, H2623, H3722, H3727, H4627, H4819, H5503, H5504, H5505, H5506, H6014, H7349, H7355, H7356, H7359, G16530, G16550, G16560, G24330, G24360, G36280, G36290, G37410, G46980

(Go back to: [Romans 9:15](#); [9:16](#); [9:18](#); [9:23](#); [Notes](#); [11:30](#); [11:31](#); [11:32](#); [12:1](#); [12:8](#); [15:9](#))

mind, mindful, remind, reminder, likeminded

Definition:

The term “mind” refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

- The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
- To “have the mind of Christ” means to be thinking and acting as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
- To “change his mind” means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “mind” could also be translated as “thoughts” or “reasoning” or “thinking” or “understanding.”
- The expression “keep in mind” could be translated as “remember” or “pay attention to this” or “be sure to know this.”
- The expression “heart, soul, and mind” could also be translated as “what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about.”
- The expression “call to mind” could be translated as “remember” or “think about.”
- The expression “changed his mind and went” could also be translated as “decided differently and went” or “decided to go after all” or “changed his opinion and went.”
- The expression “double-minded” could also be translated as “doubting” or “unable to decide” or “with conflicting thoughts.”

(See also: [believe](#), [heart](#), [soul](#))

Bible References:

- Luke 10:27
- Mark 6:51-52
- Matthew 21:29
- Matthew 22:37
- James 4:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3629, H3820, H3824, H5162, H7725, G12710, G13740, G33280, G35250, G35400, G35630, G49930, G55900

(Go back to: [Romans 1:28](#); [7:23](#); [7:25](#); [8:5](#); [8:6](#); [8:7](#); [8:27](#); [11:20](#); [11:34](#); [12:2](#); [12:3](#); [12:16](#); [14:5](#); [15:5](#))

Moses

Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years. He was the leader of the Israelite people when they came out of Egypt, as described in the book of Exodus.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Miriam, Promised Land, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:21
- Acts 7:30
- Exodus 2:10
- Exodus 9:1
- Matthew 17:4
- Romans 5:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:12** One day while **Moses** was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **12:5** **Moses** told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you."
- **12:7** God told **Moses** to raise his hand over the sea and divide the waters.
- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **13:7** Then God wrote these Ten Commandments on two stone tablets and gave them to **Moses**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4872, H4873, G34750

(Go back to: [Romans 5:14](#); [9:15](#); [10:5](#); [10:19](#))

multiply, multiplied, multiplication

Definition:

The term “multiply” means to greatly increase in number. It can also mean to cause something to increase in amount, such as causing pain to multiply.

- God told animals and human beings to “multiply” and fill the earth. This was a command to reproduce many more of their own kind.
- Jesus made the bread and fish multiply in order to feed the 5,000 people. The amount of food kept increasing so that there was more than enough food to feed everyone.
- Depending on the context, this term could also be translated as “increase” or “cause to increase” or “greatly increase in number” or “become greater in number” or “become more numerous.”
- The phrase “greatly multiply your pain” could also be translated as “cause your pain to become more severe” or “cause you to experience much more pain.”
- To “multiply horses” means to “greedily keep acquiring more horses” or to “get large numbers of horses.”

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 8:1
- Genesis 9:7
- Genesis 22:17
- Hosea 4:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3254, H3527, H6280, H7231, H7233, H7235, H7680, G40520, G41290

(Go back to: [Romans 3:7](#); [5:15](#); [5:20](#); [15:13](#))

mystery, hidden truth

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “mystery” refers to something unknown or difficult to understand that God is now explaining.

- The New Testament states that the gospel of Christ was a mystery that was not known in past ages.
- One of the specific points described as a mystery is that Jews and Gentiles would be equal in Christ.
- This term could also be translated as “secret” or “hidden things” or “something unknown.”

(See also: [Christ](#), [Gentile](#), [good news](#), [Jew](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- Colossians 4:2-4
- Ephesians 6:19-20
- Luke 8:9-10
- Mark 4:10-12
- Matthew 13:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1219, H7328, G34660

(Go back to: [Romans 11:25](#); [16:25](#))

name

Definition:

The term “name” refers to the word by which a specific person or thing is called. In the Bible, however, the term “name” is used in several different ways to refer to several different concepts.

- In some contexts, “name” could refer to a person’s reputation, as in “let us make a name for ourselves.”
- The term “name” could also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking “in the name of God” meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The “name” of someone could refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: [metonymy](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
- Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
- The expression “make a name for ourselves” could be translated “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
- The expression “call his name” could be translated as “name him” or “give him the name.”
- The expression “those who love your name” could be translated as “those who love you.”
- The expression “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See also: [call](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:12
- 2 Timothy 2:19
- Acts 4:7
- Acts 4:12
- Acts 9:27
- Genesis 12:2
- Genesis 35:10
- Matthew 18:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G25640, G36860, G36870, G51220

(Go back to: [Romans 1:5](#); [2:17](#); [2:24](#); [9:17](#); [10:13](#); [15:9](#); [15:20](#))

nation

Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- A “nation” usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a “nation” could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- The word translated as “nation” was also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonJews.”

(See also: Assyria, Babylon, Canaan, [Gentile](#), [Greek](#), [people group](#), Philistines, [Rome](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:6
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- Acts 2:5
- Acts 13:19
- Acts 17:26
- Acts 26:4
- Daniel 3:4
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 27:29
- Genesis 35:11
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 7:5
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43
- Romans 4:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0523, H0524, H0776, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G02460, G10740, G10850, G14840

(Go back to: [Romans 4:17](#); [4:18](#); [10:19](#); [16:26](#))

neighbor, neighborhood, neighboring

Definition:

The term “neighbor” usually refers to a person who lives nearby. It can also refer more generally to someone who lives in the same community or people group.

- A “neighbor” is someone who would be protected and treated kindly because he is part of the same community.
- In the New Testament parable of the Good Samaritan, Jesus used the term “neighbor” figuratively, expanding its meaning to include all human beings, even someone who is considered an enemy.
- If possible, it is best to translate this term literally with a word or phrase that means “person who lives nearby.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [parable](#), [people group](#), [Samaria](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:26-28
- Ephesians 4:25-27
- Galatians 5:14
- James 2:8
- John 9:8-9
- Luke 1:58
- Matthew 5:43
- Matthew 19:19
- Matthew 22:39

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5997, H7138, H7453, H7468, H7934, G10690, G20870, G40400, G41390

(Go back to: [Romans 13:9](#); [13:10](#); [15:2](#))

obey, keep

Definition:

The term “obey” means to do what has been commanded by a person or law. The term “obedient” describes someone who obeys. Sometimes a command prohibits doing something, as in “do not steal.” In this case, to “obey” means not to steal. In the Bible, often the term “keep” means “to obey.”

- Usually the term “obey” is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority. For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
- Children obey their parents, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, they obey by not doing that.
- Ways to translate obey could include a word or phrase that means “do what is commanded” or “follow orders” or “do what God says to do.”
- The term “obedient” could be translated as “doing what was commanded” or “following orders” or “doing what God commands.”

(See also: citizen, [command](#), [disobey](#), kingdom, [law](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 5:32
- Acts 6:7
- Genesis 28:6-7
- James 1:25
- James 2:10
- Luke 6:47
- Matthew 7:26
- Matthew 19:20-22
- Matthew 28:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:4** Noah **obeyed** God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **5:6** Again Abraham **obeyed** God and prepared to sacrifice his son.
- **5:10** “Because you (Abraham) have *obeyed* me, all the families of the world will be blessed through your family”
- **5:10** But the Egyptians did not believe God or **obey** his commands.
- **13:7** If the people **obeyed** these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1697, H2388, H3349, H4928, H6213, H7181, H8085, H8086, H8104, G01910, G39800, G39820, G50830, G50840, G52180, G52190, G52550, G52920, G52930, G54420

(Go back to: [Romans 1:5](#); [2:8](#); [2:26](#); [5:19](#); [6:12](#); [6:16](#); [6:17](#); [10:16](#); [15:18](#); [16:19](#); [16:26](#))

olive

Definition:

The olive is the small, oval fruit from an olive tree, which is mostly grown in the regions surrounding the Mediterranean Sea.

- Olive trees are a type of large evergreen shrub with tiny white flowers. They grow best in hot weather and can survive well with little water.
- The olive tree's fruit starts out green and changes to black as they ripen. Olives were useful for food and for the oil that could be extracted from them.
- Olive oil was used for cooking in lamps and for religious ceremonies.
- In the Bible, olive trees and branches are sometimes used figuratively to refer to people.

(See also: lamp, the sea, Mount of Olives)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:28-29
- Deuteronomy 6:10-12
- Exodus 23:10-11
- Genesis 8:11
- James 3:12
- Luke 16:6
- Psalms 52:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2132, H3323, H8081, G00650, G16360, G16370, G25650

(Go back to: [Romans 11:17](#); [11:24](#))

ordain, ordained, ordination, planned long ago, set up, prepared

Definition:

To ordain means to formally appoint a person for a special task or role. It also means to formally make a rule or decree.

- The term “ordain” often refers to formally appointing somebody as a priest, minister, or rabbi.
- For example, God ordained Aaron and his descendants to be priests.
- It can also mean to institute or establish something, such as a religious feast or covenant.
- Depending on the context, to “ordain” could be translated as to “assign” or to “appoint” or to “command” or to “make a rule” or to “institute.”

(See also: [command](#), [covenant](#), decree, [law](#), [law](#), priest)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 12:31-32
- 2 Samuel 17:13-14
- Exodus 28:40-41
- Numbers 3:3
- Psalms 111:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3245, H4390, H6186, H6213, H6680, H7760, H8239, G12990, G25250, G42700, G42820

(Go back to: [Romans 9:22](#))

ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs

Definition:

An ordinance is a public regulation or law that gives rules or instructions for people to follow. This term is related to the term “ordain.”

- Sometimes an ordinance is a custom that has become well established through years of practice.
- In the Bible, an ordinance was something that God commanded the Israelites to do. Sometimes he commanded them to do it forever.
- The term “ordinance” could be translated as “public decree” or “regulation” or “law,” depending on the context.

(See also: [command](#), decree, [law](#), [ordain](#), statute)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 4:13-14
- Exodus 27:20-21
- Leviticus 8:31-33
- Malachi 3:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2706, H4687, H4931, H4941

(Go back to: [Romans 1:32](#); [2:26](#); [8:4](#))

partial, partiality

Definition:

The terms “be partial” and “show partiality” refer to making a choice to treat certain people as more important than other people.

- This is similar to showing favoritism, which means to treat some people better than others.
- Usually partiality or favoritism is shown to people because they are more rich or more popular than other people.
- The Bible instructs his people to not show partiality or favoritism to people who are rich or of high status.
- In his letter to the Romans, Paul teaches that God judges people fairly and with no partiality.
- The book of James teaches that it is wrong to give someone a better seat or better treatment because they are rich.

(See also: favor)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 1:17
- Malachi 2:9
- Mark 12:13-15
- Matthew 22:16
- Romans 2:10-12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5234, H6440, G09910, G15190, G29830, G42990, G43830

(Go back to: [Romans 2:11](#))

patient, patience, impatient

Definition:

The terms “patient” and “patience” refer to persevering through difficult circumstances. Often patience involves waiting.

- When people are patient with someone, it means they are loving that person and forgiving whatever faults that person has.
- The Bible teaches God’s people to be patient when facing difficulties and to be patient with each other.
- Because of his mercy, God is patient with people, even though they are sinners who deserve to be punished.

(See also: [endure](#), [forgive](#), [persevere](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 3:20
- 2 Peter 3:8-9
- Hebrews 6:11-12
- Matthew 18:28-29
- Psalms 37:7
- Revelation 2:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0750, H0753, H2342, H3811, H6960, H7114, G04200, G04630, G19330, G31140, G31150, G31160, G52780, G52810

(Go back to: [Romans 2:4](#); [8:25](#); [9:22](#))

patriarch

Definition:

The term “patriarch” in the Bible refers to someone who was a founding ancestor of the Jewish people, particularly Abraham, Isaac, or Jacob.

- It also can refer to the twelve sons of Jacob who became the twelve patriarchs of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The term “patriarch” has a similar meaning to “forefather,” but more specifically refers to the most well-known male ancestral leaders of a people group.

(See also: [ancestor](#), [father](#), [forefather](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 2:29-31
- Acts 7:6-8
- Acts 7:9
- Ezra 3:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0001, H7218, G39660

(Go back to: [Romans 9:5](#); [11:28](#); [15:8](#))

Paul, Saul

Facts:

Paul was a leader of the early church who was sent by Jesus to take the good news to many other people groups.

- Paul was a Jew who was born in the Roman city of Tarsus, and was therefore also a Roman citizen.
- Paul was originally called by his Jewish name, Saul.
- Saul became a Jewish religious leader and arrested Jews who became Christians because he thought they were dishonoring God by believing in Jesus.
- Jesus revealed himself to Saul in a blinding light and told him to stop hurting Christians.
- Saul believed in Jesus and began teaching his fellow Jews about him.
- Later, God sent Saul to teach non-Jewish people about Jesus and started churches in different cities and provinces of the Roman empire. At this time he started being called by the Roman name "Paul."
- Paul also wrote letters to encourage and teach Christians in the churches in these cities. Several of these letters are in the New Testament.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: christian, jewish leaders, [rome](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 1:3
- Acts 8:3
- Acts 9:26
- Acts 13:10
- Galatians 1:1
- Philemon 1:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **45:6** A young man named **Saul** agreed with the people who killed Stephen and guarded their robes while they threw stones at him.
- **46:1** **Saul** was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the believers.
- **46:2** While **Saul** was on his way to Damascus, a bright light from heaven shone all around him, and he fell to the ground. **Saul** heard someone say, "**Saul! Saul!** Why do you persecute me?"
- **46:5** So Ananias went to **Saul**, placed his hands on him, and said, "Jesus who appeared to you on your way here, sent me to you so that you can regain your sight and be filled with the Holy Spirit." **Saul** immediately was able to see again, and Ananias baptized him.
- **46:6** Right away, **Saul** began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"
- **46:9** Barnabas and **Saul** went there (Antioch) to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the church.
- **47:1** As **Saul** traveled throughout the Roman Empire, he began to use his Roman name, "**Paul.**"
- **47:14** **Paul** and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, preaching and teaching people the good news about Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G39720, G45690

(Go back to: [Romans 1:1](#))

peace, peaceful, peacemakers

Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- In the Old Testament, the term “peace” often means a general sense of a person’s welfare, wellness, or wholeness.
- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:1-3
- Acts 7:26
- Colossians 1:18-20
- Colossians 3:15
- Galatians 5:23
- Luke 7:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 4:39
- Matthew 5:9
- Matthew 10:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:6** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- **15:12** Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- **16:3** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- **21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- **48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G02690, G15140, G15150, G15160, G15170, G15180, G22720

(Go back to: [Romans 1:7](#); [2:10](#); [3:17](#); [5:1](#); [8:6](#); [12:18](#); [14:17](#); [14:19](#); [15:13](#); [15:33](#); [16:20](#))

people of God

Definition:

The concept of the “people of God” in the Bible refers to people with whom God has established a covenant relationship.

- In the Old Testament, the phrase “people of God” refers to the nation of Israel. The nation of Israel was chosen by God and set apart from the other nations of the world in order to serve and obey him.
- In the New Testament, the phrase “people of God” refers to the “Church,” meaning everyone who believes in Jesus. This includes both Jews and Gentiles. In the New Testament, sometimes this group of people is called the “sons of God” or “children of God.”
- When God uses the phrase “my people,” he is referring to people who have a covenant relationship with him. God’s people are chosen by him, and he wants them to live in a way that is pleasing to him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people of God” could be translated as “God’s people” or “the people who worship God” or “people who serve God” or “people who belong to God.”
- When God says “my people” other ways to translate it could include “the people I have chosen” or “the people who worship me” or “the people who belong to me.”
- Similarly, “your people” could be translated as “the people who belong to you” or “the people you chose to belong to you.”
- Also “his people” could be translated as “the people who belong to him” or “the people God chose to belong to himself.”

(See also: [Israel](#), [people group](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:2
- Acts 7:34
- Acts 7:51-53
- Acts 10:36-38
- Daniel 9:24-25
- Isaiah 2:5-6
- Jeremiah 6:20-22
- Joel 3:16-17
- Micah 6:3-5
- Revelation 13:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0430, H5971, G23160, G29920

(Go back to: [Romans 9:25](#); [9:26](#); [11:1](#); [11:2](#); [15:10](#))

people, people group

Definition:

The terms “people” and “people group” refer to some group of people that shares a common language and culture. The term “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, the term “people” can refer to a “people group” or “family” or “relatives” or “army.”
- In plural form, the term “peoples” often refers to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations, the term “nations” is also used in this way.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “the people of” could be translated as “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of,” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [nation](#), [tribe](#), [world](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:51-53
- 1 Samuel 8:7
- Deuteronomy 28:9
- Genesis 49:16
- Ruth 1:16

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:2** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there.
- **21:2** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.

- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **48:11** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.
- **50:3** He (Jesus) said, "Go and make disciples of all **people groups!**" and, "The fields are ripe for harvest!"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0249, H0523, H0524, H0776, H1121, H1471, H3816, H5712, H5971, H5972, H6153, G10740, G10850, G12180, G14840, G25600, G29920, G37930

(Go back to: [Romans 9:25](#); [9:26](#); [10:21](#); [11:1](#); [11:2](#); [15:10](#); [15:11](#))

perfect, complete

Definition:

In the New Testament, the term “perfect” means to be mature in our Christian life. To perfect something means to work at it until it is excellent and without flaws. Old Testament sacrifices needed to be “perfect” or “complete,” that is, without blemish.

- Being perfect and mature means that a Christian is obedient, not sinless.
- The term “perfect” also has the meaning of being “complete” or “whole.”
- The New Testament book of James states that persevering through trials will produce completeness and maturity in the believer.
- When Christians study the Bible and obey it, they will become more spiritually perfect and mature because they will be more like Christ in their character.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “without flaw” or “without error” or “flawless” or “without fault” or “not having any faults.”

(See also: blemish)

Bible References:

- Hebrews 12:2
- James 3:2
- Matthew 5:46-48
- Psalms 19:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3632, H3634, H4359, H8003, H8503, H8537, H8549, H8552, G01990, G26750, G26760, G36470, G50460, G50470, G50480, G50500

(Go back to: [Romans 12:2](#))

perish

Definition:

The term “perish” means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or disaster. In the New Testament, it often has the spiritual meaning of being lost or separated from the people of God.

Spiritual Meaning of “Perish:”

- People who are “perishing” are those who have refused to trust in Jesus for their salvation.
- Those who “perish” will not live eternally with God in heaven. Instead, they will live eternally in hell under God’s punishment.
- Everyone will die physically, but only those who do not trust in Jesus for their salvation will perish eternally.
- When “perish” is used in a spiritual sense, make sure that your translation expresses this differently than dying physically.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include “be lost from God’s people,” “die eternally,” “be punished in hell,” or “be destroyed.”
- Try to use a term or expression that does not only mean “die physically” or “cease to exist.”

(See also: [death](#), [everlasting](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:23
- 2 Corinthians 2:16-17
- 2 Thessalonians 2:10
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Psalms 49:18-20
- Zechariah 9:5-7
- Zechariah 13:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0006, H0007, H0008, H1478, H1820, H1826, H5486, H5595, H6544, H8045, G05990, G06220, G06840, G08530, G13110, G27040, G48810, G53560

(Go back to: [Romans 1:23](#); [2:12](#); [14:15](#))

persecute

Definition:

The terms “persecute” and “persecution” refer to continually treating a person or a certain group of people in a harsh way that causes harm to them.

- Persecution can be against one person or many people and usually involves repeated, persistent attacks.
- The Israelites were persecuted by many different people groups Who attacked them, captured them, and stole things from them.
- People often persecute other people who have different religious beliefs or who are weaker.
- The Jewish religious leaders persecuted Jesus because they did not like what he was teaching.
- After Jesus went back to heaven, the Jewish religious leaders and the Roman government persecuted his followers.
- The term “persecute” could also be translated as “keep oppressing” or “treat harshly” or “continually mistreat.”
- Ways to translate “persecution” could include, “harsh mistreatment” or “oppression” or “persistent hurtful treatment”

(See also: Christian, [church](#), oppress, [Rome](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:52
- Acts 13:50
- Galatians 1:13-14
- John 5:16-18
- Mark 10:30
- Matthew 5:10
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 10:22
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Philippians 3:6

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:7** “The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with joy. But when he experiences hardship or **persecution**, he falls away.”
- **45:6** That day many people in Jerusalem started **persecuting** the followers of Jesus, so the believers fled to other places.
- **46:2** Saul heard someone say, “Saul! Saul! Why do you **persecute** me?” Saul asked, “Who are you, Master?” Jesus replied to him, “I am Jesus. You are **persecuting** me!”
- **46:4** But Ananias said, “Master, I have heard how this man has **persecuted** the believers.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1814, H7291, H7852, G13750, G13760, G13770, G15590, G23470

(Go back to: [Romans 8:35](#); [12:14](#))

persevere, perseverance

Definition:

The terms “persevere” and “perseverance” refer to continuing to do something even though it may be very difficult or take a long time.

- To persevere can also mean to keep acting in a Christ-like way even while going through difficult trials or circumstances.
- If a person has “perseverance” it means he is able to keep doing what he should do, even when it is painful or difficult.
- Continuing to believe what God teaches requires perseverance, especially when faced with false teachings.
- Be careful not to use a word like “stubborn” which usually has a negative meaning.

(See also: [patient](#), trial)

Bible References:

- Colossians 1:11
- Ephesians 6:18
- James 5:9-11
- Luke 8:14-15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G31150, G43430, G52810

(Go back to: [Romans 5:3](#); [5:4](#))

Pharaoh, king of Egypt

Facts:

In ancient times, the kings who ruled over the country of Egypt were called pharaohs.

- Altogether, over 300 pharaohs ruled Egypt for more than 2,000 years.
- These Egyptians kings were very powerful and wealthy.
- Several of these pharaohs are mentioned in the Bible.
- Often this title is used as a name rather than as a title. In these cases, it is capitalized and written as "Pharaoh."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [egypt](#), [king](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:9-10
- Acts 7:13
- Acts 7:21
- Genesis 12:15
- Genesis 40:7
- Genesis 41:25

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:6** One night, the **Pharaoh**, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **8:8 Pharaoh** was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of Egypt!
- **9:2** So the **Pharaoh** who was ruling over Egypt at that time made the Israelites slaves to the Egyptians.
- **9:13** "I will send you to **Pharaoh** so that you can bring the Israelites out of their slavery in Egypt."
- **10:2** Through these plagues, God showed **Pharaoh_ that he is more powerful than_Pharaoh** and all of Egypt's gods.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4428, H4714, H6547, G53280

(Go back to: [Romans 9:17](#))

plea, plead, please, beg, implore

Facts:

The terms “plead” and “pleading” refer to urgently asking someone to do something. A “plea” is an urgent request.

- Pleading often implies that the person feels in very great need or strongly desires help.
- People can plead or make an urgent appeal to God for mercy or to ask him to grant something, either for themselves or someone else.
- Other ways to translate this could include “beg” or “implore” or “urgently ask.”
- The term “plea” could also be translated as “urgent request” or “strong urging.”
- Make sure it is clear in the context that this term does not refer to begging for money.

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 8:3-5
- Judges 6:31
- Luke 4:39
- Proverbs 18:17

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1777, H2603, H3198, H4941, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6664, H6419, H7378, H7379, H7775, H8199, H8467, H8469, G11890, G17930, G20650, G38700

(Go back to: [Romans 11:2](#))

power, powerful, powerfully

Definition:

The term “power” refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. “Powers” refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The “power of God” refers to God’s ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “power” could also be translated as “ability” or “strength” or “energy” or “ability to do miracles” or “control.”
- Possible ways to translate the term “powers” could include “powerful beings” or “controlling spirits” or “those who control others.”

(See also: [strength](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [miracle](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 1:5
- Colossians 1:11-12
- Genesis 31:29
- Jeremiah 18:21
- Jude 1:25
- Judges 2:18
- Luke 1:17
- Luke 4:14
- Matthew 26:64
- Philippians 3:21
- Psalm 80:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:5** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the **power** of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God.”
- **26:1** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the **power** of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **32:15** Immediately Jesus realized that **power** had gone out from him.
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, “Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you **power** when the Holy Spirit comes on you.”
- **43:6** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the **power** of God, as you have seen and already know.”
- **44:8** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you healed by the **power** of Jesus the Messiah.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0410, H1369, H1370, H2220, H2393, H2428, H2429, H2632, H3027, H3028, H3581, H4475, H4910, H5794, H5797, H5808, H6184, H7786, H7980, H7981, H7983, H7989, H8280, H8592, H8633, G14110, G14150, G17540, G17560, G18490, G18500, G21590, G24780, G24790, G29040, G31680

(Go back to: [Romans 1:4](#); [1:16](#); [1:20](#); [8:38](#); [9:17](#); [9:22](#); [15:1](#); [15:13](#); [15:19](#))

praise, praised, praiseworthy

Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term to “praise” could also be translated as to “speak well of” or to “highly honor with words” or to “say good things about.”
- The noun “praise” could be translated as “spoken honor” or “speech that honors” or “speaking good things about.”

(See also: worship)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 1:3
- Acts 2:47
- Acts 13:48
- Daniel 3:28
- Ephesians 1:3
- Genesis 49:8
- James 3:9-10
- John 5:41-42
- Luke 1:46
- Luke 1:64-66
- Luke 19:37-38
- Matthew 11:25-27
- Matthew 15:29-31

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to **praise** God because he saved them from the Egyptian army.
- **17:8** When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and **praised** God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings.
- **22:7** Zechariah said, “**Praise** God, because he has remembered his people!”
- **43:13** They (disciples) enjoyed **praising** God together and they shared everything they had with each other.
- **47:8** They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of **praise** to God.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1319, H7121, H8416, G29800, G38530

(Go back to: [Romans 2:29](#); [13:3](#); [15:9](#); [15:11](#))

pray, prayer

Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are also used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: [false god](#), [forgive](#), [praise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 3:9
- Acts 8:24
- Acts 14:26
- Colossians 4:4
- John 17:9
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:5** Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **13:12** But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- **19:8** Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- **21:7** Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- **43:13** The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- **49:18** God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H0577, H1156, H2470, H3863, H3908, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7878, H7879, H7881, H8034, H8605, G01540, G11620, G11890, G17830, G20650, G21710, G21720, G38700, G43350, G43360

(Go back to: [Romans 1:10](#); [8:26](#); [10:1](#); [12:12](#); [15:30](#))

preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

Definition:

To “preach” means to speak to a group of people, teaching them about God and urging them to obey him. To “proclaim” means to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often preaching is done by one person to a large group of people. It is usually spoken, not written.
- “Preaching” and “teaching” are similar, but are not exactly the same.
- “Preaching” mainly refers to publicly proclaiming spiritual or moral truth, and urging the audience to respond. “Teaching” is a term that emphasizes instruction, that is, giving people information or teaching them how to do something.
- The term “preach” is usually used with the word “gospel.”
- What a person has preached to others can also be referred to in general as his “teachings.”
- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See also: [declare](#), [good news](#), [Jesus](#), [kingdom of God](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:1-2
- Acts 8:4-5
- Acts 10:42-43
- Acts 14:21-22
- Acts 20:25
- Luke 4:42
- Matthew 3:1-3
- Matthew 4:17
- Matthew 12:41
- Matthew 24:14
- Acts 9:20-22
- Acts 13:38-39
- Jonah 3:1-3
- Luke 4:18-19
- Mark 1:14-15
- Matthew 10:26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:2** He (John) **preached** to them, saying, “Repent, for the Kingdom of God is near!”
- **30:1** Jesus sent his apostles to **preach** and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:1** About three years after Jesus first began **preaching** and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- **45:6** But in spite of this, they **preached** about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **45:7** He (Philip) went to Samaria where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.
- **46:6** Right away, Saul began **preaching** to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the Son of God!”
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to **preach** the good news of Jesus in many other places.

- **47:14** Paul and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, **preaching** and teaching people the good news about Jesus.
- **50:2** When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will **preach** the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."

Word Data:

- Strong's:
 - preach: H1319, H7121, H7150, G1229, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2783, G2784, G2980, G4283
 - proclaim: H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H5046, H5608, H6963, H7121, H7440, H8085, G518, G591, G1229, G1861, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2784, G2980, G3142, G4135

(Go back to: [Romans 1:8](#); [2:21](#); [10:8](#); [10:14](#); [10:15](#); [16:25](#))

predestine, predestined

Definition:

The terms “predestine” and “predestined” refer to deciding or planning beforehand that something will happen.

- This term especially refers to God predestining people to receive eternal life.
- Sometimes the word “foreordain” is used, which also means to decide beforehand.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “predestine” could also be translated as “decide before” or “decide ahead of time.”
- The term “predestined” could be translated as “decided long ago” or “planned ahead of time” or “decided beforehand.”
- A phrase such as “predestined us” could be translated as “decided long ago that we” or “already decided ahead of time that we.”
- Note that the translation of this term should be different from the translation of the term “foreknew.”

(See also: [foreknew](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 2:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: G43090

(Go back to: [Romans 8 General Notes](#); [8:29](#); [8:30](#); [Notes](#))

Priscilla

Facts:

Priscilla and her husband Aquila were Jewish Christians who worked with the apostle Paul in his missionary work.

- Priscilla and Aquila had left Rome because the emperor had forced the Christians to leave there.
- Paul met Aquila and Priscilla in Corinth. They were tentmakers and Paul joined them in this work.
- When Paul left Corinth to go to Syria, Priscilla and Aquila went with him.
- From Syria, the three of them went to Ephesus. When Paul left Ephesus, Priscilla and Aquila stayed behind and continued the work of preaching the gospel there.
- They especially taught a man named Apollos in Ephesus who believed in Jesus and was a gifted speaker and teacher.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [believe](#), Christian, Corinth, Ephesus, [Paul](#), [Rome](#), Syria)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 16:19-20
- 2 Timothy 4:19-22
- Acts 18:1
- Acts 18:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: G42520, G42510

([Go back to: Romans 16:3](#))

profit, profitable, unprofitable

Definition:

In general, the terms “profit” and “profitable” refer to gaining something good through doing certain actions or behaviors.

Something is “profitable” to someone if it brings them good things or if it helps them bring about good things for other people.

- More specifically, the term “profit” often refers to money that is gained from doing business. A business is “profitable” if it gains more money than it spends.
- Actions are profitable if they bring about good things for people.
- 2 Timothy 3:16 says that all Scripture is “profitable” for correcting and training people in righteousness. This means that the Bible’s teachings are helpful and useful for teaching people to live according to God’s will.

The term “unprofitable” means to not be useful.

- It literally means to not profit anything or to not help someone gain anything.
- Something that is unprofitable is not worth doing because it does not give any benefit.
- This could be translated as “useless” or “worthless” or “not useful” or “unworthy” or “not beneficial” or “giving no benefit.”

(See also: [worthy](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “profit” could also be translated as “benefit” or “help” or “gain.”
- The term “profitable” could be translated as “useful” or “beneficial” or “helpful.”
- To “profit from” something could be translated as “benefit from” or “gain money from” or “receive help from.”
- In the context of a business, “profit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “money gained” or “surplus of money” or “extra money.”

Bible References:

- Job 15:3
- Proverbs 10:16
- Jeremiah 2:8
- Ezekiel 18:12-13
- John 6:63
- Mark 8:36
- Matthew 16:26
- 2 Peter 2:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1215, H3148, H3276, H3504, H4195, H4768, H5532, H7737, H7939, G01470, G02550, G05120, G08880, G08890, G08900, G12810, G25850, G27700, G27710, G34080, G42970, G42980, G48510, G55390, G56220, G56230, G56240

(Go back to: [Romans 2:25; 3:1](#))

promise, promised

Definition:

When used as a verb, the term “promise” refers to the action of a person saying that he will do something in such way that he obligates himself to fulfill what he has said. When used as a noun, the term “promise” refers to the thing that a person obligates himself to do.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “promise” could be translated as “commitment” or “assurance” or “guarantee.”
- To “promise to do something” could be translated as “assure someone that you will do something” or “commit to doing something.”

(See also: [covenant](#), oath, vow)

Bible References:

- Galatians 3:15-16
- Genesis 25:31-34
- Hebrews 11:9
- James 1:12
- Numbers 30:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:15** God said, “I **promise** I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children.”
- **3:16** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his **promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he **promised** and so would his people.
- **4:8** God spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God’s **promise**.
- **5:4** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of **promise**.”
- **8:15** The covenant **promises** that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob’s twelve sons and their families.
- **17:14** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his **promises**.
- **50:1** Jesus **promised** he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his **promise**.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H0562, H1696, H8569, G18430, G18600, G18610, G18620, G36700, G42790

(Go back to: [Romans 1:2](#); [4:13](#); [4:14](#); [4:16](#); [4:20](#); [4:21](#); [9:4](#); [9:8](#); [9:9](#); [15:8](#))

prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: [Baal](#), divination, [false god](#), false prophet, [fulfill](#), [law](#), vision)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14-16
- Acts 3:25
- John 1:43-45
- Malachi 4:4-6
- Matthew 1:23
- Matthew 2:18
- Matthew 5:17
- Psalm 51:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:1** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God’s messages.

- **19:6** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- **21:9** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **43:5** "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- **43:7** "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G24950, G43940, G43950, G43960, G43970, G43980, G55780

(Go back to: [Romans 1:2](#); [3:21](#); [Notes](#); [11:3](#); [12:6](#); [16:26](#))

propitiation

Definition:

The term “propitiation” refers to a sacrifice that is made to satisfy or fulfill the justice of God and to appease his wrath.

- The offering of the sacrificial blood of Jesus Christ is the propitiation to God for mankind’s sins.
- Jesus’ death on the cross appeased God’s wrath against sin. This provided a way for God to look on people with favor and offer them eternal life.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “appeasement” or “causing God to forgive sins and grant favor to people.”
- The word “atonement” is close in meaning to “propitiation.” It is important to compare how these two terms are used.

(See also: atonement, [everlasting](#), [forgive](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:2
- 1 John 4:10
- Romans 3:25-26

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G24340, G24350

(Go back to: [Romans 3:25](#))

prosper, prosperity, prosperous

Definition:

The term “prosper” generally refers to living well, whether it be physically, morally, emotionally, etc. This term often expresses the idea of being wealthy or successful in life.

- The term “prosperous” often refers to success in owning money and property or in producing everything needed for people to live well.
- In the Bible, the term “prosperous” also includes good health and being blessed with children.
- A “prosperous” city or country is one that has many people, good production of food, and businesses that bring in plenty of money.
- The Bible teaches that a person will prosper spiritually when he obeys God’s teachings. He will also experience the blessings of joy and peace. God does not always give people a lot of material wealth, but he will always prosper them spiritually as they follow his ways.
- Depending on the context, the term “prosper” could also be translated as “succeed spiritually” or “be blessed by God” or “experience good things” or “live well.”
- The term “prosperous” could also be translated as “successful” or “wealthy” or “spiritually fruitful.”
- “Prosperity” could also be translated as “well-being” or “wealth” or “success” or “abundant blessings.”

(See also: [bless](#), [good](#), [fruit](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:22-23
- Deuteronomy 23:6
- Job 36:11
- Leviticus 25:26-28
- Psalms 1:3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1129, H1767, H1878, H1879, H2428, H2896, H2898, H3027, H3190, H3444, H3498, H3787, H4195, H5381, H6500, H6509, H6555, H6743, H6744, H7230, H7487, H7919, H7951, H7961, H7963, H7965

(Go back to: [Romans 1:10](#))

proud, pride, prideful

Definition:

The terms “proud” and “prideful” refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The terms “proud” and “pride” can also be used in a positive sense, such as being “proud of” what someone else has achieved and being “proud of” your children. The expression “take pride in your work” means to find joy in doing your work well.
- Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of “pride.”
- The term “prideful” is always negative, with the meaning of being “arrogant” or “conceited” or “self-important.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The noun “pride” could be translated as “arrogance” or “conceit” or “self-importance.”
- In other contexts, “pride” could be translated as “joy” or “satisfaction” or “pleasure.”
- To be “proud of” could also be translated as “happy with” or “satisfied with” or “joyful about (the accomplishments of).”
- The phrase “take pride in your work” could be translated as “find satisfaction in doing your work well.”
- The expression “take pride in Yahweh” could also be translated as “be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done” or “be happy about how amazing Yahweh is.”

(See also: arrogant, humble, [joy](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 3:6-7
- 2 Corinthians 1:12
- Galatians 6:3-5
- Isaiah 13:19
- Luke 1:51

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:2** They were very **proud**, and they did not care about what God said.
- **34:10** Then Jesus said, “I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous. But he did not like the prayer of the religious leader. God will humble everyone who is **proud**, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1341, H1343, H1344, H1346, H1347, H1348, H1349, H1361, H1362, H1363, H1364, H1396, H1466, H1467, H1984, H2086, H2087, H3093, H3238, H3513, H4062, H1431, H4791, H5965, H7295, H7312, H7342, H7311, H7830, H8597, G13910, G13920, G27440, G27450, G27460, G31730, G51870, G52290, G52430, G52440, G53080, G53090, G54260

(Go back to: [Romans 1:30](#); [12:16](#))

provoke, provoked, provocation

Facts:

The term “provoke” means to cause someone to experience a negative reaction or feeling.

- To provoke someone to anger means to do something that causes that person to be angry. This could also be translated as to “cause to become angry” or to “anger.”
- When used in a phrase such as, “do not provoke him,” this could be translated as “do not anger him” or “do not cause him to be angry” or “do not make him angry with you.”

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 20:27-29

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3707, H3708, H4784, H4843, H5006, H7065, H7069, H7107, H7264, G20420, G38630, G39470, G39490, G42920

(Go back to: [Romans 10:19](#); [11:11](#); [11:14](#))

raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up,

Definition:

raise, raise up

In general, the word “raise” means to “lift up” or “make higher.”

- The phrase “raise up” sometimes means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “restore” or “rebuild.”
- “Raise” has a specialized meaning in the phrase “raise from the dead.” It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “exalt” someone or something.

rise, arise

To “rise” or “arise” means to “go up” or “get up.” The terms “risen,” “rose,” and “arose” express past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as “he arose and went” or “he rose up and went.”
- If something “arises” it means it “happens” or “begins to happen.”
- Jesus predicted that he would “rise from the dead.” Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, “He has risen!”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “raise” or “raise up” could be translated as “lift up” or “make higher.”
- To “raise up” could also be translated as to “cause to appear” or to “appoint” or to “bring into existence.”
- To “raise up the strength of your enemies” could be translated as “cause your enemies to be very strong.”
- The phrase “raise someone from the dead” could be translated as “cause someone to return from death to life” or “cause someone to come back to life.”
- Depending on the context, “raise up” could also be translated as “provide” or to “appoint” or to “cause to have” or “build up” or “rebuild” or “repair.”
- The phrase “arose and went” could be translated as “got up and went” or “went.”
- Depending on the context, the term “arose” could also be translated as “began” or “started up” or “got up” or “stood up.”

(See also: [resurrection](#), [appoint](#), exalt)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:41
- 2 Samuel 7:12
- Acts 10:40
- Colossians 3:1
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 6:1
- Judges 2:18
- Luke 7:22
- Matthew 20:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.
- **41:5** "Jesus is not here. He has **risen** from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- **43:7** "Although Jesus died, God **raised** him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God **raised** Jesus to life again."
- **44:5** "You killed the author of life, but God **raised** him from the dead."
- **44:8** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God **raised** him to life again!"
- **48:4** This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- **49:2** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God **raised** him to life again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2210, H2224, H5549, H5782, H5927, H5975, H6965, H6966, H6974, H7613, G03050, G03860, G03930, G04500, G10960, G13260, G14530, G15250, G18170, G18250, G18920, G19990, G48910

(Go back to: [Romans 4:24](#); [4:25](#); [6:4](#); [6:9](#); [7:4](#); [8:11](#); [8:34](#); [9:17](#); [10:9](#); [13:11](#); [15:12](#))

Rebekah

Facts:

Rebekah was a grand-daughter of Abraham's brother Nahor.

- God chose Rebekah to be the wife of Abraham's son Isaac.
- Rebekah left the region of Aram Naharaim where she lived and went with Abraham's servant to the region of the Negev where Isaac was living.
- For a long time Rebekah did not have any children, but finally God blessed her with twin boys, Esau and Jacob.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), Aram, [Esau](#), [Isaac](#), [Jacob](#), Nahor, Negev)

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:15
- Genesis 24:45
- Genesis 24:56
- Genesis 24:64
- Genesis 25:28
- Genesis 26:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:2** After a very long journey to the land where Abraham's relatives lived, God led the servant to **Rebekah**. She was the granddaughter of Abraham's brother.
- **6:6** God told **Rebekah**, "There are two nations inside of you."
- **7:1** As the boys grew up, **Rebekah** loved Jacob, but Isaac loved Esau.
- **7:3** Isaac wanted to give his blessing to Esau. But before he did, **Rebekah** and Jacob tricked him by having Jacob pretend to be Esau.
- **7:6** But **Rebekah** heard of Esau's plan. So she sent Jacob far away to live with her relatives.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7259

(Go back to: [Romans 9:10](#))

rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness

Definition:

The term “rebel” means to refuse to submit to someone’s authority. A “rebellious” person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called “a rebel.”

- A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
- A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
- Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
- The term to “rebel” could also be translated as to “disobey” or to “revolt,” depending on the context.
- “Rebellious” could also be translated as “continually disobedient” or “refusing to obey.”
- The term “rebellion” means “refusal to obey” or “disobedience” or “law-breaking.”
- The phrase “the rebellion” or “a rebellion” can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

(See also: [authority](#), governor)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 12:18-19
- 1 Samuel 12:14
- 1 Timothy 1:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 10:17-19
- Acts 21:38
- Luke 23:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:14** After the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for forty years, all of them who had **rebelled** against God were dead.
- **18:7** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel **rebelled** against Rehoboam.
- **18:9** Jeroboam **rebelled** against God and caused the people to sin.
- **18:13** Most of the people of Judah also **rebelled** against God and worshiped other gods.
- **20:7** But after a few years, the king of Judah **rebelled** against Babylon.
- **45:3** Then he (Stephen) said, “You stubborn and **rebellious** people always reject the Holy Spirit, just as your ancestors always rejected God and killed his prophets.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4775, H4776, H4777, H4779, H4780, H4784, H4805, H5327, H5627, H5637, H6586, H6588, H7846, G38930, G49550

(Go back to: [Romans 13:2](#))

receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance

Definition:

The term “receive” generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To “receive” can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in “he received punishment for what he did.”
- There is also a special sense in which we can “receive” a person. For example, to “receive” guests or visitors means to welcome them and treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To “receive the gift of the Holy Spirit” means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To “receive Jesus” means to accept God’s offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person “receives his sight” means that God has healed him and enabled him to see.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “receive” could be translated as “accept” or “welcome” or “experience” or “be given.”
- The expression “you will receive power” could be translated as “you will be given power” or “God will give you power” or “power will be given to you (by God)” or “God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you.”
- The phrase “received his sight” could be translated as “was able to see” or “became able to see again” or “was healed by God so that he was able to see.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [lord](#), [save](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 5:9
- 1 Thessalonians 1:6
- 1 Thessalonians 4:1
- Acts 8:15
- Jeremiah 32:33
- Luke 9:5
- Malachi 3:10-12
- Psalms 49:14-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to **receive** the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring peace between God and people.
- **45:5** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, “Jesus, **receive** my spirit.”
- **49:6** He (Jesus) taught that some people will receive him and be saved, but others will not.
- **49:10** When Jesus died on the cross, he **received** your punishment.
- **49:13** God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and **receives** him as their Master.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3557, H3947, H6901, H6902, H8254, G03080, G03240, G03530, G03540, G05680, G05880, G06180, G11830, G12090, G15230, G16530, G19260, G28650, G29830, G30280, G33350, G33360, G35490, G38580, G38800, G43270, G43550, G43560, G46870, G52640, G55620

(Go back to: [Romans 1:5](#); [1:27](#); [4:11](#); [5:11](#); [5:17](#); [8:15](#); [14:1](#); [14:3](#); [15:7](#); [16:2](#))

reconcile, reconciled, reconciliation

Definition:

To “reconcile” and “reconciliation” refer to “make peace” between people who were formerly enemies of each other. “Reconciliation” is that act of making peace

- In the Bible, this term usually refer to Gods reconciling people to himself through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus Christ.
- Because of sin, all human beings are God’s enemies. But because of his compassionate love, God provided a way for people to be reconciled to him through Jesus.
- Through trusting in Jesus’ sacrifice as payment for their sin, people can be forgiven and have peace with God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “reconcile” could be translated as “make peace” or “restore good relations” or “cause to be friends.”
- The term “reconciliation” could be translated as “restoring good relations” or “making peace” or “causing peaceful relating.”

(See also: [peace](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 5:19
- Colossians 1:18-20
- Matthew 5:24
- Proverbs 13:17-18
- Romans 5:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2398, H3722, G06040, G12590, G24330, G26430, G26440

(Go back to: [Romans 5:10](#); [5:11](#); [11:15](#))

redeem, redeemer, redemption

Definition:

The term “redeem” refers to buying back something or someone that has been previously owned or held captive. A “redeemer” is someone who redeems something or someone.

- God gave laws to the Israelites about how to redeem people or things. For example, someone could redeem a person who was in slavery by paying the price so that the slave could go free. The word “ransom” also refers to this practice.
- If someone’s land had been sold, a relative of that person could “redeem” or “buy back” that land so that it would stay in the family.
- These practices show how God redeems people who are in slavery to sin. When he died on the cross, Jesus paid the full price for people’s sins and redeemed all those who trust in him for salvation. People who have been redeemed by God are set free from sin and its punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “redeem” could also be translated as “buy back” or “pay to free (someone)” or “ransom.”
- The term “redemption” could be translated as “ransom” or “freedom payment” or “buying back.”
- The words “ransom” and “redeem” have basically the same meaning, so some languages may have only one term to translate both these words. The word “ransom,” however, can also mean the payment necessary to “redeem” something or someone. The term “redeem” never refers to the actual payment itself.

(See also: [free](#), [ransom](#))

Bible References:

- Colossians 1:13-14
- Ephesians 1:7-8
- Ephesians 5:16
- Galatians 3:13-14
- Galatians 4:5
- Luke 2:38
- Ruth 2:20

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H1353, H6299, H6302, H6304, H6306, H6561, H7069, G00590, G06290, G18050, G30840, G30850

(Go back to: [Romans 3:24](#); [8:23](#))

reign, rule

Definition:

The term to “reign” means to rule over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term “reign” is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel after the people rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world, and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as “absolute rule” or “rule as king.”

(See also: kingdom)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 2:11-13
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Luke 1:30-33
- Luke 19:26-27
- Matthew 2:22-23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3427, H4427, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4475, H4791, H4910, H6113, H7287, H7786, G07570, G09360, G22310, G48210

(Go back to: [Romans 5:14](#); [5:17](#); [5:21](#))

reject, rejected, rejection

Definition:

To “reject” someone or something means to refuse to accept that person or thing.

- The term “reject” can also mean to “refuse to believe in” something.
- To reject God also means to refuse to obey him.
- When the Israelites rejected Moses’ leadership, it means that they were rebelling against his authority. They did not want to obey him.
- The Israelites showed that they were rejecting God when they worshiped false gods.
- The term “push away” is the literal meaning of this word. Other languages may have a similar expression that means to reject or refuse to believe someone or something.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “reject” could also be translated by “not accept” or “stop helping” or “refuse to obey” or “stop obeying.”
- In the expression “stone that the builders rejected,” the term “rejected” could be translated as “refused to use” or “did not accept” or “threw away” or “got rid of as worthless.”
- In the context of people who rejected God’s commandments, rejected could be translated as “refused to obey” his commands or “stubbornly chose to not accept” God’s laws.

(See also: [command](#), [disobey](#), [obey](#), [stiff-necked](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 4:12-14
- Hosea 4:6-7
- Isaiah 41:9
- John 12:48-50
- Mark 7:9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0947, H0959, H2186, H2310, H3988, H5006, H5034, H5186, H5203, H5307, H5541, H5800, G01140, G04830, G05500, G05790, G05800, G05930, G06830, G07200, G16090, G38680

(Go back to: [Romans 11:1](#); [11:2](#); [11:15](#))

remnant

Definition:

The term “remnant” literally refers to people or things that are “remaining” or “left over” from a larger amount or group.

- Often a “remnant” refers to people who survive a life-threatening situation or who remain faithful to God while undergoing persecution.
- Isaiah referred to a group of Jews as being a remnant who would survive attacks from outsiders and live to return to the Promised Land in Canaan.
- Paul talks about there being a “remnant” of people who were chosen by God to receive his grace.
- The term “remnant” also implies that there were other people who did not remain or were not left over.

Translation Suggestions:

- A phrase such as “the remnant of this people” could be translated as “the rest of these people” or “the people who are left.”
- The “whole remnant of people” could be translated by “all the rest of the people” or “the remaining people.”

Bible References:

- Acts 15:17
- Amos 9:12
- Ezekiel 6:8-10
- Genesis 45:7
- Isaiah 11:11
- Micah 4:6-8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3498, H3499, H5629, H6413, H7604, H7605, H7611, H8281, H8300, G26400, G30050, G30620

(Go back to: [Introduction to Romans](#); [Romans 9:27](#); [11:5](#))

repent, repentance

Definition:

The terms “repent” and “repentance” refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

- To “repent” literally means to “change one’s mind.”
- In the Bible, “repent” usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God’s way of thinking and acting.
- When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “repent” can be translated with a word or phrase that means “turn back (to God)” or “turn away from sin and toward God” or “turn toward God, away from sin.”
- Often the term “repentance” can be translated using the verb “repent.” For example, “God has given repentance to Israel” could be translated as “God has enabled Israel to repent.”
- Other ways to translate “repentance” could include “turning away from sin” or “turning to God and away from sin.”

(See also: [forgive](#), [sin](#), [turn](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 3:19-20
- Luke 3:3
- Luke 3:8
- Luke 5:32
- Luke 24:47
- Mark 1:14-15
- Matthew 3:3
- Matthew 3:11
- Matthew 4:17
- Romans 2:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:2** After many years of disobeying God and being oppressed by their enemies, the Israelites **repented** and asked God to rescue them.
- **17:13** David **repented** of his sin and God forgave him.
- **19:18** They (prophets) warned people that God would destroy them if they did not **repent**.
- **24:2** Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to John. He preached to them, saying, “**Repent**, for the kingdom of God is near!”
- **42:8** “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to **receive** forgiveness for their sins.”
- **44:5** “So now, **repent** and turn to God so that your sins will be washed away.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5150, H5162, H5164, G02780, G33380, G33400, G33410

(Go back to: [Romans 2:4](#))

report, reported, tell, reputation

Definition:

The term to “report” means to tell people about something that happened, often giving details about that event. A “report” is what is told, and can be spoken or written.

- “Report” could also be translated as “tell” or “explain” or “tell the details of.”
- The expression “Report this to no one” could be translated as “Don’t talk about this with anyone” or “Don’t tell anyone about this.”
- Ways to translate “a report” could include “an explanation” or “a story” or “a detailed account,” depending on the context.

Bible References:

- Acts 5:22-23
- John 12:38
- Luke 5:15
- Luke 8:34-35
- Matthew 28:15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1681, H1696, H1697, H5046, H7725, H8034, H8052, H8085, H8088, H8089, G01890, G01910, G03120, G05180, G09870, G12250, G13100, G18340, G20360, G21630, G30040, G30560, G31400, G33770

(Go back to: [Romans 10:16](#))

resurrection

Definition:

The term “resurrection” refers to the act of becoming alive again after having died.

- To resurrect someone means to bring that person back to life again. Only God has the power to do this.
- The word “resurrection” often refers to Jesus’ coming back to life after he died.
- When Jesus said, “I am the Resurrection and the Life” he meant that he is the source of resurrection, and the one who causes people to come back to life.

Translation Suggestions:

- A person’s “resurrection” could be translated as his “coming back to life” or his “becoming alive again after being dead.”
- The literal meaning of this word is “a rising up” or “the act of being raised (from the dead).” These would be other possible ways to translate this term.

(See also: [life](#), [death](#), [raise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:13
- 1 Peter 3:21
- Hebrews 11:35
- John 5:28-29
- Luke 20:27
- Luke 20:36
- Matthew 22:23
- Matthew 22:30
- Philippians 3:11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** Through the Messiah’s death and **resurrection**, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the New Covenant.
- **37:5** Jesus replied, “I am the **Resurrection** and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he dies.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G03860, G14540, G18150

(Go back to: [Romans 1:4](#); [6:5](#))

reveal, revealed, revelation

Definition:

The term “reveal” means to cause something to be known. A “revelation” is something that has been made known.

- God has revealed himself through everything he has created and through his communication with people by spoken and written messages.
- God also reveals himself through dreams or visions.
- When Paul said that he received the gospel by “revelation from Jesus Christ,” he means that Jesus himself explained the gospel to him.
- In the New Testament book “Revelation” is about God revealed events that will happen in the end times. He revealed them to the apostle John through visions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “reveal” could include “make known” or “disclose” or “show clearly.”
- Depending on the context, possible ways to translate “revelation” could be “communication from God” or “things that God has revealed” or “teachings about God.” It is best to keep the meaning of “reveal” in the translation.
- The phrase “where there is no revelation” could be translated as “when God is not revealing himself to people” or “when God is not speaking to people” or “among people whom God has not communicating.”

(See also: [good news](#), [good news](#), dream, vision)

Bible References:

- Daniel 11:1-2
- Ephesians 3:5
- Galatians 1:12
- Lamentations 2:13-14
- Matthew 10:26
- Philippians 3:15
- Revelation 1:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0241, H1540, H1541, G06010, G06020, G55370

(Go back to: [Romans 1:17](#); [1:18](#); [1:19](#); [2:5](#); [3:21](#); [8:18](#); [8:19](#); [16:25](#); [16:26](#))

revere, revered, reverence, reverent

Definition:

The term “reverence” refers to feelings of profound, deep respect for someone or something. “Revere” someone or something is to show reverence towards that person or thing.

- Feelings of reverence can be seen in actions that honor the person who is revered.
- The fear of the Lord is an inner reverence that manifests itself in obedience to God’s commandments.
- This term could also be translated as “fear and honor” or “sincere respect.”

(See also: [fear](#), [honor](#), [obey](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:15-17
- Hebrews 11:7
- Isaiah 44:17
- Psalms 5:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3372, H3373, H3374, H4172, H6342, H7812, G01270, G17880, G21250, G24120, G53990, G54010

(Go back to: [Romans 1:25](#))

reward, prize, deserve

Definition:

The term “reward” refers to what a person receives because of something he has done, either good or bad. To “reward” someone is to give someone something he deserves. However, this is different than the concept of “wages,” which refers to payment (often money) given in exchange for work performed.

- A reward can be a good or positive thing that a person receives because he has done something well or because he has obeyed God.
- Sometimes a reward can refer to negative things that may result from bad behavior, such as the statement “the reward of the wicked.” In this context “reward” refers to the punishment or negative consequences they receive because of their sinful actions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “reward” could be translated as “payment” or “something that is deserved” or “punishment.”
- To “reward” someone could be translated by to “repay” or to “punish” or to “give what is deserved.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to wages. A reward is not specifically about earning money as part of a job.

(See also: punish)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 32:6
- Isaiah 40:10
- Luke 6:35
- Mark 9:40-41
- Matthew 5:11-12
- Matthew 6:3-4
- Psalms 127:3-5
- Revelation 11:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0319, H0866, H0868, H1576, H1578, H1580, H4909, H4991, H5023, H6118, H6468, H6529, H7938, H7939, H7999, G04690, G05140, G05910, G26030, G34050, G34060, G34080

(Go back to: [Romans 1:27](#); [4:4](#))

right hand

Definition:

The term “right hand” refers to the hand on the right side of a person’s body. In the Bible, the term is often used figuratively to refer to other body parts on a person’s right side, to the direction of a person’s right, to the direction south, or to a place of honor or strength on the right side of a ruler or other important individual.

- The right hand can be used figuratively as a symbol of power, authority, or strength.
- The Bible describes Jesus as sitting “at the right hand of” God the Father as the head of the body of believers (the Church) and in control as ruler of all creation.
- A person’s right hand was used to show special honor when placed on the head of someone being given a blessing (as when the patriarch Jacob blessed Joseph’s son Ephraim).
- To “serve at the right hand” of someone means to be the one whose service is especially helpful and important to that person.

Translation Suggestions:

- Sometimes the term “right hand” literally refers to a person’s right hand, as when Roman soldiers put a staff into Jesus’ right hand to mock him. This should be translated using the term that the language uses to refer to this hand.
- Regarding figurative uses, if an expression that includes the term “right hand” does not have the same meaning in the project language, then consider whether that language has a different expression with the same meaning.
- The expression “at the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of” or “in the place of honor beside” or “in the position of strength” or “ready to help.”
- Ways to translate “with his right hand” could include “with authority” or “using power” or “with his amazing strength.”
- The figurative expression “his right hand and his mighty arm” uses two ways of emphasizing God’s power and great strength. One way to translate this expression could be “his amazing strength and mighty power.” (See: [parallelism](#))
- The expression “their right hand is falsehood” could be translated as “even the most honorable thing about them is corrupted by lies” or “their place of honor is corrupted by deception” or “they use lies to make themselves powerful.”

(See also: [accuse](#), [evil](#), [honor](#), [mighty](#), [punish](#), [rebel](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 2:33
- Colossians 3:1
- Galatians 2:9
- Genesis 48:14
- Hebrews 10:12
- Lamentations 2:3
- Matthew 25:33
- Matthew 26:64
- Psalms 44:3
- Revelation 2:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3225, H3231, H3233, G11880

(Go back to: [Romans 8:34](#))

righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

Definition:

The term “righteousness” refers to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God “righteous.” Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus’ righteousness.

The term “unrighteous” means to be sinful and morally corrupt. “Unrighteousness” refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God’s teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes “the unrighteous” refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms “upright” and “uprightness” refer to acting in a way that follows God’s laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is “upright” is someone who obeys God’s rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as “integrity” and “righteous” have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as “integrity and uprightness.” (See: [parallelism](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase “the righteous” could also be translated as “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good.”
- The term “unrighteous” could simply be translated as “not righteous.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include “wicked” or “immoral” or “people who rebel against God” or “sinful.”
- The phrase “the unrighteous” could be translated as “unrighteous people.”
- The term “unrighteousness” could be translated as “sin” or “evil thoughts and actions” or “wickedness.”
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to “righteous, righteousness.”
- Ways to translate “upright” could include “acting rightly” or “one who acts rightly” or “following God’s laws” or “obedient to God” or “behaving in a way that is right.”
- The term “uprightness” could be translated as “moral purity” or “good moral conduct” or “rightness.”
- The phrase “the upright” could be translated as “people who are upright” or “upright people.”

(See also: [evil](#), [faithful](#), [good](#), [holy](#), integrity, [just](#), [law](#), [law](#), [obey](#), pure, [righteous](#), [sin](#), [unlawful](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:16
- Job 1:8
- Psalms 37:30
- Psalms 49:14
- Psalms 107:42
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:13
- Malachi 2:6
- Matthew 6:1
- Acts 3:13-14
- Romans 1:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 6:9
- Galatians 3:7
- Colossians 3:25
- 2 Thessalonians 2:10
- 2 Timothy 3:16
- 1 Peter 3:18-20
- 1 John 1:9
- 1 John 5:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:2** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **4:8** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God's promise.
- **17:2** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **23:1** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H1368, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H4749, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H6968, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G00930, G00940, G04580, G13410, G13420, G13430, G13440, G13450, G13460, G21180, G37160, G37170

(Go back to: [Romans 1 General Notes](#); [1:17](#); [1:18](#); [1:29](#); [2:8](#); [2:13](#); [3:5](#); [3:10](#); [3:21](#); [3:22](#); [3:25](#); [3:26](#); [4:3](#); [4:5](#); [4:6](#); [4:9](#); [4:11](#); [4:13](#); [4:22](#); [5:7](#); [5:17](#); [5:18](#); [5:19](#); [5:21](#); [Notes](#); [6:13](#); [6:16](#); [6:18](#); [6:19](#); [6:20](#); [7:12](#); [8:10](#); [9:14](#); [9:30](#); [9:31](#); [Notes](#); [10:3](#); [10:4](#); [10:5](#); [10:6](#); [10:10](#); [14:17](#))

Rome, Roman

Facts:

In New Testament times, the city of Rome was the center of the Roman Empire. It is now the capital city of the modern-day country of Italy.

- The Roman Empire ruled over all the regions around the Mediterranean Sea, including Israel.
- The term “Roman” referred to anything relating to the regions that the government in Rome controlled, including Roman citizens and Roman officials.
- The apostle Paul was taken to the city of Rome as a prisoner because he preached the good news about Jesus.
- The New Testament book of “Romans” is a letter that Paul wrote to the Christians in Rome.

(See also: [good news](#), the sea, Pilate, [Paul](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 1:15-18
- Acts 22:25
- Acts 28:14
- John 11:48

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:4** When the time was near for Mary to give birth, the **Roman** government told everyone to go for a census to the town where their ancestors had lived.
- **32:6** Then Jesus asked the demon, “What is your name?” He replied, “My name is Legion, because we are many.” (A “legion” was a group of several thousand soldiers in the **Roman** army.)
- **39:9** Early the next morning, the Jewish leaders brought Jesus to the **Roman** governor, Pilate, hoping to have Jesus killed.
- **39:12** The **Roman** soldiers whipped Jesus and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they mocked him by saying, “Look, the King of the Jews!”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G45140, G45160

(Go back to: [Romans 1:7](#); [1:15](#))

rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader

Definition:

The term “ruler” is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group. A ruler is one who “rules,” and his authority is his “rule.”

- In the Old Testament, a king was sometimes referred to generally as a “ruler,” as in the phrase “appointed him ruler over Israel.”
- God was referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a “ruler.”
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a “governor.”
- Depending on the context, “ruler” could be translated as “leader” or “person who has authority over.”
- The action to “rule” means to “lead” to “have authority over.” It means the same thing as “reign” when it refers to the ruling of a king.

(See also: [authority](#), governor, king, synagogue)

Bible References:

- Acts 3:17-18
- Acts 7:35-37
- Luke 12:11
- Luke 23:35
- Mark 10:42
- Matthew 9:32-34
- Matthew 20:25
- Titus 3:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0995, H1166, H1167, H1404, H2708, H2710, H3027, H3548, H3920, H4043, H4410, H4427, H4428, H4438, H4467, H4474, H4475, H4623, H4910, H4941, H5057, H5065, H5387, H5401, H5461, H5715, H6113, H6213, H6485, H6957, H7101, H7218, H7287, H7300, H7336, H7786, H7860, H7980, H7981, H7985, H7989, H7990, H8199, H8269, H8323, H8451, G07460, G07520, G07550, G07570, G07580, G09320, G09360, G10180, G12030, G12990, G17780, G17850, G18490, G22320, G22330, G25250, G25830, G28880, G29610, G35450, G38410, G41650, G41730, G42910

(Go back to: [Romans 6:9](#); [6:12](#); [6:14](#); [7:1](#); [8:38](#); [13:3](#); [14:9](#); [15:12](#))

sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

sacrifice

- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God’s perfect sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin; animal sacrifices could never do that.

offering

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action to “sacrifice” could be translated as to “give up something valuable” or to “kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be “as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar.”

(See also: [altar](#), burnt offering, drink offering, [false god](#), fellowship offering, freewill offering, peace offering, priest, sin offering, worship)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:6
- Acts 7:42
- Acts 21:25
- Genesis 4:3-5
- James 2:21-24
- Mark 1:43-44
- Mark 14:12
- Matthew 5:23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.
- **5:6** "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me." Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- **5:9** God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.
- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **17:6** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- **48:6** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could to take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- **48:8** But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- **49:11** Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0801, H0817, H0819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4503, H4504, H5066, H5068, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8548, H8573, H8641, G02660, G03340, G10490, G14350, G14940, G23780, G23800, G36460, G43760, G54850

(Go back to: [Romans 12:1](#); [15:16](#))

saint

Definition:

The term “saints” literally means “holy ones” and refers to believers in Jesus.

- Later in church history, a person known for his good works was given the title “saint,” but that was not how this term was used during New Testament times.
- Believers in Jesus are saints or holy ones, not because of what they have done, but rather because of their faith in the saving work of Jesus Christ. He is the one who makes them holy.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “saints” could include “holy ones” or “holy people” or “holy believers in Jesus” or “set apart ones.”
- Be careful not to use a term that refers to people of only one Christian group.

(See also: [holy](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 5:10
- 2 Corinthians 9:12-15
- Revelation 16:6
- Revelation 20:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2623, H6918, H6922, G00400

(Go back to: [Romans 1:7](#); [8:27](#); [12:13](#); [15:25](#); [15:26](#); [15:31](#); [16:2](#); [16:15](#))

sanctify, sanctification

Definition:

To sanctify is to set apart or to make holy. Sanctification is the process of being made holy.

- In the Old Testament, certain people and things were sanctified, or set apart, for service to God.
- The New Testament teaches that God sanctifies people who believe in Jesus. That is, he makes them holy and sets them apart to serve him.
- Believers in Jesus are also commanded to sanctify themselves to God, to be holy in everything they do.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “sanctify” can be translated as “set apart” or “make holy” or “purify.”
- When people sanctify themselves, they purify themselves and dedicate themselves to God’s service. Often the word “consecrate” is used in the Bible with this meaning.
- When its meaning is “consecrate,” this term could be translated as “dedicate someone (or something) to God’s service.”
- Depending on the context, the phrase “your sanctification” could be translated as “making you holy” or “setting you apart (for God)” or “what makes you holy.”

(See also: consecrate, [holy](#), [set apart](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 4:3-6
- 2 Thessalonians 2:13
- Genesis 2:1-3
- Luke 11:2
- Matthew 6:8-10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6942, G00370, G00380

(Go back to: [Romans 6:19](#); [6:22](#); [15:16](#))

Sarah, Sarai

Facts:

- Sarah was Abraham's wife.
- Her name was originally "Sarai," but God changed it to "Sarah."
- Sarah gave birth to Isaac, the son God had promised to give her and Abraham.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Isaac](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 11:30
- Genesis 11:31
- Genesis 17:15
- Genesis 25:9-11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:1** So Abram's wife, **Sarai**, said to him, "Since God has not allowed me to have children and now I am too old to have children, here is my servant, Hagar. Marry her also so she can have a child for me."
- **5:4** "Your wife, **Sarai**, will have a son—he will be the son of promise."
- **5:4** God also changed **Sarai's** name to **Sarah**, which means "princess."
- **5:5** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and **Sarah** was 90, **Sarah** gave birth to Abraham's son. They named him Isaac as God had told them to do.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8283, H8297, G45640

(Go back to: [Romans 4:19](#); [9:9](#))

Satan, devil, evil one

Facts:

Although the devil is a spirit being that God created, he rebelled against God and became God's enemy. The devil is also called "Satan" and "the evil one."

- The devil hates God and all that God created because he wants to take the place of God and be worshiped as God.
- Satan tempts people to rebel against God.
- God sent his Son, Jesus, to rescue people from Satan's control.
- The name "Satan" means "adversary" or "enemy."
- The word "devil" means "accuser."

Translation Suggestions:

- The word "devil" could also be translated as "the accuser" or "the evil one" or "the king of evil spirits" or "the chief evil spirit."
- "Satan" could be translated as "Opponent" or "Adversary" or some other name that shows that he is the devil.
- These terms should be translated differently from demon and evil spirit.
- Consider how these terms are translated in a local or national language.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [demon](#), [evil](#), [kingdom of God](#), [tempt](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 3:8
- 1 Thessalonians 2:17-20
- 1 Timothy 5:15
- Acts 13:10
- Job 1:8
- Mark 8:33
- Zechariah 3:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:1** The snake who deceived Eve was **Satan**. The promise meant that the Messiah who would come would defeat **Satan** completely.
- **25:6** Then **Satan** showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their glory and said, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."
- **25:8** Jesus did not give in to **Satan's** temptations, so **Satan** left him.
- **33:6** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the word of God. The path is a person who hears God's word, but does not understand it, and the **devil** takes the word from him."
- **38:7** After Judas took the bread, **Satan** entered into him.
- **48:4** God promised that one of Eve's descendants would crush **Satan's** head, and **Satan** would wound his heel. This meant that **Satan** would kill the Messiah, but God would raise him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of **Satan** forever.
- **49:15** God has taken you out of **Satan's** kingdom of darkness and put you into God's kingdom of light.

- **50:9** "The weeds represent the people who belong to the **evil one**. The enemy who planted the weeds represents the **devil**."
- **50:10** "When the world ends, the angels will gather together all the people who belong to the **devil** and throw them into a raging fire, where they will cry and grind their teeth in terrible suffering."
- **50:15** When Jesus returns, he will completely destroy **Satan** and his kingdom. He will throw **Satan** into hell where he will burn forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him rather than to obey God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7700, H7854, H8163, G11390, G11400, G11410, G11420, G12280, G41900, G45660, G45670

(Go back to: [Romans 16:20](#))

save, saved, safe, salvation

Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” then God, through Jesus’ death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”
- The term “salvation” could also be translated using words related to “save” or “rescue,” as in “God’s saving people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God’s rescuing his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: cross, [deliver](#), punish, [sin](#), Savior)

Bible References:

- Genesis 49:18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Psalms 80:3
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 6:3-5
- Luke 2:30
- Luke 8:36-37
- Acts 4:12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 2:21
- Romans 1:16
- Romans 10:10
- Ephesians 6:17
- Philippians 1:28
- 1 Timothy 1:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:8** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **11:2** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:5** Moses told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you."
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **44:8** "You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!"
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, "What must I do to be **saved**?" Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**."
- **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0983, H2421, H2502, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4931, H5338, H6308, H6403, H7682, H7951, H7965, H8104, H8199, H8668, G08030, G08040, G08060, G12950, G15080, G49820, G49910, G49920, G51980

(Go back to: [Romans 1:16](#); [Notes](#); [5:9](#); [5:10](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [8:24](#); [Notes](#); [9:27](#); [Notes](#); [10:1](#); [10:9](#); [10:10](#); [10:13](#); [11:11](#); [11:14](#); [11:26](#); [13:11](#))

seal, sealed, unsealed

Definition:

To term “seal” means to close an object with something (usually called a “seal”) that makes the object impossible to open without breaking the seal.

- Often a seal is marked with a design to show who it belongs to.
- Melted wax was used to seal letters or other documents that needed to be protected. When the wax cooled and hardened, the letter could not be opened without breaking the wax seal. The person who received the letter would see the unbroken seal and know that no one had opened it.
- A seal was put on the stone in front of Jesus’ grave in order to keep anyone from moving the stone.
- Paul figuratively refers to the Holy Spirit as a “seal” showing that our salvation is secure.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [tomb](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 2:3
- Isaiah 29:11
- John 6:27
- Matthew 27:66
- Revelation 5:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2368, H2560, H2856, H2857, H2858, H5640, G26960, G49720, G49730

(Go back to: [Romans 4:11](#); [15:28](#))

seed, semen

Definition:

A “seed” is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. However, in the Bible the term “seed” is used figuratively to mean several different things.

- The term “seed” is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man that combine with cells of a woman to cause a baby to grow inside her. A collection of these cells is called “semen.”
- Related to this, “seed” is also used to refer to a person’s offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people’s hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term “seed” to refer to the Word of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for “seed” that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
- The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God’s Word.
- For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word “descendant” or “descendants” instead of “seed.” Some languages may have a word that means “children and grandchildren.”
- For a man or woman’s “seed,” consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people. (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: [children](#), [descendant](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:32
- Genesis 1:11
- Jeremiah 2:21
- Matthew 13:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2232, H2233, H3610, H6507, G46150, G46870, G46900, G47010, G47030

(Go back to: [Romans 5 General Notes](#))

seek, search, look for

Definition:

The term “seek” means to look for something or someone. In the past tense, the verb is “sought.” This term is sometimes used figuratively, meaning to “attempt” or “make an effort” to do something or to ask for something.

- To “seek” or “look for” an opportunity to do something can mean to “try to find a time” to do it.
- To “seek Yahweh” means to “spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him.”
- To “seek protection” means to “try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger.”
- To “seek justice” means to “make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly.”
- To “seek the truth” means to “make an effort to find out what the truth is.”
- To “seek favor” means to “urgently ask for favor” or to “do things to cause someone to help you.”

(See also: [just](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:14
- Acts 17:26-27
- Hebrews 11:6
- Luke 11:9
- Psalms 27:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0579, H1156, H1239, H1243, H1245, H1556, H1875, H2470, H2603, H2658, H2664, H3289, H7125, H7592, H7836, H8446, G03270, G15670, G19340, G20520, G22120

(Go back to: [Romans 2:7](#); [3:11](#); [10:3](#); [10:20](#); [11:3](#); [11:7](#))

send, sent, send out

Definition:

To “send” is to cause someone or something to go somewhere. To “send out” someone is to tell that person to go on an errand or a mission.

- Often a person who is “sent out” has been appointed to do a specific task.
- Phrases like “send rain” or “send disaster” mean to “cause...to come.” This type of expression is usually used in reference to God causing these things to happen.
- The term “send” is also used in expressions such as to “send word” or to “send a message,” which means to give someone a message to tell someone else.
- To “send” someone “with” something can mean to “give” that thing “to” someone else, usually moving it some distance in order for the person to receive it.
- Jesus frequently used the phrase “the one who sent me” to refer to God the Father, who “sent” him to earth to redeem and save people. This could also be translated as “the one who commissioned me.”

(See also: [appoint](#), [redeem](#), [castout](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:33-34
- Acts 8:14-17
- John 20:21-23
- Matthew 9:37-38
- Matthew 10:5
- Matthew 10:40
- Matthew 21:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0935, H1540, H1980, H2199, H2904, H3318, H3474, H3947, H4916, H4917, H5042, H5130, H5375, H5414, H5674, H6963, H7368, H7725, H7964, H7971, H7972, H7993, H8421, H8446, G07820, G03750, G06300, G06490, G06520, G06570, G10260, G10320, G15440, G15990, G18210, G33330, G33430, G39360, G39920, G43110, G43410, G43690, G48420, G48820

(Go back to: [Romans 8:3](#); [10:15](#))

servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

Definition:

A “servant” or “slave” refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. A servant was under his master's control. In the Bible, “servant” and “slave” are mostly interchangeable terms. The term “serve” generally means to do work for someone, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts.

- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his “owner” or “master.” Some masters treated their slaves cruelly. Other masters treated their slaves well, like a valued member of the household. The term “slavery” means the state of being a slave.
- A person could be a slave temporarily, for instance while working to repay a debt to his owner.
- The words “young man” or “young woman” often mean “servant” or “slave.” This meaning will be discerned from context. One indicator of this situation is if the possessive is used, eg. “her young women” could be translated as “her servants” or “her slaves.”
- The term “enslave” means “to cause to be a slave” (usually by force).
- The New Testament speaks of human beings as “slaves of sin” until Jesus frees them from its control and power. When a person receives new life in Christ, he stops being a slave to sin and becomes a slave to righteousness.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “serve” can also be translated as “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- The term “enslave” could be translated as “cause to not be free” or “force to serve others” or “put under the control of others.”
- The phrase “enslaved to” or “in bondage to” could be translated as “forced to be a slave of” or “forced to serve” or “under the control of.”
- To “serve God” can be translated as to “worship and obey God” or to “do the work that God has commanded.”
- In the Old Testament, God’s prophets and other people who worshiped God were often called his “servants.”
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his “servants.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to “distribute food.”
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.” When Jesus told the disciples to “serve” the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute” or “hand out” or “give.”
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they “serve” the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”
- Often, when a person referred to himself as “your servant” he was showing respect to the person addressed. That person may have had higher social status, or the speaker may be showing humility. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.

(See also: [bondage](#), [works](#), [obey](#), [house](#), [lord](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:13
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Genesis 25:23
- Deuteronomy 24:7
- Jeremiah 30:8-9
- Matthew 4:10-11
- Matthew 6:24
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28
- Mark 8:7-10
- Mark 9:33-35
- Luke 4:8
- Luke 12:37-38
- Luke 12:47-48
- Luke 22:26-27
- Acts 4:29-31
- Acts 6:2-4
- Acts 10:7-8
- Galatians 4:3
- Galatians 4:24-25
- Colossians 1:7-8
- Colossians 3:22-25
- 2 Timothy 2:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:1** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **8:4** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **9:13** "I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt."
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- **29:3** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- **35:6** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- **47:4** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- **50:4** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

Word Data:

Servant

- Strong's: H0519, H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G12490, G14010, G14020, G23240, G34070, G34110, G36100, G38160, G49830, G52570
- (Serve) H0327, H3547, H4929, H4931, H5647, H5656, H5673, H5975, H6213, H6399, H6402, H6440, H6633, H6635, H7272, H8104, H8120, H8199, H8278, H8334, G1247, G1248, G1398, G1402, G1438, G1983, G2064, G2212, G2323, G2999, G3000, G3009, G4337, G4342, G4754, G5087, G5256

Enslave

- Strong's: H3533, G26150

(Go back to: [Romans 1:1](#); [1:9](#); [1:25](#); [6:16](#); [6:17](#); [6:18](#); [6:19](#); [6:20](#); [6:22](#); [7:6](#); [7:25](#); [8:15](#); [8:21](#); [9:4](#); [9:12](#); [12:1](#); [12:7](#); [12:11](#); [13:4](#); [13:6](#); [14:4](#); [14:18](#); [15:8](#); [15:31](#); [16:1](#); [16:18](#))

set apart

Definition:

The term “set apart” means separated from something to fulfill a certain purpose. Also, to “set apart” some person or thing means to make it “set apart.”

- The Israelites were set apart for service to God.
- The Holy Spirit commanded the Christians at Antioch to set apart Paul and Barnabas for the work God wanted them to do.
- A believer who is “set apart” for service to God is “dedicated to” fulfilling God’s will.
- One meaning of the term “holy” is to be set apart as belonging to God and being separated from the sinful ways of the world.
- To “sanctify” someone means to set apart that person for God’s service.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate to “set apart” could include to “specially select” or to “separate from among you” or to “take aside to do a special task.”
- To “be set apart” could be translated as “be separated (from)” or “be specially appointed (for).”

(See also: [holy](#), [sanctify](#), [appoint](#))

Bible References:

- Ephesians 3:17-19
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Judges 17:12
- Numbers 3:11-13
- Philippians 1:1-2
- Romans 1:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2764, H4390, H5674, H6918, H6942, H6944, G00370, G00380, G00400, G08730

(Go back to: [Romans 1:1](#))

sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication

Definition:

The term “sexual immorality” refers to sexual activity that takes place outside the marriage relationship of a man and a woman. This is against God’s plan. Older English Bible versions call this “fornication.”

- This term can refer to any kind of sexual activity that is against God’s will, including homosexual acts and pornography.
- One type of sexual immorality is adultery, which is sexual activity specifically between a married person and someone who is not that person’s spouse.
- Another type of sexual immorality is “prostitution,” which involves being paid to have sex with someone.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to Israel’s unfaithfulness to God when they worshiped false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sexual immorality” could be translated as “immorality” as long as the correct meaning of the term is understood.
- Other ways to translate this term could include “wrong sexual acts” or “sex outside of marriage.”
- This term should be translated in a different way from the term “adultery.”
- The translation of this term’s figurative uses should retain the literal term if possible since there is a common comparison in the Bible between unfaithfulness to God and unfaithfulness in the sexual relationship.

(See also: [adultery](#), [false god](#), prostitute, [faithful](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 15:20
- Acts 21:25-26
- Colossians 3:5-8
- Ephesians 5:3
- Genesis 38:24-26
- Hosea 4:13-14
- Matthew 5:31-32
- Matthew 19:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2181, H8457, G16080, G42020, G42030

(Go back to: [Romans 13:13](#))

shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

Definition:

The term “shame” refers to the painful feeling of being disgraced or humiliated that a person feels when they do something that others consider dishonorable or improper.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something improper or dishonorable.
- The term “humiliate” means to cause someone to feel shamed or disgraced, usually publicly. The act of shaming someone is called “humiliation.”
- To “reproach” someone means to criticize or disapprove of that person’s character or behavior.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their actions so that they feel ashamed of themselves. The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- The term “disgraceful” can be used to describe a sinful act or the person who did it. When a person does something sinful, it can cause him to be in a state of disgrace or dishonor.
- Sometimes a person who is doing good things is treated in a way that causes him disgrace or shame. For example, when Jesus was killed on a cross, this was a disgraceful way to die. Jesus had done nothing wrong to deserve this disgrace.
- When God humbles someone, it means that he is causing a prideful person to experience failure to help him overcome his pride. This is different from humiliating someone, which is often done in order to hurt that person.
- Saying that a person is “above reproach” or “beyond reproach” or “without reproach” means that this person behaves in a God-honoring way and there is little or nothing that could be said in criticism of him.

Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate “disgrace” could include “shame” or “dishonor.”
- Ways to translate “disgraceful” could include “shameful” or “dishonoring.”
- To “humiliate” could also be translated as to “shame” or to “cause to feel shame” or to “embarrass.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “humiliation” could include “shame” or “degrading” or “disgrace.”
- The word “reproach” could also be translated as “accusation” or “shame” or “disgrace.”
- To “reproach” could also be translated as to “rebuke” or to “accuse” or to “criticize,” depending on the context.

(See also: [dishonor](#), [accuse](#), rebuke, [false god](#), humble, [Isaiah](#), worship)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 3:15-17
- 2 Kings 2:17
- 2 Samuel 13:13
- Luke 20:11
- Mark 8:38
- Mark 12:4-5
- 1 Timothy 3:7
- Genesis 34:7
- Hebrews 11:26
- Lamentations 2:1-2
- Psalms 22:6
- Deuteronomy 21:14
- Ezra 9:5

- Proverbs 25:7-8
- Psalms 6:8-10
- Psalms 123:3
- 1 Timothy 5:7-8
- 1 Timothy 6:13-14
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Job 16:9-10
- Proverbs 18:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0937, H0954, H0955, H1317, H1322, H1421, H1442, H1984, H2490, H2616, H2617, H2659, H2778, H2781, H2865, H3001, H3637, H3639, H3640, H3971, H5007, H5034, H5039, H6030, H6031, H6172, H6256, H7022, H7034, H7036, H7043, H7511, H7817, H8103, H8213, H8216, H8217, H8589, G01520, G01530, G04100, G04220, G04230, G08080, G08180, G08190, G08210, G17880, G17910, G18700, G26170, G30590, G36790, G36800, G36810, G38560, G50140, G51950, G51960, G54840

(Go back to: [Romans 1:16](#); [1:27](#); [5:5](#); [6:21](#); [9:33](#); [10:11](#); [15:3](#))

sign, proof, reminder

Definition:

The term “sign” usually refers an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

- In the Bible, signs are sometimes given in connection to a promise or covenant that God has made:
 - The book of Genesis describes the rainbow God created in the sky as a sign (or reminder) to himself that he has promised he will never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
 - In the book of Genesis, God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign (or indicator) of the fact that he had made his covenant with them.
- Signs can reveal or point to something:
 - The book of Luke describes that an angel gave shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.
 - Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.
- Signs can prove that something is true:
 - The book of Exodus describes the plagues that destroyed Egypt as signs that showed who Yahweh was and proved that he was greater than Pharaoh and the Egyptian gods.
 - The book of Acts describes the miracles performed by the prophets and apostles as signs that proved they were speaking God’s message.
 - The book of John describes the miracles that Jesus performed as signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Depending on its context, “sign” could also be translated as “signal” or “symbol” or “mark” or “evidence” or “proof” or “gesture.”
- To “make signs with the hands” could also be translated as “motion with the hands” or “gesture with the hands” or “make gestures.”
- In some languages, there may be one word for a “sign” that proves something and a different word for a “sign” that is a miracle.

(See also: [miracle](#), [apostle](#), [Christ](#), [covenant](#), [circumcise](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 2:18-19
- Exodus 4:8-9
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Genesis 1:14
- Genesis 9:12
- John 2:18
- Luke 2:12
- Mark 8:12
- Psalms 89:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0226, H0852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H6161, H6725, H6734, H7560, G03640, G08800, G12130, G12290, G17180, G17300, G17320, G17700, G39020, G41020, G45910, G45920, G49530, G49730, G52800

(Go back to: [Romans 3:25](#); [3:26](#); [4:11](#); [15:19](#))

sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- To “sin” could also be translated as to “disobey God” or to “do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: [disobey](#), [evil](#), [flesh](#), [tax collector](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:1-3
- 1 John 1:10
- 1 John 2:2
- 2 Samuel 7:12-14
- Acts 3:19
- Daniel 9:24
- Genesis 4:7
- Hebrews 12:2
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 4:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31

- Romans 6:23
- Romans 8:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:1** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:1** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:8** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0817, H0819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G02640, G02650, G02660, G02680, G03610, G37810, G39000, G42580

(Go back to: [Romans 1 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [2:12](#); [3:7](#); [3:9](#); [3:20](#); [3:23](#); [3:25](#); [Notes](#); [4:7](#); [4:8](#); [Notes](#); [5:8](#); [5:12](#); [5:13](#); [5:14](#); [5:16](#); [5:19](#); [5:20](#); [5:21](#); [Notes](#); [6:1](#); [6:2](#); [6:6](#); [6:7](#); [6:10](#); [6:11](#); [6:12](#); [6:13](#); [6:14](#); [6:15](#); [6:16](#); [6:17](#); [6:18](#); [6:20](#); [6:22](#); [6:23](#); [Notes](#); [7:5](#); [7:7](#); [7:8](#); [7:9](#); [7:11](#); [7:13](#); [7:14](#); [7:17](#); [7:20](#); [7:23](#); [7:25](#); [8:2](#); [8:3](#); [8:10](#); [11:27](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [14:23](#))

sister

Definition:

A sister is a female person who shares at least one biological parent with another person. She is said to be that other person's sister or the sister of that other person.

- In the New Testament, "sister" is also used figuratively to refer to a woman who is a fellow believer in Jesus Christ.
- Sometimes the phrase "brothers and sisters" is used to refer to all believers in Christ, both men and women.
- In the Old Testament book Song of Songs, "sister" refers to a female lover or spouse.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological sister, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- Other ways to translate this could include "sister in Christ" or "spiritual sister" or "woman who believes in Jesus" or "fellow woman believer."
- If possible, it is best to use a family term.
- If the language has a feminine form for "believer," this may be a possible way to translate this term.
- When referring to a lover or wife, this could be translated using a feminine form of "loved one" or "dear one."

(See also: [brother in Christ](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:16-17
- Deuteronomy 27:22
- Philemon 1:2
- Romans 16:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0269, H1323, G00270, G00790

(Go back to: [Romans 16:1](#); [16:15](#))

slander, slanderers, revile, insult

Definition:

A slander consists of negative, defaming things spoken (not written) about another person. To say such things (not to write them) about someone is to slander that person. The person saying such things is a slanderer.

- Slander may be a true report or a false accusation, but its effect is to cause others to think negatively of the person being slandered.
- To “slander” could be translated as to “speak against” or to “spread an evil report” or to “defame.”
- A slanderer is also called an “informer” or a “tale-bearer.”

(See also: [blasphemy](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 4:13
- 1 Timothy 3:11
- 2 Corinthians 6:8-10
- Mark 7:20-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1681, H1696, H1848, H3960, H5791, H7270, H7400, H8267, G09870, G09880, G12280, G14260, G26360, G26370, G30590, G30600

(Go back to: [Romans 1:30](#); [3:8](#); [14:16](#))

slaughter, slaughtered

Definition:

The term “slaughter” refers to killing a large number of animals or people, or to killing in a violent way. It can also refer to killing an animal for the purpose of eating it. The act of slaughtering is also called “slaughter.”

- When Abraham received three visitors at his tent in the desert, he ordered his servants to slaughter and cook a calf for his guests.
- The prophet Ezekiel prophesied that God would send his angel to slaughter all those who would not follow His word.
- 1 Samuel records a great slaughter in which 30,000 Israelites were killed by their enemies because of disobedience to God.
- “Weapons of slaughter” could be translated as “weapons for killing.”
- The expression “the slaughter was very great” could be translated as “a large number were killed” or “the number of deaths was very great” or “a terribly high number of people died.”
- Other ways to translate “slaughter” could include “kill” or “slay” or “killing.”

(See also: [angel](#), cow, [disobey](#), Ezekiel, [servant](#), slay)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 21:10-11
- Hebrews 7:1
- Isaiah 34:2
- Jeremiah 25:34

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2026, H2027, H2028, H2076, H2491, H2873, H2874, H2878, H4046, H4293, H4347, H4660, H5221, H6993, H7524, H7819, H7821, G28710, G49670, G49690

(Go back to: [Romans 8:36](#))

snare, ensnare, entrap, trap, trapped, pitfall

Definition:

The terms “snare” and “trap” refer to devices that are used to catch animals and keep them from escaping. To “snare” or “ensnare” is to catch with a snare, and to “trap” or “entrap” is to catch with a trap. In the Bible, these terms were also used figuratively to talk about how sin and temptation are like hidden traps that catch people and harm them.

- A “snare” is a loop of rope or wire that suddenly pulls tight when an animal steps into it, ensnaring its leg.
- A “trap” is usually made of metal or wood and has two parts that suddenly and powerfully close together, catching an animal so it can’t get away. Sometimes a trap can be a deep hole that has been made in order to get something to fall into it.
- Usually the snare or trap is hidden so that its prey is taken by surprise.
- The phrase “set a trap” means to get a trap ready to capture something.
- To “fall into a trap” refers to falling into a deep hole or pit that was dug and hidden in order to catch an animal.
- A person who starts sinning and cannot stop can be described as “ensnared by sin” in a figurative reference to the way an animal can be ensnared and cannot escape.
- Just as an animal is endangered and hurt by being in a trap, so a person caught in the trap of sin is being harmed by that sin and needs to be set free.

(See also: [free](#), prey, [Satan](#), tempt)

Bible References:

- Ecclesiastes 7:26
- Luke 21:34
- Mark 12:13
- Psalms 18:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2256, H3353, H3369, H3920, H3921, H4170, H4204, H4434, H4685, H4686, H4889, H5367, H5914, H6341, H6351, H6354, H6679, H6983, H7639, H7845, H8610, G00640, G23390, G23400, G38020, G38030, G39850, G46250

(Go back to: [Romans 11:9; 14:13](#))

Sodom

Definition:

Sodom was a city in the southern part of Canaan where Abraham's nephew Lot lived with his wife and children.

- The land of the region surrounding Sodom was very well watered and fertile, so Lot chose to live there when he first settled in Canaan.
- The exact location of this city is not known because Sodom and the nearby city of Gomorrah were completely destroyed by God as punishment for the evil things the people there were doing.
- The most significant sin that the people of Sodom and Gomorrah were practicing was homosexuality.

(See also: Canaan, [Gomorrah](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 10:19
- Genesis 13:12
- Matthew 10:15
- Matthew 11:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5467, G46700

(Go back to: [Romans 9:29](#))

soldier, warrior

Facts:

The terms “warrior” and “soldier” both can refer to someone who fights in an army. But there are also some differences.

- Usually the term “warrior” is a general, broad term to refer to a man who is gifted and courageous in battle.
- Yahweh is figuratively described as a “warrior.”
- The term “soldier” more specifically refers to someone who belongs to a certain army or who is fighting in a certain battle.
- Roman soldiers in Jerusalem were there to keep order and to carry out duties such as executing prisoners. They guarded Jesus before crucifying him and some were ordered to stand guard at his tomb.
- The translator should consider whether there are two words in the project language for “warrior” and “soldier” that also differ in meaning and use.

(See also: [courage](#), [crucify](#), [Rome](#), [tomb](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:5
- Acts 21:33
- Luke 3:14
- Luke 23:11
- Matthew 8:8-10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0352, H0510, H1368, H1416, H1995, H2389, H2428, H2502, H3715, H4421, H5971, H6518, H6635, H7273, H7916, G46860, G47530, G47540, G47570, G47580, G49610

(Go back to: [Romans 7:23](#))

son

Definition:

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their “son” for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An “adopted son” is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- The phrase “son of” can be used to identify a person’s father, mother, or an ancestor from some previous generation. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- The “sons of Israel” are usually the Israelite nation (after Genesis).
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah son of Zadok” and “Azariah son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah son of Amaziah” in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.
- The phrase “son of” can be used to associate the person with whatever person or concept comes next. The meaning is then greatly determined by context. It can be positive (eg. 2 Kings 2:16: “sons of ability”), negative (eg. 2 Samuel 7:10: “sons of wickedness”), denote membership in a group, express contempt by not naming the person (eg. “you sons of Zeruiah”), etc.

Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.

(See also: [descendant](#), [ancestor](#), [Son of God](#), [sons of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:15
- 1 Kings 13:2
- 1 Thessalonians 5:5
- Galatians 4:7
- Hosea 11:1
- Isaiah 9:6
- Matthew 3:17
- Matthew 5:9
- Matthew 8:12
- Nehemiah 10:28

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:8** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **4:9** God said, “I will give you a **son** from your own body.”
- **5:5** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s **son**.
- **5:8** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, “Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me.”

- **9:7** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **11:6** God killed every one of the Egyptians' firstborn **sons**.
- **18:1** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **26:4** "Is this the **son** of Joseph?" they said.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H4497, H5209, H5220, G38160, G50430, G52070

(Go back to: [Romans 8:14](#); [8:19](#); [9:9](#); [9:26](#); [9:27](#))

Son of God, the Son

Facts:

The term “Son of God” refers to Jesus, the Word of God, who came into the world as a human being. He is also often referred to as “the Son.”

- The Son of God has the same nature as God the Father, and is fully God.
- God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit are all of one essence.
- Unlike human sons, the Son of God has always existed.
- In the beginning, the Son of God was active in creating the world, along with the Father and the Holy Spirit.

Because Jesus is God’s Son, he loves and obeys his Father, and his Father loves him.

Translation Suggestions:

- For the term “Son of God,” it is best to translate “Son” with the same word the language would naturally use to refer to a human son.
- Make sure the word used to translate “son” fits with the word used to translate “father” and that these words are the most natural ones used to express a true father-son relationship in the project language.
- Using a capital letter to begin “Son” may help show that this is talking about God.
- The phrase “the Son” is a shortened form of “the Son of God,” especially when it occurs in the same context as “the Father.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [ancestor](#), [God](#), [God the Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [son](#), [sons of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:10
- Acts 9:20
- Colossians 1:17
- Galatians 2:20
- Hebrews 4:14
- John 3:18
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 11:27
- Revelation 2:18
- Romans 8:29

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:5** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the **Son of God.**”
- **24:9** God had told John, “The Holy Spirit will come down and rest on someone you baptize. That person is **the Son of God.**”
- **31:8** The disciples were amazed. They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, “Truly, you are **the Son of God.**”
- **37:5** Martha answered, “Yes, Master! I believe you are the Messiah, the **Son of God.**”
- **42:10** “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, **the Son**, and the Holy Spirit, and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **46:6** Right away, Saul began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the **Son of God!**”

- **49:9** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only **Son** so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0426, H0430, H1121, H1247, G23160, G52070

(Go back to: [Romans 1:3](#); [1:4](#); [1:9](#); [Notes](#); [5:10](#); [Notes](#); [8:3](#); [8:29](#); [8:32](#))

sons of God, children of God

Definition:

The term “sons of God” is a figurative expression that has several possible meanings.

- In the New Testament, the term “sons of God” refers to all believers in Jesus and is often translated as “children of God” since it includes both males and females.
- This use of the term speaks of a relationship with God that is like the relationship between a human son and his father, with all the privileges associated with being sons.
- Some people interpret the term “sons of God” that appears in Genesis 6 to mean fallen angels—evil spirits or demons. Others think it may refer to powerful political rulers or to the descendants of Seth.
- The title “Son of God” is a different term: it refers to Jesus, who is God’s only Son.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “sons of God” refers to believers in Jesus, it could be translated as “children of God.”
- In Genesis 6:2 and 4 ways to translate “sons of God” could include “angels,” “spirit beings,” “supernatural creatures,” or “demons.”
- Also see the link for “son.”

(See also: [angel](#), [demon](#), [son](#), [Son of God](#), [ruler](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 6:2
- Genesis 6:4
- Job 1:6
- Romans 8:14

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0430, H1121, G52070, G50430

(Go back to: [Romans 8:14](#); [8:19](#); [9:26](#))

soul, self, person

Definition:

The term “soul” can either refer generally to the non-physical part of a person or refer specifically to a person’s awareness of themselves as a person distinct from others.

- In the Bible, the terms “soul” and “spirit” may be two different concepts, or they may be two terms that refer to the same concept.
- When a person dies, his soul leaves his body.
- In contrast to the body, the “soul” can be spoken of as the part of a person that “relates to God.”
- The word “soul” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to the whole person. For example, “the soul who sins” means “the person who sins” and “my soul is tired” means “I am tired.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “soul” could also be translated as “inner self” or “inner person.”
- In some contexts, “my soul” could be translated as “I” or “me.”
- Usually the phrase “the soul” can be translated as “the person” or “he” or “him,” depending on the context.
- Some languages might only have one word for the concepts “soul” and “spirit.”
- In Hebrews 4:12, the figurative phrase “dividing soul and spirit” could mean “deeply discerning or exposing the inner person.”

(See also: [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:8
- Acts 2:27-28
- Acts 2:41
- Genesis 49:6
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- James 1:21
- Jeremiah 6:16-19
- Jonah 2:7-8
- Luke 1:47
- Matthew 22:37
- Psalms 19:7
- Revelation 20:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5082, H5315, H5397, G55900

(Go back to: [Romans 2:9](#); [13:1](#))

spirit, wind, breath

Definition:

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of a person which cannot be seen. In biblical times, the concept of a person’s spirit was closely related to the concept of a person’s breath. The term can also refer to wind, that is, the movement of air in the natural world.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, such as an evil spirit.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes things in the non-physical world.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.” Sometimes the Bible applies this term in the context of a person’s attitude or emotional state, such as “spirit of fear” and “spirit of jealousy.”
- Jesus said that God is a spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person, as in “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- The term “spiritual gift” could be translated as “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives.”
- Sometimes this term can be translated as “wind” when referring to the simple movement of air or “breath” when referring to air movement caused by living beings.

(See also: [soul](#), [Holy Spirit](#), demon, breath)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:5
- 1 John 4:3
- 1 Thessalonians 5:23
- Acts 5:9
- Colossians 1:9
- Ephesians 4:23
- Genesis 7:21-22
- Genesis 8:1
- Isaiah 4:4
- Mark 1:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 1:27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:3** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:7** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:5** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **48:7** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G41510, G41520, G41530, G53260, G54270

(Go back to: [Romans 1:9](#); [1:11](#); [7:14](#); [11:8](#); [12:11](#); [15:27](#))

stiff-necked, stubborn, stubbornness

Definition:

The term “stiff-necked” is an idiom used in the Bible to describe people who keep disobeying God and refuse to repent. Such people are very proud and will not submit to God’s authority.

- Similarly, the term “stubborn” describes a person who refuses to change his mind or actions even when urged to do so. Stubborn people will not listen to good advice or warnings that other people give them.
- The Old Testament described the Israelites as “stiff-necked” because they did not listen to the many messages from God’s prophets who urged them to repent and turn back to Yahweh.
- If a neck is “stiff” it does not bend easily. The project language may have a different idiom that communicates that a person is “unbending” in that he refuses to change his ways.
- Other ways to translate this term could include “pridefully stubborn” or “arrogant and unyielding” or “refusing to change.”

(See also: arrogant, [proud](#), [repent](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:51
- Deuteronomy 9:13-14
- Exodus 13:14-16
- Jeremiah 3:17

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0047, H3513, H5637, H6203, H6484, H7185, H7186, H7190, H8307, G04830, G46440, G46450

(Go back to: [Romans 9:18](#))

strength, strengthen, strong

Facts:

The term “strength” refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To “strengthen” someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

- “Strength” can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
- A person has “strength of will” if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
- One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his “strength” because God helped him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is being “strengthened,” people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term “strengthen” can be translated as “cause to be strong” or “make more powerful.”
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase “strengthen your brothers” could also be translated as “encourage your brothers” or “help your brothers to persevere.”
- The following examples show the meaning of these terms, and therefore how they can be translated, when they are included in longer expressions.
 - “puts strength on me like a belt” means “causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist.”
 - “in quietness and trust will be your strength” means “acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong.”
 - “will renew their strength” means “will become stronger again.”
 - “by my strength and by my wisdom I acted” means “I have done all this because I am so strong and wise.”
 - “strengthen the wall” means “reinforce the wall” or “rebuild the wall.”
 - “I will strengthen you” means “I will cause you to be strong”
 - “in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength” means “Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us.”
 - “the rock of your strength” means “the faithful one who makes you strong”
 - “with the saving strength of his right hand” means “he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand.”
 - “of little strength” means “not very strong” or “weak.”
 - “with all my strength” means “using my best efforts” or “strongly and completely.”

(See also: [faithful](#), [persevere](#), [right hand](#), [save](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 2 Peter 2:11
- Luke 10:27
- Psalm 21:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0193, H0202, H0353, H0360, H0386, H0410, H0553, H0556, H1369, H1396, H2220, H2388, H2391, H2392, H2393, H2428, H3027, H3028, H3559, H3581, H3811, H3955, H4581, H5326, H5331, H5582, H5797, H5807, H5810, H5934, H5975, H6106, H6109, H6697, H6965, H7292, H7307, H8003, H8443, H8632, H8633,

G04610, G09500, G14110, G14120, G17430, G17650, G18400, G19910, G24790, G24800, G29010, G29040,
G36190, G37560, G45990, G47320, G47330, G47410

(Go back to: [Romans 1:11](#); [4:20](#); [16:25](#))

strife, disputes, quarrel, arguing, conflict

Definition:

The term “strife” refers to physical or emotional conflict between people.

- A person who causes strife does things that result in strong disagreements between people and in hurt feelings.
- Sometimes the use of the word “strife” implies that strong emotions are involved, such as anger or bitterness.
- Other ways to translate this term could include “disagreement” or “dispute” or “conflict.”

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 3:3-5
- Habakkuk 1:3
- Philippians 1:17
- Proverbs 17:1
- Psalms 55:8-9
- Romans 13:13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1777, H1779, H4066, H4090, H4683, H4808, H7379, H7701, G04850, G20520, G20540, G30550, G31630, G53790

(Go back to: [Romans 1:29](#); [13:13](#))

stumble, reeling

Definition:

The term “stumble” means “almost fall” when walking or running. Usually it involves tripping over something.

- Figuratively, to “stumble” can mean to “sin” or to “falter” in believing.
- This term can also refer to faltering or showing weakness when fighting a battle or when being persecuted or punished.

Translation Suggestions

- In contexts where the term “stumble” means to physically trip over something, it should be translated with a term that means “almost fall” or “trip over.”
- This literal meaning could also be used in a figurative context, if it communicates the correct meaning in that context.
- For figurative uses where the literal meaning would not make sense in the project language, “stumble” could be translated as “sin” or “falter” or “stop believing” or “become weak,” depending on the context.
- Another way to translate this term could be, “stumble by sinning” or “stumble by not believing.”
- The phrase “made to stumble” could be translated as “caused to become weak” or “caused to falter.”

(See also: [believe](#), [persecute](#), [sin](#), [stumbling block](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 2:8
- Hosea 4:5
- Isaiah 31:3
- Matthew 11:4-6
- Matthew 18:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1762, H3782, H4383, H5062, H5063, H5307, H6328, H6761, H8058, G06790, G43480, G43500, G44170, G46240, G46250

(Go back to: [Romans 9:32](#); [9:33](#); [11:11](#); [14:21](#))

stumbling block, stone of stumbling

Definition:

The term “stumbling block” or “stone of stumbling” refers to a physical object that causes a person to trip and fall.

- A figurative stumbling block is anything that causes a person to fail in a moral or spiritual sense.
- Also figuratively, a “stumbling block” or “stone of stumbling” can be something that prevents someone from having faith in Jesus or that causes someone to not grow spiritually.
- Often it is sin that is like a stumbling block to oneself or to others.
- Sometimes God places a stumbling block in the way of people who are rebelling against him.

Translation Suggestions:

- If a language has a term for an object that triggers a trap, that word could be used to translate this term.
- This term could also be translated as “stone that causes stumbling” or “something that causes someone to not believe” or “obstacle that causes doubt” or “obstacle to faith” or “something that causes someone to sin.”

(See also: [stumble](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 1:23
- Galatians 5:11
- Matthew 5:29-30
- Matthew 16:23
- Romans 9:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4383, G30370, G43490, G46250

(Go back to: [Romans 9:32](#); [9:33](#); [11:9](#); [14:13](#); [14:20](#); [16:17](#))

subject, be subject to, subjection

Facts:

A person is the “subject” of another person if the second person rules over the first. To “be subject to” is to “obey” or to “submit to the authority of.”

- The phrase “put in subjection to” refers to causing people to be under the authority of a leader or ruler.
- To “subject someone to something” means to cause that person to experience something negative, such as punishment.
- Sometimes the term “subject” is used to refer to being the topic or focus of something, such as in, “you will be the subject of ridicule.”
- The phrase “be subject to” means the same as “be submissive to” or “submit to.”

(See also: [submit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 2:14-16
- 1 Kings 4:6
- 1 Peter 2:18-20
- Hebrews 2:5
- Proverbs 12:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1697, H3533, H3665, H4522, H5647, H5927, G03500, G13790, G13960, G17770, G36630, G52920, G52930

(Go back to: [Romans 8:7](#); [8:20](#); [13:1](#); [13:5](#))

submit, submission, in submission

Definition:

To “submit” usually means to voluntarily place oneself under the authority of a person or government.

- The Bible tells believers in Jesus to submit to God and other authorities in their lives.
- The instruction to “submit to one another” means to humbly accept correction and to focus on the needs of others rather than on our own needs.
- To “live in submission to” means to put oneself under the authority of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- The command “submit to” could be translated as “put yourself under the authority of” or “follow the leadership of” or “humbly honor and respect”
- The term “submission” could be translated as “obedience” or “the following of authority.”
- The phrase “live in submission to” could be translated as “be obedient to” or “put oneself under the authority of.”
- The phrase “be in submission” could be translated as “humbly accept authority.”

(See also: [subject](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 14:34-36
- 1 Peter 3:1
- Hebrews 13:15-17
- Luke 10:20

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3584, G52260, G52930

(Go back to: [Romans 10:3](#))

suffer, suffering

Definition:

The terms “suffer” and “suffering” refer to experiencing something very unpleasant, such as illness, pain, or other hardships.

- When people are persecuted or when they are sick, they suffer.
- Sometimes people suffer because of wrong things they have done; other times they suffer because of sin and disease in the world.
- Suffering can be physical, such as feeling pain or sickness. It can also be emotional, such as feeling fear, sadness, or loneliness.
- The phrase “suffer me” means “bear with me” or “hear me out” or “listen patiently.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “suffer” can be translated as “feel pain” or “endure difficulty” or “experience hardships” or “go through difficult and painful experiences.”
- Depending on the context, “suffering” could be translated as “extremely difficult circumstances” or “severe hardships” or “experiencing hardship” or “time of painful experiences.”
- The phrase “suffer thirst” could be translated as “experience thirst” or “suffer with thirst.”
- To “suffer violence” could also be translated as “undergo violence” or “be harmed by violent acts.”

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14-16
- 2 Thessalonians 1:3-5
- 2 Timothy 1:8
- Acts 7:11-13
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 6:6-8
- Matthew 16:21
- Psalms 22:24
- Revelation 1:9
- Romans 5:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:13** God said, “I have seen the **suffering** of my people.”
- **38:12** Jesus prayed three times, “My Father, if it is possible, please let me not have to drink this cup of **suffering**.”
- **42:3** He (Jesus) reminded them that the prophets said the Messiah would **suffer** and be killed, but would rise again on the third day.
- **42:7** He (Jesus) said, “It was written long ago that the Messiah would **suffer**, die, and rise from the dead on the third day.”
- **44:5** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to fulfill the prophecies that the Messiah would **suffer** and die.”
- **46:4** God said, “I have chosen him (Saul) to declare my name to the unsaved. I will show him how much he must **suffer** for my sake.”
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more **suffering**, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0943, H1741, H1934, H4531, H5142, H5375, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6041, H6064, H6090, H6770, H6869, H6887, H7661, G00910, G09410, G09710, G22100, G23460, G23470, G25520, G25530, G25610, G38040, G39580, G43100, G47780, G47770, G48410, G50040

(Go back to: [Romans 3:16](#); [8:17](#); [8:18](#))

sword, swordsmen

Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: James (brother of Jesus), John (the Baptist), [tongue](#), [word of God](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 12:2
- Genesis 27:40
- Genesis 34:25
- Luke 2:33-35
- Luke 21:24
- Matthew 10:34
- Matthew 26:55
- Revelation 1:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0019, H1300, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G31620, G45010

(Go back to: [Romans 8:35](#); [13:4](#))

tax, tribute, taxation, taxpayers, tax collector,

Definition:

The terms “tax” and “taxes” refer to money or goods that people pay to a government that is in authority over them. A “tax collector” was a government worker whose job was to receive money that people were required to pay the government in taxes.

- The amount of money that is paid as a tax is usually based on the value of an item or on how much a person’s property is worth.
- In the time of Jesus and the apostles, the Roman government required taxes from everyone living in the Roman empire, including the Jews.
- If taxes are not paid, the government can take legal action against a person to get the money that is owed.
- Joseph and Mary traveled to Bethlehem to be counted in the census held to tax everyone living in the Roman empire.
- The term “tax” could also be translated as “required payment” or “government money” or “temple money,” depending on the context.
- To “pay taxes” could also be translated as to “pay money to the government” or “receive money for the government” or “make the required payment.” To “collect taxes” could be translated as to “receive money for the government.”
- A “tax collector” is someone who works for the government and receives the money that people are required to pay it.
- The people who collected taxes for the Roman government would often demand more money from the people than the government required. The tax collectors would keep the extra amount for themselves.
- Because tax collectors cheated people in this way, the Jews considered them to be among the worst of sinners.
- The Jews also considered Jewish tax collectors to be traitors to their own people because they worked for the Roman government which was oppressing the Jewish people.
- The phrase, “tax collectors and sinners” was a common expression in the New Testament, showing how much the Jews despised tax collectors.

(See also: [Jew](#), [Rome](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- Luke 20:21-22
- Mark 2:13-14
- Matthew 9:7-9
- Numbers 31:28-29
- Romans 13:6-7
- Luke 3:12-13
- Luke 5:27-28
- Matthew 5:46-48
- Matthew 9:10-11
- Matthew 11:18-19
- Matthew 17:26-27
- Matthew 18:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

34:6 He said, “Two men went to the Temple to pray. One of them was a tax collector, and the other was a religious leader.” 34:7 “The religious leader prayed like this, ‘Thank you, God, that I am not a sinner like other men—such as robbers, unjust men, adulterers, or even like that tax collector.’” 34:9 “But the tax collector stood far away from the

religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, 'God, please be merciful to me because I am a sinner.'" 34:10 Then Jesus said, "I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector's prayer and declared him to be righteous." 35:1 One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other sinners who had gathered to hear him.

Word Data:

- Tax: Strong's: H2670, H4060, H4371, H4522, H4864, H6186, G13230, G27780, G50550, G54110
- Tax Collector: Strong's: H5065, H5674, G50570, G50580

(Go back to: [Romans 13:6](#); [13:7](#))

teach, teaching, untaught

Definition:

To “teach” someone is to tell him something he doesn’t already know. It can also mean to “provide information” in general, with no reference to the person who is learning. Usually the information is given in a formal or systematic way. A person’s “teaching” is or his “teachings” are what he has taught.

- A “teacher” is someone who teaches. The past action of “teach” is “taught.”
- When Jesus was teaching, he was explaining things about God and his kingdom.
- Jesus’ disciples called him “Teacher” as a respectful form of address for someone who taught people about God.
- The information that is being taught can be shown or spoken.
- The term “doctrine” refers to a set of teachings from God about himself as well as God’s instructions about how to live. This could also be translated as “teachings from God” or “what God teaches us.”
- The phrase “what you have been taught” could also be translated as “what these people have taught you” or “what God has taught you,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate “teach” could include “tell” or “explain” or “instruct.”
- Often this term can be translated as “teaching people about God.”

(See also: [instruct](#), [teacher](#), [word of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 1:3
- Acts 2:40-42
- John 7:14
- Luke 4:31
- Matthew 4:23
- Psalms 32:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0502, H2094, H2449, H3045, H3046, H3256, H3384, H3925, H3948, H7919, H8150, G13170, G13210, G13220, G20850, G26050, G27270, G31000, G23120, G25670, G38110, G49940

(Go back to: [Romans 2:21](#); [6:17](#); [12:7](#); [16:17](#))

teacher, Teacher

Definition:

A teacher is a person who gives other people new information. Teachers help others to obtain and use both knowledge and skills.

- In the Bible, the word “teacher” is used in a special sense to refer to someone who teaches about God.
- People who learn from a teacher are called “students” or “disciples.”
- In some Bible translations, this term is capitalized (“Teacher”) when it is used as a title for Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- The usual word for a teacher can be used to translate this term, unless that word is only used for a school teacher.
- Some cultures may have a special title that is used for religious teachers, such as “Sir” or “Rabbi” or “Preacher.”

(See also: [disciple](#), [preach](#))

Bible References:

- Ecclesiastes 1:12-15
- Ephesians 4:11-13
- Galatians 6:6-8
- Habakkuk 2:18
- James 3:2
- John 1:37-39
- Luke 6:40
- Matthew 12:38-40

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “**Teacher**, what must I do to inherit eternal life?”
- **28:1** One day a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good **Teacher**, what must I do to have eternal life?”
- **37:2** After the two days had passed, Jesus said to his disciples, “Let’s go back to Judea.” “But **Teacher**,” the disciples answered, “Just a short time ago the people there wanted to kill you!”
- **38:14** Judas came to Jesus and said, “Greetings, **Teacher**,” and kissed him.
- **49:3** Jesus was also a great **teacher**, and he spoke with authority because he is the Son of God.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3384, H3925, G13200, G25670, G35470, G55720

(Go back to: [Romans 2:20](#))

terror, terrorize, terrify, dread, panic

Definition:

The term “terror” refers to a feeling of extreme or intense fear. To “terrify” someone means to cause that person to feel very afraid.

- A “terror” is something or someone that causes great fear or dread. An example of a terror could be an attacking enemy army or a plague or disease that is widespread, killing many people.
- These terrors can be described as “terrifying.” This term could be translated as “fear-causing” or “terror-producing.”
- The judgment of God will someday cause terror in unrepentant people who reject his grace.
- The “terror of Yahweh” could be translated as “the terrifying presence of Yahweh” or “the dreaded judgment of Yahweh” or “when Yahweh causes great fear.”
- Ways to translate “terror” could also include “extreme fear” or “deep dread.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [fear](#), [judge](#), plague, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 2:25
- Exodus 14:10
- Luke 21:9
- Mark 6:48-50

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0367, H0926, H0928, H1091, H1161, H1204, H1205, H1763, H2111, H2113, H2189, H2731, H2847, H2851, H2865, H3372, H3707, H4032, H4172, H4288, H4637, H6184, H6206, H6343, H6973, G16290, G16300, G22580, G44220, G44260, G54010

(Go back to: [Romans 13:3](#))

testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence

Definition:

When a person gives “testimony” he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To “testify” is to give “testimony.”

- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To “witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as to “show them what is true” or to “prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”
- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person seeing it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- To “witness to” could be translated as to “tell what was seen” or to “testify” or to “state what happened.”
- To “witness” something could be translated as to “see something” or to “experience something happen.”

(See also: ark of the covenant, [guilt](#), [judge](#), [prophet](#), [testimony](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 31:28
- Micah 6:3
- Matthew 26:60

- Mark 1:44
- John 1:7
- John 3:33
- Acts 4:32-33
- Acts 7:44
- Acts 13:31
- Romans 1:9
- 1 Thessalonians 2:10-12
- 1 Timothy 5:19-20
- 2 Timothy 1:8
- 2 Peter 1:16-18
- 1 John 5:6-8
- 3 John 1:12
- Revelation 12:11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:2** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.
- **39:4** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, "We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?"
- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things."
- **43:7** "We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G02670, G12630, G19570, G26490, G31400, G31410, G31420, G31430, G31440, G43030, G48280, G49010, G55750, G55760, G55770, G60200

(Go back to: [Romans 1:9](#); [2:15](#); [3:21](#); [8:16](#); [9:1](#); [10:2](#))

time, untimely, date

Facts:

In the Bible the term “time” was often used figuratively to refer to a specific season or period of time when certain events took place. It has a meaning similar to “age” or “epoch” or “season.”

- “Time” can mean “occasion” in a phrase like “third time.” The phrase “many times” can mean “on many occasions.”
- Depending on the context, the term “time” could be translated as, “season” or “time period” or “moment” or “event” or “occurrence.”
- The phrase “times and seasons” is a figurative expression which states the same idea twice. This could also be translated as “certain events happening in certain time periods.” (See: [doublet](#))

(See also: [age](#), [tribulation](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 1:7
- Daniel 12:1-2
- Mark 11:11
- Matthew 8:29
- Psalms 68:28-29
- Revelation 14:15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0116, H0227, H0310, H1697, H1755, H2165, H2166, H2233, H2465, H3027, H3117, H3118, H3119, H3259, H3427, H3967, H4150, H4279, H4489, H4557, H5331, H5703, H5732, H5750, H5769, H6235, H6256, H6440, H6471, H6635, H6924, H7105, H7138, H7223, H7272, H7281, H7637, H7651, H7655, H7659, H7674, H7992, H8027, H8032, H8138, H8145, H8462, H8543, G07440, G05300, G10740, G12080, G14410, G15970, G16260, G19090, G20340, G21190, G21210, G22350, G22500, G25400, G34610, G35680, G37640, G38190, G39560, G39990, G41780, G41810, G41830, G42180, G42870, G43400, G44550, G51190, G51510, G53050, G55500, G55510, G56100

(Go back to: [Romans 3:26](#); [5:6](#); [6:21](#); [7:1](#); [8:18](#); [9:9](#); [11:5](#); [13:11](#); [16:25](#))

Timothy

Facts:

Timothy was a young man from Lystra. He later joined Paul on several missionary trips and helped shepherd new communities of believers.

- Timothy's father was a Greek, but both his grandmother Lois and his mother Eunice were Jews and believers in Christ.
- The elders and Paul formally appointed Timothy for the ministry by placing their hands on him and praying for him.
- Two books in the New Testament (1 Timothy and 2 Timothy) are letters written by Paul that provide guidance to Timothy as a young leader of local churches.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [appoint](#), [believe](#), [church](#), [Greek](#), [minister](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 3:2
- 1 Timothy 1:2
- Acts 16:3
- Colossians 1:1
- Philemon 1:1
- Philippians 1:1
- Philippians 2:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: G50950

(Go back to: [Romans 16:21](#))

to minister, ministry

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “ministry” refers to serving others by teaching them about God and caring for their spiritual needs.

- In the Old Testament, the priests would “minister” to God in the temple by offering sacrifices to him.
- Their “ministry” also included taking care of the temple and offering prayers to God on behalf of the people.
- The job of “ministering” to people can include serving them spiritually by teaching them about God.
- It can also refer to serving people in physical ways, such as caring for the sick and providing food for the poor.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of ministering to people, to “minister” could also be translated as to “serve” or to “care for” or to “meet the needs of.”
- When referring to ministering in the temple, the term “minister” could be translated as “serve God in the temple” or “offer sacrifices to God for the people.”
- In the context of ministering to God, this could be translated as to “serve” or to “work for God.”
- The phrase “ministered to” could also be translated as “took care of” or “provided for” or “helped.”

(See also: [serve](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 20:23-26
- Acts 6:4
- Acts 21:17-19

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6399, H8120, H8334, H8335, G12470, G12480, G12490, G20230, G20380, G24180, G30080, G30090, G30100, G30110, G39300, G52560, G52570, G55240

(Go back to: [Romans 11:13](#); [15:16](#); [15:25](#); [15:27](#))

tongue, language

Definition:

The term “tongue” refers to the organ inside a person’s mouth that is used to speak. The term is often used figuratively to mean “language” or “speaking.” There also several other figurative meanings as well.

- In the Bible, the most common figurative meaning for this term is “language” or “speech.”
- Sometimes “tongue” may refer to a human language spoken by a certain people group.
- Other times it refers to a supernatural language that the Holy Spirit gives believers in Christ as one of the “gifts of the Spirit.”
- In the book of Acts, the expression “tongues” of fire refers to “flames” of fire, presumably shaped like tongues.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “tongue” can be translated as “language” or “supernatural language.” If it is not clear which one it is referring to, it is better to translate it as “language.”
- When referring to fire, this term could be translated as “flames.”
- The expression “my tongue rejoices” could be translated as “I rejoice and praise God” or “I am joyfully praising God.”
- The phrase, “tongue that lies” could be translated as “person who tell lies” or “people who lie.”
- Phrases such as “with their tongues” could be translated as “with what they say” or “by their words.”

(See also: [gift](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [joy](#), [praise](#), [rejoice](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:10
- 1 John 3:18
- 2 Samuel 23:2
- Acts 2:26
- Ezekiel 36:3
- Philippians 2:11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3956, G11000, G12580, G20840

(Go back to: [Romans 3:13](#); [14:11](#))

transgress, transgression

Definition:

The term “transgress” means to cross a line or to violate a boundary. The term is often used figuratively, meaning to break a command, rule, or moral code.

- This term is very similar to the word “trespass,” but is generally used more often to describe violations against God than against other people.
- To “transgress” can also be described as to “cross a line,” that is, to go beyond a limit or boundary that has been set for the good of the person and others.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “transgress” could be translated as to “sin” or to “disobey” or to “rebel.”
- If a verse or passage uses two terms that mean “sin” or “transgress” or “trespass,” it is important, if possible, to use different ways to translate these terms. When the Bible uses two or more terms with similar meanings in the same context, usually its purpose is to emphasize what is being said or to show its importance.

(See: [parallelism](#))

(See also: [disobey](#), [sin](#), [trespass](#), iniquity)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 4:6
- Daniel 9:24-25
- Galatians 3:19-20
- Galatians 6:1-2
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Psalm 32:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0898, H4603, H4604, H6586, H6588, G04580, G04590, G38450, G38470, G38480, G39280

(Go back to: [Romans 2:23](#); [2:25](#); [2:27](#); [4:15](#); [5:14](#); [11:12](#))

trespass

Definition:

The term “trespass” means to cross a line or to violate a boundary. This term is often used figuratively, meaning to break a law or to violate the rights of another person.

- This term is very similar to the word “transgression,” but is generally used more often to describe violations against other people than against God.
- A trespass can be a violation of a moral law or a civil law.
- A trespass can also be a sin committed against another person.
- This term is related to the terms “sin” and “transgress,” especially as it relates to disobeying God. All sins are trespasses against God.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to “trespass against” could be translated as to “sin against” or to “break the rule.”
- Some languages may have an expression like “cross the line” that could be used to translate “trespass.”
- Consider how this term fits with the meaning of the surrounding Bible text and compare it to other terms that have a similar meaning, such as “transgress” and “sin.”

(See also: [disobey](#), iniquity, [sin](#), [transgress](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 25:28
- 2 Chronicles 26:16-18
- Colossians 2:13
- Ephesians 2:1
- Ezekiel 15:7-8
- Romans 5:17
- Romans 5:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0816, H0817, H0819, H2398, H4603, H4604, H6586, H6588, G02640, G39000

(Go back to: [Romans 4:25](#); [5:15](#); [5:16](#); [5:17](#); [5:18](#); [5:20](#); [11:11](#))

tribe, tribal, tribesmen

Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: [clan](#), [nation](#), [people group](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:19
- 2 Kings 17:16-18
- Genesis 25:16
- Genesis 49:17
- Luke 2:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0523, H4294, H7625, H7626, G14290, G54430

(Go back to: [Romans 11:1](#))

tribulation, distresses, trouble

Definition:

The term “tribulation” refers to a time of hardship, suffering, and distress.

- It is explained in the New Testament that Christians will endure times of persecution and other kinds of tribulation because many people in this world are opposed to Jesus’ teachings.
- The term “tribulation” could also be translated as “time of great suffering” or “deep distress” or “severe difficulties.”

(See also: [earth](#), [teach](#), [wrath](#))

Bible References:

- Mark 4:17
- Mark 13:19
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Matthew 24:9
- Matthew 24:29
- Romans 2:9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6869, G23470, G44230

(Go back to: [Romans 2:9](#); [5:3](#); [8:35](#); [12:12](#))

trouble, disturb, stir up, distress, hardship, calamity

Definition:

A “trouble” is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To “trouble” someone means to “bother” that person or to cause him distress. To be “troubled” means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of “trouble” also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “trouble” or “troubles” could also be translated as “danger” or “painful things that happen” or “persecution” or “difficult experiences” or “distress.”
- The term “troubled” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “undergoing distress” or “feeling terrible distress” or “worried” or “anxious” or “distressed” or “terrified” or “disturbed.”
- “Don’t trouble her” could also be translated as “don’t bother her” or “don’t criticize her.”
- The phrase “day of trouble” or “times of trouble” could also be translated as “when you experience distress” or “when difficult things happen to you” or “when God causes distressing things to happen.”
- Ways to translate “make trouble” or “bring trouble” could include “cause distressing things to happen” or “cause difficulties” or “make them experience very difficult things.”

(See also: afflict, [persecute](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:19
- Luke 24:38
- Matthew 24:6
- Matthew 26:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0205, H0926, H0927, H1204, H1607, H1644, H1804, H2000, H4103, H5916, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6470, H6696, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7264, H7267, H7451, H7489, H8513, G03870, G16130, G17760, G23460, G23470, G23500, G23600, G28730, G36360, G39260, G39300, G39860, G44230, G46600, G50150, G51820

(Go back to: [Romans 2:9](#))

true, truth

Definition:

The term “truth” refers to facts, events, and statements that correspond with reality. True facts describe the universe as it really exists. True events are events that actually happened. True statements are statements that are not false according to the real world.

- “True” things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- “Truth” means understandings, beliefs, facts, or statements that are true.
- To say that a prophecy “came true” or “will come true” mean that it actually happened as predicted or that it will happen that way.
- In the Bible the concept of “truth” includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God’s truth in the words that he spoke.
- The Bible is truth. It teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term “true” could also be translated by “real” or “factual” or “correct” or “right” or “certain” or “genuine.”
- Ways to translate the term “truth” could include “what is true” or “fact” or “certainty” or “principle.”
- The expression “come true” could also be translated as “actually happen” or “be fulfilled” or “happen as predicted.”
- The expression “tell the truth” or “speak the truth” could also be translated as “say what is true” or “tell what really happened” or “say things that are reliable.”
- To “accept the truth” could be translated as “believe what is true about God.”
- In an expression such as “worship God in spirit and in truth,” the expression “in truth” could also be translated by “faithfully obeying what God has taught us.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#), [fulfill](#), [obey](#), [prophet](#), [understand](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:6-8
- 1 John 1:5-7
- 1 John 2:8
- 3 John 1:8
- Acts 26:24-26
- Colossians 1:6
- Genesis 47:29-31
- James 1:18
- James 3:14
- James 5:19
- Jeremiah 4:2
- John 1:9
- John 1:16-18
- John 1:51
- John 3:31-33
- Joshua 7:19-21
- Lamentations 5:19-22
- Matthew 8:10
- Matthew 12:17
- Psalm 26:1-3

- Revelation 1:19-20
- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:4** The snake responded to the woman, "That is not **true**! You will not die."
- **14:6** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, "It is *true* that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the *true* God.
- **31:8** They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God."
- **39:10** "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth**?"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0199, H0389, H0403, H0529, H0530, H0543, H0544, H0551, H0571, H0935, H3321, H3330, H6237, H6656, H6965, H7187, H7189, G02250, G02260, G02270, G02280, G02300, G11030, G33030, G34830, G36890, G41030, G41370

(Go back to: [Romans 1:18](#); [1:25](#); [2:2](#); [2:8](#); [2:20](#); [3:4](#); [3:7](#); [9:1](#); [15:8](#))

trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness

Definition:

To “trust” something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called “trust.” A “trustworthy” person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of “trustworthiness.”

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: [believe](#), [confidence](#), [faith](#), [faithful](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:22-24
- 1 Timothy 4:9
- Hosea 10:12-13
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Nehemiah 13:13
- Psalm 31:5
- Titus 3:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **14:15** Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **17:2** David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **34:6** Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0539, H0982, H1556, H2620, H2622, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G16790, G38720, G39820, G40060, G41000, G42760

(Go back to: [Romans 4:17](#))

turn, turn away, turn back, return

Definition:

To “turn” means to physically change direction or to cause something else to change direction.

- The term “turn” can also mean “turn around” to look behind or to face a different direction.
- To “turn back” or “turn away” means to “go back” or “go away” or “cause to go away.”
- To “turn away from” can mean to “stop” doing something or to reject someone.
- To “turn toward” someone means to look directly at that person.
- To “turn and leave” or “turn his back to leave” means to “go away.”
- To “turn back to” means to “start doing something again.”
- To “turn away from” means to “stop doing something.”
- To “turn aside” means to change direction, it often means to either stop doing right and start doing evil or the opposite.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “turn” can be translated as “change direction” or “go” or “move.”
- In some contexts, “turn” could be translated as “cause” (someone) to do something. To “turn (someone) away from” could be translated as “cause (someone) to go away” or “cause (someone) to stop.”
- The phrase “turn away from God” could be translated as “stop worshiping God.”
- The phrase “turn back to God” could be translated as “start worshiping God again.”
- When enemies “turn back,” it means they “retreat.” To “turn back the enemy” means to “cause the enemy to retreat.”
- Used figuratively, when Israel “turned to” false gods, they “started to worship” them. When they “turned away” from idols, they “stopped worshiping” them.
- When God “turned away from” his rebellious people, he “stopped protecting” or “stopped helping” them.
- The phrase “turn the hearts of the fathers to their children” could be translated as “cause fathers to care for their children again.”
- The expression “turn my honor into shame” could be translated as “cause my honor to become shame” or “dishonor me so that I am shamed” or “shame me (by doing what is evil) so that people no longer honor me.”
- “I will turn your cities into ruin” could be translated as “I will cause your cities to be destroyed” or “I will cause enemies to destroy your cities.”
- The phrase “turn into” could be translated as “become.” When Moses’ rod “turned into” a snake, it “became” a snake. It could also be translated as “changed into.”

(See also: [false god](#), leprosy, worship)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:2
- Acts 7:42
- Acts 11:21
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 1:17
- Malachi 4:6
- Revelation 11:6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0541, H2015, H2017, H2186, H2559, H3943, H4672, H4740, H4878, H5186, H5253, H5414, H5437, H5472, H5493, H5528, H5627, H5753, H6437, H7227, H7725, H7734, H7750, H7760, H7847, H8159, H8447, G03440, G03870, G04020, G06540, G06650, G08680, G12940, G15780, G16120, G16240, G19940, G31790, G33130, G33290, G33440, G33460, G47620, G51570, G52900

(Go back to: [Romans 3:12](#); [16:17](#))

understand, understanding, thinking

Definition:

The term “understand” means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

- The term “understanding” can refer to “knowledge” or “wisdom” or realizing how to do something.
- To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
- While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
- Depending on the context, the term “understand” could be translated by “know” or “believe” or “comprehend” or “know what (something) means.”
- Often the term “understanding” can be translated by “knowledge” or “wisdom” or “insight.”

(See also: [believe](#), [know](#), [wise](#))

Bible References:

- Job 34:16-17
- Luke 2:47
- Luke 8:10
- Matthew 13:12
- Matthew 13:14
- Proverbs 3:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0995, H0998, H0999, H1847, H2940, H3045, H3820, H3824, H4486, H7200, H7919, H7922, H7924, H8085, H8394, G00500, G01450, G01910, G08010, G10970, G11080, G12710, G19210, G19220, G19870, G19900, G26570, G35390, G35630, G49070, G49080, G49200, G54240, G54280, G54290

(Go back to: [Romans 1:20](#); [1:32](#); [3:11](#); [7:15](#); [15:21](#))

vain, vanity

Definition:

The terms “vain” and “vanity” describe something that is useless or extremely temporary.

- In the Old Testament, idols are sometimes described as “vain” things that are worthless and cannot do anything.
- If something is done “in vain,” it means that the effort or action did not accomplish what was intended. The phrase “in vain” might be translated in various ways, including: “without result;” “with no result;” “for no reason;” “for no purpose,” or “with no purpose.”
- Depending on the context, the term “vain” could be translated as “empty,” “useless,” “hopeless,” “worthless,” “meaningless,” etc.

(See also: [false god](#), [worthy](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:1-2
- 1 Samuel 25:21-22
- 2 Peter 2:18
- Isaiah 45:19
- Jeremiah 2:29-31
- Matthew 15:9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1891, H1892, H2600, H7307, H7385, H7387, H7723, H8193, H8267, H8414, G09450, G15000, G27560, G27580, G27610, G31510, G31520, G31530, G31550

(Go back to: [Romans 1:21](#); [8:20](#); [13:4](#))

voice

Definition:

The term “voice” refers to audible sound that a person makes when speaking or communicating. In the Bible, the term can be used figuratively to refer to the concepts of sound, communication, and/or obedience.

Translation Suggestions

- The expression “to hear someone’s voice” can mean either “to hear someone speaking” or “to heed what someone says.”
- The Bible describes God as “speaking” and having a “voice,” even though God doesn’t have a physical body in the same way a human being does.
- The term “voice” sometimes implies the presence of a person, as in this statement: “A voice is heard in the desert saying, ‘Prepare the way of the Lord.’” This could be translated as “A person is heard calling out in the desert....” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- However, sometimes the word “voice” is used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the heavens have a “voice” that reaches the whole earth. This means that the objects in the sky communicate something to human beings about God the Creator. (See: [metaphor](#))

(See also: [call](#), [proclaim](#), [splendor](#).)

Bible References:

- John 5:36-38
- Luke 1:42
- Luke 9:35
- Matthew 3:17
- Matthew 12:19

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6963, H7032, H7445, H8193, G29060, G54560

(Go back to: [Romans 10:18](#))

walk, walked

Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God’s commands or God’s ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [honor](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Kings 2:4
- Colossians 2:7
- Galatians 5:25
- Genesis 17:1
- Isaiah 2:5
- Jeremiah 13:10
- Micah 4:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1869, H1980, H1981, H3212, H4108, G17040, G40430, G41980, G47480

(Go back to: [Romans 4:12](#); [6:4](#); [8:4](#); [13:13](#); [14:15](#))

will of God

Definition:

The “will of God” refers to God’s desires and plans.

- God’s will especially relates to his interactions with people and how he wants people to respond to him.
- It also refers to his plans or desires for the rest of his creation.
- The term to “will” means to “determine” or to “desire.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The “will of God” could also be translated as “what God desires” or “what God has planned” or “God’s purpose” or “what is pleasing to God.”

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:15-17
- 1 Thessalonians 4:3-6
- Colossians 4:12-14
- Ephesians 1:1-2
- John 5:30-32
- Mark 3:33-35
- Matthew 6:8-10
- Psalms 103:21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6310, H6634, H7522, G10120, G10130, G23070, G23080, G23090, G25960

(Go back to: [Romans 1:10](#); [2:18](#); [9:19](#); [12:2](#); [15:32](#))

wine, wineskin, new wine

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also referred to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: grape, vine, vineyard, winepress)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 5:23
- Genesis 9:21
- Genesis 49:12
- John 2:3-5
- John 2:10
- Matthew 9:17
- Matthew 11:18

smashed

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2561, H2562, H3196, H4469, H4997, H5435, H6025, H6071, H8492, G10980, G36310, G38200, G39430

(Go back to: [Romans 14:21](#))

wise, wisdom

Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: [obey](#), [fruit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 6:3
- Colossians 3:15-17
- Exodus 31:6
- Genesis 3:6
- Isaiah 19:12
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Matthew 7:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:5** She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- **18:1** When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.
- **23:9** Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- **45:1** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0998, H1350, H2445, H2449, H2450, H2451, H2452, H2454, H2942, H3820, H3823, H6195, H6493, H6912, H7535, H7919, H7922, H8454, G46780, G46790, G46800, G49200, G54280, G54290, G54300

(Go back to: [Romans 1:14](#); [1:22](#); [11:25](#); [11:33](#); [12:16](#); [16:19](#); [16:27](#))

womb

Definition:

The term “womb” refers to where a baby grows inside its mother.

- This is an older term that is sometimes used in order to be polite and less direct. (See: [euphemism](#))
- A more modern term for womb is “uterus.”
- Some languages use a word like “belly” to refer to a woman’s womb or uterus.
- Use a word for this in the project language that is well-known, natural, and acceptable.

Bible References:

- Genesis 25:23
- Genesis 25:24-26
- Genesis 38:27-28
- Genesis 49:25
- Luke 2:21
- Luke 11:27
- Luke 23:29
- Matthew 19:12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0990, H4578, H7356, H7358, G10640, G28360, G33880

(Go back to: [Romans 4:19](#))

word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “word of God” refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called “the Word of God.”

- The term “scriptures” means “writings.” It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures, which is the Old Testament. These writings were God’s message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people could still read it.
- The related terms “word of Yahweh” and “word of the Lord” often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply “the word” or “my word” or “your word” (when talking about God’s word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called “the Word” and “the Word of God.” These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

The term “word of truth” is another way of referring to “God’s word,” which is his message or teaching. It does not refer to just one word.

- God’s word of truth includes everything that God has taught people about himself, his creation, and his plan of salvation through Jesus.
- This term emphasizes the fact that what God has told us is true, faithful, and real.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “the message of Yahweh” or “God’s message” or “the teachings from God.”
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say “God’s words” or “the words of Yahweh.”
- The expression “the word of Yahweh came” is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words.”
- The term “scripture” or “scriptures” could be translated as “the writings” or “the written message from God.” This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term “word.”
- When “word” occurs alone and it refers to God’s word, it could be translated as “the message” or “God’s word” or “the teachings.” Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.
- When the Bible refers to Jesus as “the Word,” this term could be translated as “the Message” or “the Truth.”
- “Word of truth” could be translated as “God’s true message” or “God’s word, which is true.”
- It is important for the translation of this term to include the meaning of being true.

(See also: [prophet](#), [true](#), Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:1
- 1 Kings 13:1
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 8:11
- John 5:39
- Acts 6:2
- Acts 12:24
- Romans 1:2

- 2 Corinthians 6:7
- Ephesians 1:13
- 2 Timothy 3:16
- James 1:18
- James 2:8-9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:7** In **God's word** he commands his people, "Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him."
- **33:6** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the **word of God**."
- **42:3** Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
- **42:7** Jesus said, "I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled." Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word**.
- **45:10** Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- **48:12** But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God**.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0561, H0565, H1697, H3068, G30560, G44870

(Go back to: [Romans 1:2](#); [4:3](#); [9:6](#); [9:17](#); [10:11](#); [11:2](#); [15:4](#); [16:26](#))

work, works, deeds

Definition:

The term “work” refers generally either to the action of expending effort in order to accomplish something, or to the result of that action. The term “works” refers generally to actions as a whole (that is, things that have been done or that need to be done).

- In the Bible, these terms are commonly used both in reference to God and humans.
- When used in reference to God, the term “work” in the Bible often refers to God’s action of creating the universe or saving his people (either from enemies, from sin, or both).
- God’s works refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place.
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “works” could be “deeds” or “actions” or “things that are done.”
- God’s “works” or “deeds” or the “work of his hands” could also be translated as “miracles” or “mighty acts” or “things that God does.”
- The expression “the work of God” could be translated as “the things that God is doing” or “the miracles God does” or “everything that God has accomplished.”
- The term “work” can just be the singular of “works” as in “every good work” or “every good deed.”
- When work is done for God or others, it can be translated as “service” or “ministry.”

(See also: [fruit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [miracle](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 3:12
- Acts 2:8-11
- Daniel 4:37
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Galatians 2:15-16
- James 2:17
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Micah 2:7
- Romans 3:28
- Titus 3:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4399, H4566, H4567, H4611, H4659, H5949, G20410

(Go back to: [Romans 2:6](#); [2:7](#); [2:15](#); [3:20](#); [3:27](#); [3:28](#); [4:2](#); [4:6](#); [9:12](#); [9:32](#); [11:6](#); [13:3](#); [13:12](#); [14:20](#); [15:18](#))

world, worldly

Definition:

The term “world” usually refers to the part of the universe where people live: the earth. The term “worldly” describes the evil values and behaviors of people living in this world.

- In its most general sense, the term “world” refers to the heavens and the earth, as well as everything in them.
- In many contexts, “world” actually means “people in the world.”
- Sometimes it is implied that this refers to the evil people on earth or the people who do not obey God.
- The apostles also used “world” to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. This can include self-righteous religious practices which are based on human efforts.
- People and things characterized by these values are said to be “worldly.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “world” could also be translated as “universe” or “people of this world” or “corrupt things in the world” or “evil attitudes of people in the world.”
- The phrase “all the world” often means “many people” and refers to the people living in a certain region. For example, “all the world came to Egypt” could be translated as “many people from the surrounding countries came to Egypt” or “people from all the countries surrounding Egypt came there.”
- Another way to translate “all the world went to their hometown to be registered in the Roman census” would be “many of the people living in regions ruled by the Roman empire went...”
- Depending on the context, the term “worldly” could be translated as “evil” or “sinful” or “selfish” or “ungodly” or “corrupt” or “influenced by the corrupt values of people in this world.”
- The phrase “saying these things in the world” can be translated as “saying these things to the people of the world.”
- In other contexts, “in the world” could also be translated as “living among the people of the world” or “living among ungodly people.”

(See also: [corrupt](#), [heaven](#), [Rome](#), [godly](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:15
- 1 John 4:5
- 1 John 5:5
- John 1:29
- Matthew 13:36-39

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0776, H2309, H2465, H5769, H8398, G10930, G28860, G28890, G36250

(Go back to: [Romans 1:8](#); [1:20](#); [3:6](#); [3:19](#); [4:13](#); [5:12](#); [5:13](#); [10:18](#); [11:12](#); [11:15](#))

worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless

Definition:

The term “worthy” describes someone or something that deserves respect or honor. To “have worth” means to be valuable or important. The term “worthless” means to not have any value.

- Being worthy is related to being valuable or having importance
- To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any special notice.
- To not feel worthy means to feel less important than someone else or to not feel deserving of being treated with honor or kindness.
- The term “unworthy” and the term “worthless” have related, but different meanings. To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any honor or recognition. To be “worthless” means to not have any purpose or value.

Translation Suggestions:

- “Worthy” could be translated as “deserving” or “important” or “valuable.”
- The word “worth” could be translated as “value” or “importance.”
- The phrase to “have worth” could also be translated as to “be valuable” or to “be important.”
- The phrase “is worth more than” could be translated as “is more valuable than.”
- Depending on the context, the term, “unworthy” could also be translated as “unimportant” or “dishonorable” or “undeserving.”
- The term “worthless” could be translated as “with no value” or “with no purpose” or “worth nothing.”

(See also: [honor](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 22:4
- 2 Thessalonians 1:11-12
- Acts 13:25
- Acts 25:25-27
- Acts 26:31
- Colossians 1:9-10
- Jeremiah 8:19
- Mark 1:7
- Matthew 3:10-12
- Philippians 1:25-27

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0117, H0639, H1929, H3644, H4242, H4373, H4392, H4592, H4941, H6994, H7386, H7939, G00960, G05140, G05150, G05160, G24250, G26610, G27350

(Go back to: [Romans 1:32](#); [16:2](#))

wrath, fury

Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. The Bible describes both people and God as experiencing intense anger. When speaking about God's "wrath," make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage (which might be true of a human person).

- In the Bible, "wrath" often refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- God's wrath is just and holy. When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful human rage.

(See also: [judge](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 1:8-10
- 1 Timothy 2:8-10
- Luke 3:7
- Luke 21:23
- Matthew 3:7
- Revelation 14:10
- Romans 1:18
- Romans 5:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0639, H2197, H2528, H2534, H2740, H3707, H3708, H5678, H7107, H7109, H7110, H7265, H7267, G23720, G37090, G39490, G39500

(Go back to: [Romans 1:18](#); [2:5](#); [2:8](#); [3:5](#); [4:15](#); [5:9](#); [9:22](#); [12:19](#); [13:4](#); [13:5](#))

wrong, wronged, wrongdoer, mistreat, hurt, hurtful

Definition:

To “wrong” someone means to treat that person unjustly and dishonestly.

- The term “mistreat” means to act badly or roughly toward someone, causing physical or emotional harm to that person.
- The term “hurt” is more general and means to “cause someone harm in some way.” It often has the meaning of “physically injure.”
- Depending on the context, these terms could also be translated as “do wrong to” or “treat unjustly” or “cause harm to” or “treat in a harmful way” or “injure.”

Bible References:

- Acts 7:26
- Exodus 22:21
- Genesis 16:5
- Luke 6:28
- Matthew 20:13-14
- Psalms 71:13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0205, H0816, H2248, H2250, H2255, H2257, H2398, H2554, H2555, H3238, H3637, H4834, H5062, H5142, H5230, H5627, H5753, H5766, H5791, H5792, H5916, H6031, H6087, H6127, H6231, H6485, H6565, H6586, H7451, H7489, H7563, H7665, H7667, H7686, H8133, H8267, H8295, G00910, G00920, G00930, G00950, G02640, G08240, G09830, G09840, G15360, G16260, G16510, G17270, G19080, G25560, G25580, G25590, G26070, G30760, G30770, G37620, G41220, G51950, G51960

(Go back to: [Romans 14:20](#))

Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host of heaven, host of the heavens, Lord of hosts

Definition:

The terms “Yahweh of hosts” and “God of hosts” are titles that express God’s authority over the thousands of angels who obey him.

- The term “host” or “hosts” is a word that refers to a large number of something, such as an army of people or the massive number of stars. It can also refer to all the many spirit beings, including evil spirits. The context makes it clear what is being referred to.
- Phrases similar to “host of the heavens” refer to all the stars, planets and other heavenly bodies.
- In the New Testament, the phrase, “Lord of hosts” means the same as “Yahweh of hosts” but it cannot be translated that way since the Hebrew word “Yahweh” is not used in the New Testament.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “Yahweh of hosts” could include, “Yahweh, who rules all the angels” or “Yahweh, the ruler over armies of angels” or “Yahweh, the ruler of all creation.”
- The phrase “of hosts” in the terms “God of hosts” and “Lord of hosts” would be translated the same way as in the phrase “Yahweh of hosts” above.
- Certain churches do not accept the literal term “Yahweh” and prefer to use the capitalized word, “LORD” instead, following the tradition of many Bible versions. For these churches, a translation of the term “LORD of hosts” would be used in the Old Testament for “Yahweh of hosts.”

(See also: [angel](#), [authority](#), [God](#), [lord](#), [Lord](#), [Lord Yahweh Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- Zechariah 13:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0430, H3068, H6635, G29620, G45190

(Go back to: [Romans 9:29](#))

year

Definition:

When used literally, the term “year” in the Bible refers to a period of time lasting 354 days. This is according to the lunar calendar system which is based on the time it takes for the moon to go around the earth.

- A year in the modern-day solar calendar lasts 365 days divided into twelve months, based on the amount of time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun.
- In both calendar systems a year has twelve months. But an extra thirteenth month is sometimes added to the year in the lunar calendar to make up for the fact that a lunar year is eleven days less than a solar year. This helps keep the two calendars more in line with each other.
- In the Bible, the term “year” is also used in a figurative sense to refer to a general time when a special event takes place. Examples of this include, “the year of Yahweh” or “in the year of drought” or “the favorable year of the Lord.” In these contexts, “year” could be translated as “time” or “season” or “time period.”

(See also: month)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:31
- Acts 19:8-10
- Daniel 8:1
- Exodus 12:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H7620, H7657, H8140, H8141, G17630, G20940

(Go back to: [Romans 15:23](#))

zeal, zealous

Definition:

The terms “zeal” and “zealous” refer to being strongly devoted to supporting a person or idea.

- Zeal includes having strong desire and actions that promote a good cause. It is often used to describe someone who faithfully obeys God and teaches others to do that too.
- Being zealous includes putting intense effort into doing something and continuing to persevere in that effort.
- The “zeal of the Lord” or the “zeal of Yahweh” refers to God’s strong, persistent actions to bless his people or to see justice done.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “be zealous” could also be translated by, “be strongly diligent” or “make an intense effort.”
- The term “zeal” could also be translated as “energetic devotion” or “eager determination” or “righteous enthusiasm.”
- The phrase, “zeal for your house” could be translated, “strongly honoring your temple” or “fervent desire to take care of your house.”

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:31
- 1 Kings 19:9-10
- Acts 22:3
- Galatians 4:17
- Isaiah 63:15
- John 2:17-19
- Philippians 3:6
- Romans 10:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7065, H7068, G22050, G22060, G22070, G60410

(Go back to: [Romans 10:2](#))

Zion, Mount Zion

Definition:

Originally, the term “Zion” or “Mount Zion” referred to a stronghold or fortress that King David captured from the Jebusites. Both these terms became other ways of referring to Jerusalem.

- Mount Zion and Mount Moriah were two of the hills that the city of Jerusalem was located on. Later, “Zion” and “Mount Zion” became used as general terms to refer to both of these mountains and to the city of Jerusalem. Sometimes they also referred to the temple that was located in Jerusalem. (See: [metonymy](#))
- David named Zion, or Jerusalem, the “City of David.” This is different from David’s hometown, Bethlehem, which was also called the City of David.
- The term “Zion” is used in other figurative ways, to refer to Israel or to God’s spiritual kingdom or to the new, heavenly Jerusalem that God will create.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [David](#), [Jerusalem](#), Bethlehem, Jebusites)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:5
- Amos 1:2
- Jeremiah 51:35
- Psalm 76:1-3
- Romans 11:26

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6726

(Go back to: [Romans 9:33](#); [11:26](#))

Contributors

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community

Aaron Fenlason

Abner Bauman

Adam Van Goor

Alan Bird

Alan Borkenhagen

Alfred Van Dellen

Alice Wright

Allen Bair

Allyson Presswood Nance

Amanda Adams

Andrew Belcher

Andrew Johnson

Andrew Rice

Angelo Palo

Anita Moreau

April Linton

Aurora Lee

Barbara Summers

Barbara White

Becky Hancock

Beryl Carpenter

Bethany Fenlason

Betty Forbes

Bianca Elliott

Bill Cleveland

Bill Pruett

Bob Britting

Bram van den Heuvel

Brian Metzger

Bruce Bridges

Bruce Collier

Bruce Smith

Caleb Worgess

Carlyle Kilmore

Carol Pace

Carol Heim

Caroline Crawford

Caroline Fleming

Caroline S Wong

Carol Lee

Carol Moyer

Carolyn Lafferty

Catherine C Newton

Charese Jackson

Charlotte Gibson

Charlotte Hobbs

Cheryl A Chojnacki
Cheryl Stieben
Cheryl Warren
Christian Berry
Christine Harrison
Clairmene Pascal
Connie Bryan
Connie Goss
Craig Balden
Craig Lins
Craig Scott
Cynthia J Puckett
Dale Hahs
Dale Masser
Daniel Lauk
Daniel Summers
Darlene M Hopkins
Darlene Silas
David Boerschlein
David F Withee
David Glover
David J Forbes
David Mullen
David N Hanley
David Sandlin
David Shortess
David Smith
David Whisler
Debbie Nispel
Debbie Piper
Deborah Bartow
Deborah Bush
Deborah Miniard
Dennis Jackson
Dianne Forrest
Donna Borkenhagen
Donna Mullis
Douglas Hayes
Drew Curley
Ed Davis
Edgar Navera
Edward Kosky
Edward Quigley
Elaine VanRegenmorter
Elizabeth Nataly Silvestre Herbas
Ellen Lee
Emeline Thermidor
Emily Lee
Esther Roman
Esther Trew
Esther Zirk
Ethel Lynn Baker
Evangeline Puen
Evelyn Wildgust
Fletcher Coleman

Freda Dibble
Gail Spell
Gary Greer
Gary Shogren
Gay Ellen Stulp
Gene Gossman
George Arlyn Briggs
Gerald L. Naughton
Glen Tallent
Grace Balwit
Grace Bird
Greg Stoffregen
Gretchen Stencil
Hallie Miller
Harry Harriss
Heather Hicks
Helen Morse
Hendrik deVries
Henry Bult
Henry Whitney
Hilary O'Sullivan
Ibrahim Audu
Ines Gipson
Irene J Dodson
Jackie Jones
Jacqueline Bartley
James Giddens
James Pedersen
James Pohlig
James Roe
Janet O'Herron
Janice Connor
Jaqueline Rotruck
Jeanette Friesen
Jeff Graf
Jeff Kennedy
Jeff Martin
Jennifer Cunneen
Jenny Thomas
Jerry Lund
Jessica Lauk
Jim Frederick
Jim Lee
Jimmy Warren
Jim Rotruck
Jim Swartzentruber
Jody Garcia
Joe Chater
Joel Bryan
Joey Howell
John Anderson
John Geddis
John D Rogers
John Hutchins
John Luton

John Pace
John P Tornifolio
Jolene Valeu
Jon Haahr
Joseph Fithian
Joseph Greene
Joseph Wharton
Joshua Berkowitz
Joshua Calhoun
Joshua Rister
Josh Wondra
Joy Anderson
Joyce Jacobs
Joyce Pedersen
JT Crowder
Judi Brodeen
Judith Cline
Judith C Yon
Julia N Bult
Patty Li
Julie Susanto
Kahar Barat
Kannah Sellers
Kara Anderson
Karen Davie
Karen Dreesen
Karen Fabean
Karen Riecks
Karen Smith
Karen Turner
Kathleen Glover
Kathryn Hendrix
Kathy Mentink
Katrina Geurink
Kay Myers
Kelly Strong
Ken Haugh
Kim Puterbaugh
Kristin Butts Page
Kristin Rinne
Kwesi Opoku-debrah
Langston Spell
Larry Sallee
Lawrence Lipe
Lee Sipe
Leonard Smith
Lester Harper
Lia Hadley
Linda Buckman
Linda Dale Barton
Linda Havemeier
Linda Homer
Linda Lee Sebastien
Linn Peterson
Liz Dakota

Lloyd Box
Luis Keelin
Madeline Kilmore
Maggie D Paul
Marc Nelson
Mardi Welo
Margo Hoffman
Marilyn Cook
Marjean Swann
Marjorie Francis
Mark Albertini
Mark Chapman
Mark Thomas
Marselene Norton
Mary Jane Davis
Mary Jean Stout
Mary Landon
Mary Scarborough
Megan Kidwell
Melissa Roe
Merton Dibble
Meseret Abraham-Zemedede
Michael Bush
Michael Connor
Michael Francis
Michael Geurink
Mike Tisdell
Mickey White
Miel Horrilleno
Monique Greer
Morgan Mellette
Morris Anderson
Nancy C. Naughton
Nancy Neu
Nancy VanCott
Neal Snook
Nicholas Scovil
Nick Dettman
Nils Friberg
Noah Crabtree
Pamela B Johnston
Pamela Nungesser
Pamela Roberts
Pam Gullifer
Pat Ankney
Pat Giddens
Patricia Brougher
Patricia Carson
Patricia Cleveland
Patricia Foster
Patricia Middlebrooks
Paul Mellema
Paula Carlson
Paula Oestreich
Paul Holloway

Paul Nungesser
Peggy Anderson
Peggyrose Swartzentruber
Peter Polloni
Phillip Harms
Phyllis Mortensen
Priscilla Enggren
Rachel Agheyisi
Rachel Ropp
Raif Turner
Ray Puen
Reina Y Mora
Rene Bahrenfuss
Renee Triplett
Rhonda Bartels
Richard Beatty
Richard Moreau
Richard Rutter
Richard Stevens
Rick Keaton
Robby Little
Robert W Johnson
Rochelle Hook
Rodney White
Rolaine Franz
Ronald D Hook
Rosario Baria
Roxann Carey
Roxanne Pittard
Ruben Michael Garay
Russell Isham
Russ Perry
Ruth Calo
Ruth E Withee
Ruth Montgomery
Ryan Blizek
Sam Todd
Samuel Njuguna
Sandy Anderson
Sandy Blanes
Sara Giesmann
Sara Van Cott (Barnes)
Sharon Johnson
Sharon Peterson
Sharon Shortess
Shelly Harms
Sherie Nelson
Sherman Sebastien
Sherry Mosher
Stacey Swanson
Steve Gibbs
Steve Mercier
Susan Langohr
Susan Quigley
Susan Snook

Suzanne Richards
Sylvia Thomas
Sze Suze Lau
Tabitha Price
Tammy L Enns
Tammy White
Teresa Everett-Leone
Teresa Linn
Terri Collins
Theresa Baker
Thomas Jopling
Thomas Nickell
Thomas Warren
Tim Coleman
Tim Ingram
Tim Linn
Tim Lovestrand
Tim Mentink
Tom Penry
Tom William Warren
Toni Shuma
Tracie Pogue
Tricia Coffman
Vicki Ivester
Victoria G DeKraker
Victor M Prieto
Vivian Kamph
Vivian Richardson
Ward Pyles
Warren Blaisdell
Wayne Homer
Wendy Coleman
Wendy Colon
Wilbur Zirk
Wil Gipson
William Carson
William Cline
William Dickerson
William Smitherman
William Wilder
Yvonne Tallent

unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors

Nicholas Alsop
Scott Bayer
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary
Matt Carlton
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Dan Dennison
Jamie Duguid
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D.Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary
Michael Francis
Laura Glassel, MA in Bible Translation
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages

Jesse Harris
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
John Huffman
D. Allen Hutchison, MA in Old Testament, MA in New Testament
Jack Messarra
Gene Mullen
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies
Kristy Nickell
Tom Nickell
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Dean Ropp
Joel D. Ruark, M.A.Th., Th.M., Ph.D. in Old Testament, University of Stellenbosch
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy
Doug Smith, M.T.S., M.Div., Th.M., Midwestern Baptist Theological Seminary
Leonard Smith
Suzanna Smith
Tim Span
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
Maria Tijerina
David Trombold, M. Div.
Aaron Valdizan, M.Div., Th.M. in Old Testament, The Masters Seminary
James Vigen
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
Angela Westmoreland, M.A. in Theological Studies (Biblical Language track)
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Benjamin Wright, MA Applied Linguistics, Dallas International University
Grant Ailie, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors

Jesse Griffin, BA in Biblical Studies, MA in Biblical Languages
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics, MA in Theology, BA in Biblical Studies
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Henry Whitney, BA in Linguistics
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Ben Jore, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.
Joel D. Ruark, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Theology
Todd L. Price, PhD in New Testament/Linguistics
Bev Staley
Carol Brinneman
Jody Garcia
Kara Anderson
Kim Puterbaugh
Lizz Carlton
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors

Andrew Belcher

David Book

Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages

Henry Whitney, Bible translator, Papua New Guinea, 1982–2000

Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary

Lizz Carlton

Jan Zanutto

Matthew Latham

Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics

Richard Joki

Door43 World Missions Community